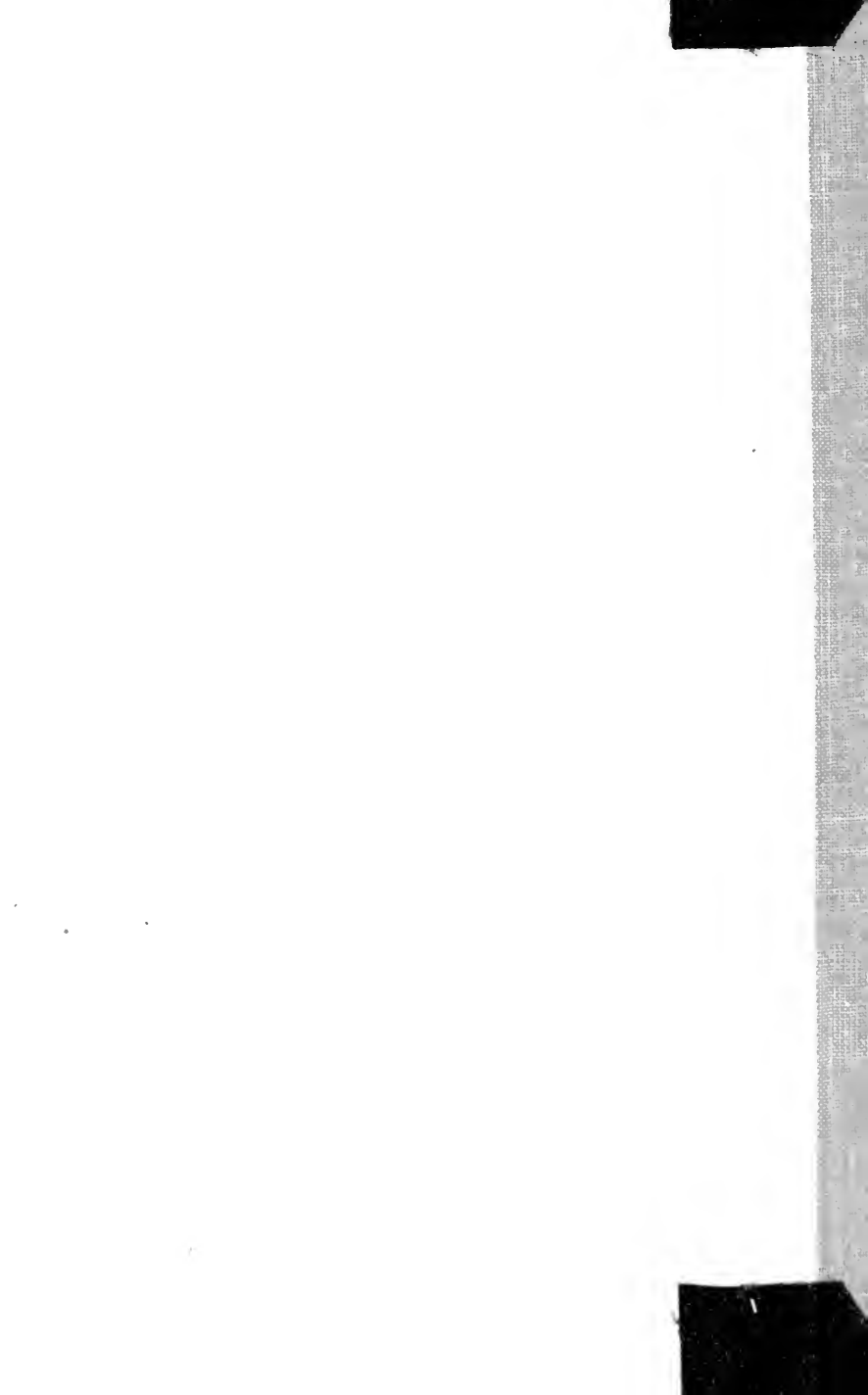


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY



3 1761 00361152 2



Caxton's
Book of Curtesye.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. III.

1868

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Caxton's
Book of Curtesye,

PRINTED AT WESTMINSTER ABOUT 1477-8 A.D.

AND NOW REPRINTED,

WITH TWO MS. COPIES OF THE SAME TREATISE, FROM
THE ORIEL MS. 79, AND THE BALLIOL MS. 354.



EDITED BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

EDITOR OF 'THE BABEES BOOK, ETC.' ('MANNERS AND MEALS IN OLDEN TIME'),
ETC. ETC.

[*Reprinted 1882.*]

380 5-5
711/196.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXVIII.

PR
111E
E5
no 3,
etc.

Extra Series,

III.

PREFACE.

THOUGH no excuse can be needed for including in our Extra Series a reprint of a unique Caxton on a most interesting subject, yet this Book of Curtesye from Hill's MS. was at first intended for our original series, I having forgotten lately that Caxton had written to 'lytyl Iohn,' though some months back I had entered the old printer's book for my second collection of Manners and Meals tracts for the Society. After the copy of Hill—which Mr W. W. King kindly made for his fellow-members—had gone to press, Mr Hazlitt reminded me of the Caxton, and its first and last lines in Mr Blades's admirable book showed that Hill's text was the same as the printed one. I accordingly went to Cambridge to copy it, and there, before tea, Mr Skeat showed me the copy of *The Vision of Piers Plowman* which the Provost and Fellows of Oriel had been good enough to lend him for his edition of 'Text B.' Having enjoyed the vellum Vision, I turned to the paper leaves at its end, and what should they contain but an earlier and better version of the Caxton that I had just copied part of?¹ I drank seven cups of tea, and eat five or six large slices of bread and butter, in honour of the event;² and Mr Skeat, with his never-

¹ Mr Bradshaw was kind enough to copy the rest, and to read the whole of the proof with Caxton's original.

² I must be excused for not having found the poem before, as it is not in the Index to Mr Coxe's Catalogue. In the body of the work it is entered as "A father's advice to his son; with instructions for his behaviour as a king's or noblemans page. ff. 88, 89, 78. Beg.

Kepeth elene and leseth not youre gere."

failing kindness, undertook to copy and edit the Oriel text for the Society. With three texts, therefore, in hand, I could not well stick them at the end of the Postscript to the *Babees Book*, &c.,¹ and as I wanted Caxton's name to this Book of Curtesye to distinguish it from what has long been to me THE Book of Courtesy,—that from the Sloane MS. 1986, edited by Mr Halliwell for the Percy Society, and by me for our own E. E. T. S.—and as also Caxton's name is one 'to conjure withal,' I have, with our Committee's leave, made this little volume an Extra Series one, and called it Caxton's, though his text is not so good as that of the Oriel MS.

On this latter point Mr Skeat writes :

"The Oriel copy is evidently the best. Not only does it give better readings, but the lines, as a rule, run more smoothly ; and it has an extra stanza. This stanza, which is marked 54, occurs between stanzas 53 and 54 of the other copies, and is of some interest and importance. It shows that Lidgate's pupil, put in mind of Lidgate's style by the very mention of his name, introduces a ballad of three stanzas, in which every stanza has a burden after the Lidgate manner. The recurrence of this burden no doubt caused copyists to lose their place, and so the stanza came to be omitted in other copies. Its omission, however, spoils the ballad. Both it and the curious lines in *Piers Ploughmans Crede*,

For aungells and arcangells · all þei whijt vseþ
And alle aldermen · þat ben *ante tronum*,

i. e. all the elders before the throne, allude to Rev. iv. 10. This Crede passage has special reference to the *Carmelites* or *White Friars*.

"The first two leaves of the Oriel copy are misplaced inside out at the end ; but this is not the only misarrangement. The poem has evidently been copied into this MS. from an older copy having a leaf capable of containing *six stanzas at a time* ; which leaves were out of order. Hence the poem in the Oriel MS. is written in the following order, as now bound up, Stanzas 11 (l. 5)—18, 25—30, 37—42, 19—24, 49—54, 31—36, 43—48, 55—76, 8—11 (l. 4), 4 (l. 5)—7, 1—4 (l. 4)."

¹ The Treatises in *The Babees Book*, &c., and the Index at the end, should be consulted for parallel and illustrative passages to those in Caxton's text.

As an instance of a word improved by the Oriel text, may be cited the ‘*brecheles feste*’ of Caxton’s and Hill’s texts, l. 66, and l. 300,

ffor truste ye well ye shall you not excuse
ffrom *brecheles feste*, & I may you espye
Playenge at any game of rebawdrye.—*Hill*, l. 299—301.

Could it be ‘profitless,’ from A.-Sax. *brée*, gain, profit; or ‘breechless,’ a feast of birch for the boy with his breeches off? The latter was evidently meant, but it was a forced construction. The Oriel *byrecheley* set matters right at once.

Another passage I cannot feel sure is set at rest by the Oriel text. Hill’s and Caxton’s texts, when describing the ill-mannered servant whose ways are to be avoided, say of him, as to his hair, that he is

Absolon with disheveled heres smale,
lyke to a prysoner of saynt Malowes,¹
a sonny busshe able to the galowes.—*Hill*, l. 462.

For the last line the Oriel MS. reads,

a sonny bush myght cause hym to goo louse,

and Mr Skeat says,—“This is clearly the right reading, of which *galowes* is an unmeaning corruption. The poet is speaking of the *dirty* state of a bad and ill-behaved servant. He is as dirty as a man come out of St Malo’s prison; a sunny bush would cause him to go and free himself from minute attendants. A ‘sunny bush’ probably means no more than a warm nook, inviting one to rest, or to such quiet pursuits as the one indicated. That this is really the reading is shown by the next stanza, wherein the poet apologizes for having spoken too bluntly; he ought to have spoken of such a chase by saying that he goes *a-hawking* or *a-hunting*. Such was the right euphemism required by ‘norture.’”

If this is the meaning, we may compare with it the old poet’s reproof to the proud man :

¹ An allusion to the strong castle built at St Malo’s by Anne, Duchess of Bretayne.—Dyce.

Man, of þi schuldres and of þi side
 þou miȝte hunti luse and flee :
 of such a park i ne hold no pride ;
 þe dere nis nauȝte þat þou mighte sle.

Early English Poems, ed. F. J. F., 1862, p. 1, l. 5.

and remember that one of the blessings of the early Paradisaical *Land of Cokaygne* is :

Nis þer flei, fle, no lowse,
 In cloþ, in toune, bed, no house.

Ib., p. 157, l. 37-8.

We may also compare the following extract about Homer's death from "Pleasant and Delightfull Dialogues in Spanish and English : Profitable to the Learner, and not vnpleasant to any other Reader. By *John Minsheu*, Professor of Languages in London. 1623," p. 47.

"F . . . a foole with his foolishnesse framed in his owne imagination may giue to a hundred wise men matter to picke out.

"I, So it hapned to the Poet Homer, that as he was with age blinde, and went walking by the sea shoare, & heard certaine Fishermen talking, that at that time were a *lowsing* themselues, and as he asked them, what fish they caught, they vnderstanding that he had meant their lice, they answered, Those that we ¹ haue, we seeke for, and those that we ² haue not wee finde, but as the good Homer could not see what they did, and for this cause could not vnderstand the riddle, it did so grieue his vnderstanding to obtaine the secret of this matter, which was a sufficient grieffe to cause his death."

But the subject is not a very pleasant one for discussion, though the occupation alluded to in the Oriel Text must have been one of the pastimes of many people in Early England.

The book itself, *Lytill Johan*, is by a disciple of Lydgate's—see l. 366, p. 36-7—and contains, besides, the usual directions how to dress, how to behave in church, at meals, and when serving at table, a wise man's advice on the books his little Jack should read, the best English poets,—then Gower, Chaucer, Oeeleve, and Lydgate,—not the Catechism and Latin Grammar. It was very pleasant to come

¹ i. Haue in their clothes, i. lice.

² i. Haue not in hand.

off the directions not to conveye spetell over the table, or burnish one's bones with one's teeth, to the burst of enthusiasm with which the writer speaks of our old poets. He evidently believed in them with all his heart; and it would have been a good thing for England if our educators since had followed his example. If the time wasted, almost, in Latin and Greek by so many middle-class boys, had been given to Milton and Shakspeare, Chaucer and Langland, with a fit amount of natural science, we should have been a nobler nation now than we are. There is no more promising sign of the times than the increased attention paid to English in education now.

But to return to our author. He gives Chaucer the poet's highest gift, Imagination, in these words,

what ever to say he toke in his entente,
his langage was so fayer & pertynante,
yt semeth vnto manys heryng
not only the worde, but veryly the thyng. (l. 343.)

And though the writer has the bad taste to praise Lydgate more than Chaucer, yet we may put this down to his love for his old master, and may rest assured that though the cantankerous Ritson calls the Bury schoolmaster a 'driveling monk,' yet the larking schoolboy who robbed orchards, played truant, and generally raised the devil in his early days (*Forewords to Babees Book*, p. xlv.), retained in later years many of the qualities that draw to a man the boy's bright heart, the disciple's fond regret. We too will therefore hope that old Lydgate's

sowle be gon
(To) the sterred paleys above the dappled skye,
Ther to syng *Sanctus* insessavntly
Emonge the mvses nyne celestyall,
Before the hyste Iubyter of all. (l. 381-5.)

In old age the present poem was composed (st. 60, p. 42-3); 'a lytill newe Instruccion' to a lytle childe, to remove him from vice & make him follow virtue. At his riper age our author promises his boy the surplusage of the treatise (st. 74, p. 50-1); and if a copy of it exists, I hope it will soon fall in our way and get into type, for 'the more the merrier' of these peeps into old boy-life.

On one of the grammatical forms of the Oriel MS., Mr Skeat writes :

“It is curious to observe the forms of the imperative mood plural which occur so frequently throughout the poem in the Oriel copy. The forms ending in *-eth* are about 31 in number, of which 17 are of French, and 14 of A.S. origin. The words in which the ending *-eth* is dropped are 42, of which 18 are of French, and 24 of A.S. origin. The three following French words take *both* forms ; *avyse* or *avyseth*, *awayte* or *awayteth*, *wayte* or *wayteth* ; and the five following A.S. words, *be* or *beth*, *kepe* or *kepeth*, *knele* or *kneleth*, *loke* or *loketh*, *make* or *maketh*. Thus the poet makes use, on the whole, of one form almost as often as the other (that is, supposing the scribe to have copied correctly), and he no doubt consulted his convenience in taking that one which suited the line best. It is an instance of what followed in almost every case of naturalization, that A.S. inflections were added to the French words quite as freely as to those of native origin. Both the *-eth* and *-e* forms are commonly used without the word *ye*, though *Be ye* occurs in l. 58. In the phrase *arise you* (l. 78), *you* is in the accusative.”

Commenting also on l. 71 of Caxton and Hill, Mr Skeat notices how they have individualised the general ‘child’ of the earlier Oriel text :

“71. Here we find *child* riming to *mylde*. In most other places it is *Johan*. The rime shows that the reading *child* is right, and *Johan* is a later adaptation. The Oriel MS. never uses the word *Johan* at all ; it is always *child*.”

I may remark also, that on the question lately raised by Mr Bradshaw, ‘who before Hampole,¹ or after him, used *you* for the nominative as well as the correct *ye*,’ Hill uses both *you* and *ye*, see l. 47, 51, 52, &c., though so far as a hasty search shows, Lydgate, in his *Minor Poems* at least, uses *ye* only, as do Lord Berners in his *Arthur of Lytil Brytayne*, ab. 1530, the Ormulum, Anceren Riwle, Genesis and Exodus, William of Palerne, Alliterative Poems, Early Metrical Homilies, &c.²

¹ *Pricke of Conscience*, p. 127, l. 4659 ; and p. xvii.

² Mr Skeat holds that in the various reading *3ow drieth* from the Univ. Coll.

The final *d*, *f*, *t*, of Hill's MS., often have a tag to them. As they sometimes occur in places where I judge they must mean nothing, I have neglected them all. Every final *ll* has a line through it, which may mean *e*. Nearly every final *n* and *m* has a curly tail or line over it. This is printed *e* or *n̄*, though no doubt the tail and line have often no value at all. The curls to the *rs* are printed *e*, because *ther* with the curly *r*, in l. 521, Hill, rimes to *where* of l. 519.

At the end of Caxton's final *d* and *g* is occasionally a crook-backed line, something between the line of beauty and the ordinary knocker. This no doubt represents the final *e* of MSS., and is so printed, as Mr Childs has not the knocker in the fount of type that he uses for the Society's work. Caxton's *n̄* stands for *un* in the *-aunce*, *-aunte*, of words from the French. No stops or inverted commas have been put to Caxton's text here, but the stanzas and lines have been numbered, and side-notes added.

"The *Book of Curtesye*," says Mr Bradshaw, "is known from three early editions. The first, without any imprint, but printed at Westminster by Caxton ab. 1477-78,¹ the only known copy of which is here reproduced. The second (with the colophon 'Here endeth a lytyll treatyse called the booke of Curtesye or lytyll John. Emprynted atte Westmoster') is only known from a printer's proof of two pages² preserved among the Douce fragments in the Bodleian. It must have been printed by Wynkin de Worde in Caxton's house ab. 1492. In the third edition it was reprinted at the end of the *Stans puer ad Mensam* by Wynkin de Worde ab. 1501-1510. The Cambridge copy is the only one known to remain of this edition."

I have no more to say: but, readers, remember this coming New Year to do more than last for what Dr Stratmann calls "the dear Old English." Think of Chaucer when his glad spring comes, and

Oxford MS. (of the early part of the 15th century) to the Vernon MS. þou driuizest, l. 25, Passus 1, of the Vision of Piers Plowman, the *3ow* is an accusative, "exactly equivalent to the Gothic in the following passage—'hwana þaurusjai, gaggai du mis, i. e. whom it may thirst, let him come to me.' John vii. 37. I conclude that *3ow* is accusative, not dative. The same construction occurs in German constantly, 'es dirstet mich' = it thirsts me, I thirst."

¹ In his type No. 2, *Blades*, ii. 63.

² In Caxton's type No. 5, *Blades*, ii. 235 (not 253 as in Index).

every day besides ; forget not Langland or any of our early men :

reporte

& revyue *the lawde of them that were*
*famovs in*¹ *owre langage, these faders dere,*
whos sowles in blis, god eternall avaunce,
*that lysten so*² *owre langage to enhavnce !*

(*Hill*, l. 430-4.)

3, *St George's Square, N.W.*

15 *Dec.*, 1867.

¹ Founders of, *Oriel MS.*

² some, *Hill* ; so, *Oriel.*

The Book of Curtesye.

[The Book of Curtesy.]

[From the Oriel MS. lxxix.]

[1]

Lytte childe, sythen youre tembre infancie
Stondeth as yett vnder yndylf[e]rence,
To vice or vertu to moven¹ or Applie,
And in suche Age ther is no prouidence,
Ne comenly no sadde intelligence,
But ryght as wax receyeth printe and figure,
So chylder ben disposed of nature,

3 ¹ MS. morven.

[2]

Vice or vertu to Folowe and ympresse
In mynde ; and therefore, to stere and remeve
You from vice, and to vertu thou² dresse,
That on to folow, and the other to eschewe,
I haue devysed you this lytill newe
Instruccion according to youre age,
Playne in sentence, but playner in langage.

10 ² Read you.

14

(Richard Hill's *Commonplace Book, or Balliol MS.* 354, *fol C lx.*)

Here begynnyth lytill Iohan.

Lytell Iohan, sith your tendere enfancie
Stondyth as yet vnder Indyfference
To vyce or vertu to mevyn or applie,
4 & in suche age *ther*¹ ys no provydenche,
Ne comenly no sage Intelygence,
But as wax receyvith prynt or fygure,
So chyldren bene disposed of nature

[Hill's T. et.]

¹ The *th* is the same as the *y*.

[The Book of Curtesye.]

[*Curton's Text.*]

[1]

1	ytyl Iohn syth your tendre enfaneye	
	Stondeth as yet vnder / in difference	[Leaf 1 a.]
	To vice or vertu to meyn or applye	As Infancy is
	And in suche age ther is no prouidenee	indifferent
	Ne comenly no sade Intelligence	3 whether it follows
	But as waxe resseyueth prynte or figure	vice or virtue,
	So children ben disposide of nature	7

[2]

	Vyce or vertue to folowe ande enpresse	
	In mynde / ande therfore / to styre & remeue	I have written
	You from vice / ande to vertue adresse	this new treatise
	That one to folowe / and that other teschewe	to draw you from
	I haue deuysed you / this lytyl newe	10 vice, and turn you
	Instruccion / acordynge vnto your age	to virtue.
	Playne in sentence / but playner in langage	14

8 ¶	Vyce or vertu to folowe, & enpresse	[<i>Hill's Text.</i>]
	In mynde ; & <i>therfor</i> to styre & remeue	
	you frome vice, & to vertu adresse,	
	That on to felow, & <i>that other</i> to eschewe,	
12	I haue deuysed you this lytill newe	
	Instruccion ¹ accordyng vnto <i>your</i> age,	
	playn In sentence, but playnere In langage.	

¹ The mark of contraction is over the *n* : t. i. the *n* has its tail curled over its back like a dog's.

[3]

Taketh hede therfore and herkyn what I say,
 And yeueth therto hooly youre aduertence,
 Lette not youre eye be here aud youre hert away, 17
 But yeueth herto youre besy diligence,
 And ley aparte alle wantawne insolence,
 Lernyth to be vertues and well thewid ;
 Who wolle not lere, nedely must be lewid. 21

[4]

Afore all thyng, fyrst and principally,
 In the morowe when ye¹ shall vppe ryse, ¹ MS. he.
 To wyrship god haue in youre memorie ; 24
 Wyth cristis crosse loke ye blesse you thriese,
 Your pater-nosteir seyth in devoute wyse,
 Aue maria wyth the holy crede,
 Than alle the after the bettir may ye spede. 28

[5]

And while ye be Abouten honestly
 To dresse youre-self and don on youre aray,
 Wyth youre felawe well and tretably 31
 Oure lady matens Avyseth that you say,
 And this obseruance vseth euery day,
 Wyth prime and owris, and wythouten drede
 The blyssed lady woll graunte you youre mede. 35

¶ Take hede *therfor*, & harken what I saye, [Hill's Text.]
 16 & geve *therto* yowre good aduertence,
 lette not *your* ere be here, & *your* herte awaye,
 But pute you *therto* besy delygence,
 Laying a-*parte* all wanton Insolence,
 20 lernyd to be *vertuvs* & well thewed ;
 who *wilt* not lerne, nedely he must be lewed.

¶ Afore all thyng, & pryncypally
 In the mornyng whan ye vp ryse,
 24 To worship god haue in memory ;
 with *crystis* crosse loke ye blesse ye thryse,

[3]

Take hede therfore / and herkne what I saye	Attend therfore to what I say.
Ande gyue therto / your goodde aduertence	
Lete not your ere be here & your herte awaye	17
But put ye therto / besy diligence	
Leynge aparte al wantown Insolence	
Lerneth to be vertuous / and wel thewede	Learn good manners.
Who wil not lerne / nedely he must be lewed	21

[4]

Afore alle thinge / ande principally	[Leaf 1 b.]
In the morenynge / whan ye vp rise	On rising,
To worshipe gode / haue in memorie	24
With crystes crosse / loke ye blesse you thrise	cross yourself,
Your pater noster / saye in deuoute wyse	say your Pater Noster, Ave, and Creed.
Aue maria / with the holy crede	
Thenne alle the day / the better shal ye spede	28

[5]

And while that ye be aboute honestly	
To dresse your self / & do on your araye	While dressing,
With your felawe / wel and tretably	31
Oure lady matyns / loke that ye saye	say our Lady's Mattins,
Ande this obseruaunce / vse ye every daye	
With pryme and ouris / withouten drede	Prime, and Hours.
The blesside lady / wil quyte you your mede	35

your pater noster say in deuoute wyse, [Hill's Text.]
 Aue maria / with the holy crede ;
 28 Then all the day the better shall ye spede.

¶ And while ye dresse your selfe, honestly
 To dresse your selfe & do on your araye,
 with your felowe well & tretably
 32 Owre lady matens loke that you say ;
 And this obseruaunce vse ye every day,
 with pryme & owers with-owt drede.
 the blessyd lady will quyte you your mede.

[6]

Kembe youre hede and loke ye kepe hit clene,
 Youris eris twayne suffre not foule to be ;
 In youre visage wayteth no spotte be sene, 38
 Purge youre nase, let hit not combred be
 Wyth foule matiers Ayeunst all oneste,
 But wyth bare hande no matier from hit feche,
 For that is a foule and an vncurtays teche. 42

[7]

Youre handes wassheth, that is an holsom thyng,
 Youris nayles loke they be not geet blake,
 Suffre hem not to ben ouer long growyng ; 45
 To youre aray good hede I warne you take,
 That manerly ye seet hit vp and make,
 Youris hode, youre gowne, youre hose, and eke
 youre scho,
 Wyth all aray longyng youre body to. 49

[8]

Kepeth clene and leseth not youre gere,
 And or ye passen oute of youre loggyng,
 Euery garment that ye schulle vppon you were, 52
 Awayteth welle that hit be so syttyng
 As to youre degre semeth moost on accordyng ;
 Than woll men sey, ‘ for soth this childe is he
 That is well taught and loueth honeste.’ 56

36 ¶ Kembe *your* hede, & loke you kepe yt clene ; [Hil's Text.]
 your eris twayn suffre not fowle to be ; [ff C 1x back]
 In *your* wysage loke no spote be sene ;
 purge *your* nose ; lett no man in yt se
 40 The vile matter ; yt ys none honeste ;
 Ne *with your* bare hond no fylth from yt feche,
 ifor *that* ys fowle, & an vncurtoys teche.

¶ *Your* hondis wasshe ; yt ys an holsom thyng ;
 44 *your* naylis loke they be not gety blake,
 Ne suffre not *them* ouer longe growyng.

[6]

Kembe your hede / & loke ye kepe it elene	Comb your head; clean your ears
Your eres tweyne / suffre not fowl to be	
In your visage / wayte no spot be sene	38
Purge your nose / lete noman in it see	and nose ;
The vile mater / it is none honeste	
Ne with your bare honde / no filth fro it fecche	don't pick it.
For that is fowl / and an vncurtoys teche	42

[7]

Your hondes wesshe / it is an holson thinge	[Leaf 2 a.] Wash your hands ; don't keep your nails jet- black or too long.
Your naylis loke / they be not gety blacke	
Ne suffre not hem / to be ouer longe growyng	45
To your araye / I warne you good hede take	
That manerly ye fyttē it vp and make	Wear fit clothes, that fit well
Your hoodē. gowne. hosyn / & eke your sho	
With al your aray longyng your body to	49

[8]

Kepe you elene / and lose not your gere	
And or ye passe / out of your loggyngē	
Euery garment / that ye shal on were	52
Awayte wel / that it be so syttyngē	and suit your station ;
As to your degre / semeth acordyngē	
Thezme wil men saye / forsoth this childe is he	the men will praise you.
That is wel taught / and louyth honeste	56

48 To your A-rye I warne you good hede take, [Hull's Text.]
Manerly & ffyte loke you yt make ;
your hood / gowne / hosen / & eke your sho,
with all your araye longyng your body to.

¶ Kepe you elene, & lose not your gere ;
& or you passe owt of your lodgyng,
52 Euery garment that ye shaft were,
Awayte well that yt be so syttyng
& to your degre semed acordyng ;
Than wiff men say, "for sothe this child ys he
56 that ys well tawght, & loweth honeste."

[9]

And as ye walke and passen be the strete,
 Be ye not nyce of chere and countenance ;
 And loke, my childe, to folkys that ye mete, 59
 Ye spekyng feyre wyth wordis of plesauce ;
 To youre souerayne wyth humble obeysaunce,
 To hym that is youre felowe and pere,
 Yevith feyre langage wyth ryght frendly chere. 63

[10]

Cast not wyth stone or styke at foule ne beste,
 And where ye walke be ware that ye ne rage,¹ 1 MS. nerage.
 For and ye do, ye shall to byrcheley feest. 66
 Terre² wyth no hounde in fylde nor in village, 2 MS. There, by
 Gothe forth in peace, demenyng youre vysage mistake.
 In sobre wyse, that men may of you say,
 'A goodly childe ther passith be the way.' 70

[11]

Whan ye come to the chirehe, my lytyll chylde,
 Holy watir ye schull vppon you caste 72
 Be-fore the crosse wyth [chere] moste meke and mylde ;
 Than knelyth doune and knoketh on youre breste,
 Thankyng the lorde that on the crosse did rest,
 And there for you suffred his hert to blede,
 Seyth or ye ryse Pater, Aue, and A crede. 77

¶ And as ye walke & passe by *the* strete, [Hill's Text.]
 Be ye not Nyce of chere & covntenavnce,
 but loke, my child, to folkis *that* you mete,
 60 & loke ye speke fayere *with* wordis of plesavnce,
 Demvre, & curtoys of your Demenavnce.
 To hym *that* ys yowre felow & pere,
 Geve you fayre langage & a ffrendly chere.

64 ¶ Cast no styke ne stone at fowle ne beste ;
 & wher ye walke, be ware ye ne rage.
 ffor yff ye do ye shaft to brecheles feest.
 Terre not *with* hovndis *in* fyld ne *in* vilage ;

[9]

And as ye walke / and passe by the strete		As you walk, look pleasantly at folk,
Be ye not nyce of chere / and countenaunce		
But loke my child / to folkes that ye mete	59	
Ye speke fayr / with wordes of plesaunce		
Demure and curtoys / of your demenaunce		
To hym that is your felawe ande pere		and greet your fellows friendly;
Gyue ye fair langage / and a frendly chere	63	

[10]

Caste no styck ne stone at fowle ne beest		[Leaf 2 b.] don't shy stones at bird or beast,
And where ye walke / bewarre ye ne rage		
For yf ye doo / ye shal to brecheles feest	66	
Terre not with howide in felde ne in vilage		or quarrel with dogs.
Go forth your waye / demenyng your viage		
In sobre wyse / that men may of you saye		
A goodly chyld / ther passeth by the waye	70	

[11]

And whan ye come to þ ^e chirche my litil child		At church, holy- water yourself,
Holy water / ye shal vpon you caste		
Byfore þ ^e crosse / with chere meke & mylde	73	
Knele adouñ / and knocke on your breste		kneel before the cross, knock on your breast,
Thankyng the good lord þ ^t on it dide reste		
And there / for you suffryd his sides to blede		
Saye ye or ye rise / pater noster / aue / & a crede	77	and say prayers.

68 Go furth *your way*, Demenyng *your viage* [*Hill's Text.*]
 In sober wyse, *that men maye of you saye*,
 " A goodly chyld ther passith by the way."

¶ And when ye cum to *the churche*, my litiff child.
 72 holy water ye shaft vpon you caste.
 be-fore *the crosse with chere meke & mylde*
 knele a-downe, & knoke on *your brest*,
 Thankyng *that good lord that on yt dyde reste*,
 76 & ther for you suffred his sydys to blede ;
 Saye ye, or you ryse, *pater noster / aue / & a*
 crede.

[12]

A wise you well Also for eny thyng,
 The schirche of prayer is the house and place ;
 Be ware there-fore of clappe or Ianglyng, 80
 For in the schireche that is full gret trysspace,
 And A token of hem that lacken grace ;
 Ther beth demure and kepeth youre sylence,
 And serueth god wyth all youre deligence. 84

[13]

TO helpe the prest whan he shall sey the masse,
 T Whan hit shall happen you or be-tyde,
 Remeue not ferre ne from his presence passe, 87
 Kneleth or stondesth deuoutly hym be-syde,
 And not to nyghe ; youre tounge mooste be applied
 To Answere hym wyth ¹ v[o]ice full moderate ; ¹ MS. wyth hym
 Avyse you well, my lityll childe, Algate 91
 wyth.

[14]

TO mynystre wyth de-route Reuerence,
 T Loke that ye do youre humble obseruaunce
 Debonarly wyth [dewe] obideence, 94
 Cyrcum-spectly, wyth euer[y] circumstance
 Of porte, of chere, demevire of countenaunce,
 Remembryng, the lord aboue is he
 Whom to serue is grettest liberte. 98

¶ Avyee you well also for any thyng, [Hill's Text.]
 The chyrche, of prayer ys howse & place ;
 80 be ware *therfor* of clappe or Iangelyng,
 ffor in the chyrche yt ys a full gret trespas,
 & a token of suche as lacketh *grace*.
 Ther be ye demvre, & kepe ye scilence,
 84 And *serve* ye god with all your delygence.

To helpe *the* Preest whan he sayth masse, [m C 13j.]
 whan yt shaft happen you or betyde,
 Remeve not fer, ne from his presence passe ;
 88 knele or stonde you devovtly hym besyde,

[12]

Anyse you wel also / for any thinge	
The chirche of prayer / is hous and place	
Beware therfore / of clappe or Iangelynge	80 Don't chatter,
For in þ ^e chirehe / it is a ful grete trespaas	
And a token of suche / as lackyth grace	
There be ye demure / and kepe ye seilence	but be silent, and
And serue ye god / with al your diligence	84 serve God.

[13]

To helpe the preest / whan he saith masse	
Whan it shal happen you or betyde	[Leaf 3 a.] When you help the priest at Mass,
Remeue not fer / ne from his presence passe	87
Knele or stonde ye / deuoutly hym besyde	kneel or stand near him,
And not to nygli your tonge muste be applide	
Tanswere hym / with voys ful moderate	and answer him in a moderate
Anyse you wel / my lityl childe algate	91 tone.

[14]

To mynystre / with deuoute reuerence	Minister reverently
Loke ye do / youre humble obseruañce	
Debonairly / with due obedyence	94
Circumspectly / with euery circumstaunce	and circum- spectly.
Of poort and chere / of goodly countenañce	
Remembrynge wel the lorde / a boue is he	
Whom to serue / is grettest liberte	98

& not to nygh : your tonge mvst be applyde
To answee hym with voyce moderate.
Avyce you weft, my lytiff child, algate

[Hill's Text.]

- 92 ¶ To mynyster with devout reverence ;
loke ye do your humble obseruance
Debonerly wyth dewe obedyence,
Circumspectly with euery circumstavnce
96 Of poort, & chere of goodly covntenavnce,
Remembryng well the lorde a-bove ys he,
whome to serve ys grettest lyberte.

[15]

And when ye speke, loketh men in the face ¹ 1 MS. visage.
 Wyth sobre chere and goodly semblaunce ;
 Cast not youre eye asyde in odir place, 101
 For that is a tokyn of wantowne inconstaunce,
 Which wolle appeyre youre name, and disauauzee ;
 The wyse man seyth, ' who hathe this signes thre
 Ne is not like a good man [for] to be— 105

[16]

Yn hert,' he seyth, ' who that is inconstaunte,² 2 MS. inconstaunce
 A waveryng eye, glyddryng but sodenly
 From place to place, and A fote³ variaunte⁴ 108 3 MS. fore.
4 MS. variaunce.
 That in no place abydeyth stabully—
 Thes ben signes,' the wyse man seyth sekerly,
 ' Of suche a wyght as is vnmanerly nyce,
 And is full like dissposed be to vice.' 112

[17]

And wayte, my childe, whan ye stond at the table,
 Of souereyne or maister whether hit be,
 Applieth you [for] to be seruysable, 115
 That no defaute in you may founde be ;
 Loke who doth best and hym envyeth ye,
 And specially vseth attendaunce,
 Whiche is to souereyne thyng of gret plesaunce. 119

¶ And whan ye speke, loke men in the face [Hill's Text.]
 100 with sobre chere & goodly semblaunce ;
 Caste not eye a-side in no other place,
 ffor that ys a token of a wanton constavnce
 which will apayre your name, & dysavnance.
 104 The wyse man sayth, ' who hath these
 thyngis iij,
 ys not lyke a good man for to be :

¶ ' In herte,' he sayth, ' who that ys Inconstavnte,
 108 ffro place to place, & a foote varyavnte
 that in no place a-bydyth stabli,

[15]

And whan ye speke / loke men in the face		When you speak to men, look 'em in the face.
With sobre chere / ande goodly semblaunce		
Caste not your eye a syde / in other place	101	
For that is a token of wantouū inconstaunce		
Whiche wil appeyre your name & disauaūce		
The wise man saith who hath these thingis thre		The Wise Man says
Is not lyke a goode man for to be	105	

[16]

In herte he seith / who that is inconstaūte		[Leaf 3 b.]
A waueryng eye / glydyng sodeynly		an inconstant man with a wavering eye and a wandering foot
Fro place to place / & a foot variaūte	108	
That in no place / abydeth stably		
These ben þ ^e signes / the wiseman seith sikerly		
Of suche a wight / as is vnmanerly nyce		
And is ful likely disposid vnto vyce	112	will turn to vice.

[17]

Awayte my chylde / whan ye stande atte table		When you serve at table,
Of maister or scoueraun / whether it be		
Applye you for to be seruysable	115	be attentive and ndy,
That no defaute in you founden be		
Loke / who doth best / and hym ensiewe ye		
And in espectral / vse ye attendaunce		specially to well- off men.
Wherein ye shal your self best auancee	119	

Thyse bene *the thyngis,* *the wysman sayth* [Hill's Text.]
sekerly,
112 'Off suche a wayghte *that* be vnmanerly nyce,
& be full lykely dysposed vnto vyce.'

¶ Awayte, my chylde, whan ye stonde at table,
Off mayster or soverayne whether yt be,
116 Applye you for to be servysable
That no defawte in you fownden be ;
loke who dothe best, & hym folow ye,
& in especiall vse ye attendaunce
wheryn ye shaft your selfe best avancee.

[18]

A [s] ye be comaundyd, so ye do algate,
 Beth not wyth-oute cause from the tabul absent ;
 Hit is plesaunce vnto the gret astate 122
 To se theyre saruaunt about them present ;
 Haunteth no halkes, for then ye woll be schent.
 Lette maner and Mesure be youre guydes twey,
 So shall ye best please, I dare well sey. 126

[19]

Rewarde all-way the loke and countenaunce
 Of youre master, or of youre souereine,
 Ther shall ye best preue what is plesaunce, 129
 And what displesaunce ; this is the soth serteyne,
 The chere discureth often tyme both twayne,
 And eke the chere may some tyme you adresse
 In thyng that langage may not þan expresse. 133

[20]

And what ye here there, loke ye kepe hit secre,
 Besy report of mystrust is cheff norice ;
 Mekell langage may not all faultles be ; 136
 Than doth, my childe, as teicheth you the wyse,
 Whiche vnto you this wysdome dothe devise,
 ‘Here and see, be still in euery prees,¹
 Passe forth youre way in silence and in pees.’

1 MS. ‘in euery place
 and in prees.’ Place
 was to have been the
 last word ; and in
 prees was carelessly
 added, instead of strik-
 ing out place.—Sk.

-
- 120 ¶ As ye be comavnded, so do ye algate ; [Hull's Text.]
 be not caverseles fro *the* table absent ;
 yt ys a grete pleasure to *the* high estate ¹ [1 noble, lord.]
 To se his *seruaunttes* abowte hym presente.
 124 havnte no halke, for then ye will be shente ;
 lette manere & mesure be *your* gydes twayne ;
 so shaft ye best please, I dare savely sayne.
 ¶ Reward also thy loke & contenance,
 128 Off *your* master or of *your* soverayne,
 so shaft ye best preve what ys his plesavnce
 or ellis his dysplesavnce : this ys *sertayne*,

[18]

As ye be comandede / so do ye algate		Don't absent yourself from table,
Be not causeles / fro the table absent		
It is a grete plesure / to the hyghe estate	122	
To see his seruantis aboute hym present		
Haunte no halke / for thezue ye wil be shente		or stick yourself in a corner.
Lete maner & mesure / be your gydes tweyne		Let Manners and Moderation guide you.
So shal ye best plese / I dar sauely seyue	126	

[19]

Rewarde also the loke ande contaunce		[Leaf #a.]
Of your maister / or of your souereyne		Look at your master's face;
So shal ye best preue. what is his plesaunce	129	that'll show whether he's pleased or not.
Or els displesaunce / this is soth serteyne		
The chere discoverith / often bothe tweyne		
And eke þe chere / somtyme may you adresse		
In thingis / þ ^t langage may not them expresse	133	

[20]

Ande that ye her loke / kepe alway secree		Keep secret all you hear.
Besy reporte / of mischief is chief noryse		
Mykyl langage / may not al fawtles bee	136	
Thenne do my childe / as techeth you the wyse		
Whiche vnto you / this lesson doth deuyse		
Here and see / ande be styll in euery prees		Hear, see, and go your way.
Passse forth your way in scilence & in pees	140	

132 The chere discovereth oftyn both[e] twain,
& eke the chere sumtyme may yow adresse
In thyngis the langage may not then expresse. [Hill's Text.]

¶ And that ye here, loke ye kepe alway secree ; [ff C lxx, back.]
besy reporte, of myschefe ys chefe noryse ;
136 Mykyl langage may not aft fawtles be ;
Then do, my chyld, as techeth you the wyse
whiche vnto you this lessun doth deuyce :
here & see, & be styll in euery prees,
140 passe forthe your way in scilence & in pees.

[21]

And yit in Aventure ye, if the caase require,
 Ye most speke as hit may doo perceace ;¹
 Seuen condicions obserue as ye shall hire, 143
 Advise you well what ye sey and in what place,
 Of whom, and to whom, in youre mynde compaace ;
 Howe ye shall speke, and whan, taketh good hede,
 This counseilleth the wyse man wyth-outen drede.

¹ MS. preceace.

[22]

Awayte, my childe, ye haue you manerly,
 Whan at youre mete ye sittyn at youre table ;
 In euery pres, in euery company, 150
 Disposeth you to be so componable,
 That men may you reporte for comendable ;
 For tristeth well, vppon youre bering
 Men woll you blame or yeven you preysing. 154

[23]

And printeth chiefly in youre memorie,
 For A principalle poynt of feire norture,
 Ye depraue no man absent especially ; 157
 Seint Austyn Amonishith wyth besy cure,
 Howe at the table men shull them assure,
 That there escapeth them no suche langage,
 As myght turne other folke to disparage. 161

-
- ¶ And yet in aduventure, yf the caas requyre, [Hill's Text.]
 ye may speke, but ye must percaas
 Seven¹ condycions observe, as ye may here :
 144 Avyce ye well what ye say, & in what place,
 Off whom, & to whom, in your mynd compaace ;
 how ye shaft speke, & whan, take good hede :
 this cow[n]syled the wyse man withowten
 drede.
- 148 A-wayte, my chyld, ye behaue you manerly
 whan at your mete ye sytte at the table ;
 In euery prees & In euery company

[1 Six they are at
 p. 358, *Babees
 Book*, of the Wise
 Man.]

[21]

And yet in auenture / yf the caas require
 Ye may speke / but ye muste themne *percaas*
 Seuen *condicions* obserue / as ye may now hyre 143
 Auyse you wel / what ye saye / & in what place
 Of whom / & to whom in your mynde *compae*
 How ye shal speke / & whan take good hede
 This counceelith the wise man withoute drede 147

If you must
 speak,
 observe the seven
 conditions.

[22]

Awayte my chyld / ye be haue you manerly
 Whan at your mete / ye sitte at the table
 In euery prees and in euery company 150
 Dispose you to be so compenable
 That men may of you reporte for *commendable*
 For trusteth wel / vpon your berynge
 Men wil you blame or gyue preysynge 154

[Leaf 4 b.]

When you're at
 meals,

be companionable

[23]

And prynte ye trewly your memorie
 For a princypal point of fair noretur
 Ye deprauce no man absent especyally 157
 Saynt austyn amonessheth with besy cure
 How men atte table / shold hem assure
 That there escape them / no suche langage
 As myght other folke hurte to disparage 161

and don't run
 down absent men.
 St Austin

152 Dyspose you to be so *compenable* [Hill's Text.]
that men may of you reporte for *commendable*;
 for, trustyth well, vpon your beryng
 Men will you blame or gyve *praysyng*.

¶ 156 And prynte ye truly *this* in your memorye
 for a princypall poynt of fayer noretvre,
 that ye deprave no man absente especyally.
 Saynt Austyne amonessheth *with* besy cure,
 howe men att table shulde them assure
 160 that *ther* escape them no suche langage
 As myght hurte or bryng folke to disparage.

[24]

This curteise clarke writeth in ryght this wyse,
 Rebukynge the vice of vile detraccioun ;
 'What man hit be that of custome and guise 164
 Hurteth wyth his tounge wyth foule corrosioun
 The absent wight, for that abusioun
 Suche detractoure [wayue]¹ from this table 1 A word lost.
 As vn-worthe, not to be reprocheable. 168

[25]

Whan ye sitten therfor at youre repaste,
 Annoyethe no man present nor absent,
 But speketh feyre, for and ye make waste 171
 Off [large] langage, for soth ye most be schent ;
 And wan ye speke, speketh wyth good entent
 Of maters appendyng to myrth and plesaunce,
 But nothyng that may causen men greuance. 175

[26]

Eschewe also taches of foule rauenyng,
 Of gredy lust the vncurteyce appetite ;
 Pres not to sone to youre viaunde, restraine 178
 Your handis a while wyth manerly respytte ;
 Fedith for necessite, not for delite,
 Demeneth you in mete and drink soo sobrelly,
 That ye be not infecte wyth gloteny. 182

¶ This curteys clerke wryteth in *this* wyse, [Hill's Text.]
 Rebukynge the vyce of vyle detraccion :
 164 what may yt be *that* of custum & gvyse
 hurteth *with* tonge or by fowle colusyon
 The absente / weyne¹ ye for *that* abusyon [1 or weyne]
 Suche a detractowre from the table
 168 As vnworthy & also reprocheable.

¶ Whan ye sytte *therfor* at *your* repast,
 Annoye ye no man present nor absente,
 but speke ye fewe ; for yff ye make wast
 172 of large langage, for soth ye must be shent.

[24]

This curtoys clerk / writeth in this wise	
Rebukynge the vice / of vyle detraction	rebukes the vice of detraction,
What man it be / that of custom & guyse	164
Hurteth with tunge / or by foule colusion	and bids you turn all backbiters from the table
Thabsente / weyue ye for that abusioñ	
Suche a detractour / from the table	
As vnworthy / and also reprochable	168

[25]

Whan ye sitte therefore at your repaste	[Leaf 5 a.]
Amoye ye noman presente nor absente	
But speke ye fewe / for yf ye make waste	171 Speak little,
Of large langage / for sothe ye must be shent	
And whan ye speke / speke ye with good entent	and that pleasantly.
Of maters acordynge vnto plesanee	
But nothing / that may cause men greuañce	175

[26]

Eschewe also tacches of foule Raueyne	Don't be ravenous,
Of gredy luste / with vncurteys appetyte ¹	
Prece not to sone / fro your viand restreyne	178 but keep your hands from your food for a time.
Your honde a while / with manerly respite	
Fede you for necessite / & not for delite	
Demene you with mete / & drynke so sobrelly	
That ye not ben enfecte with glotony	182

¹ *Orig.* appetyce.

& whan ye speke // speke *with* good Intent [Hill's Text.]
 Off maters accordyng vnto plesavnce,
 but no thyng *that* may cavse men grevaunce.

- ¶ Eschewe also tacches of fowle ravayne,
 177 of gredy luste ; *with* vncurteys appetyte
 prece not to sone ; fro your vyande restrayne
 your hand a while *with* manerly respyte ;
 180 fiede you for necessaryte, & not for delyte.
 Demene you *with* mete & drynke so soberly
 That ye not be Infecte wyth glotony.

[27]

Embrewē not yourē vesselle ne yourē cuppe ¹ 1 Sic. Read "napery."
 Ouēr mesure and maner, but saue them clene ;
 Ensoyle not yourē cuppe, but kepe hit clenely, 185
 Lete no fatte ferthyng of yourē lippe be sen.
 For that is foule ; wotte you what I mene ?
 Or than ye drinke, for yourē owne honeste,
 Yourē lippis wepe, and klenly loke they be. 189

[28]

Blowe not in yourē drinke ne in yourē potage,
 Ne farsith not yourē disshe to full of brede,
 Ne bere not yourē knyf towardē yourē vysage, 192
 For there-in is parell and mekell drede.
 Clawe not yourē face ne touche not yourē hede
 Wyth yourē bare hande, sitting at the table,
 For in norture that is reprobable. 196

[29]

Lowse not yourē gyrlyll syttyng at yourē table,² 2 Sic. Read "mete."
 For that is a tache of vncurtesye,
 But and ye seme ye be enbrasyde streite, 199
 Or than ye sitte amende hit secrely,
 So couertly that no wyght hit espie.
 Be ware also no breth from you rebounde
 Vppe ne downe, be ware that shamefull sounde.

¶ Enbrowe not your vessell ne your naprye [Hill's Text.]
 184 over maner & measure, but kepe them clene ; [M C lxij.]
 Ensoyle not your cuppe, but kepe yt clenly,
 lete no farsyone on your lypis be sene,
 ffor that ys fowle ; ye wott what I mene.
 188 Or than ye drynke, for your own honeste
 your lypis wpe, & clenly loke they be.
 ¶ Blowe not in your drynke ne in your pottage,
 Ne fereē not your disshe to full of brede ;
 192 bere not your knyf toward your vysage,
 ffor thereyn ys peryll & mykell drede ;

[27]

Enbrowe not your vessel / ne your naprye	Don't dirty your cloth or cup.
Ouer maner & mesure / but kepe hem clene	
Ensoyle not your cuppe / but kepe it clenlye	185
Lete no fat farssine / on your lippes be sene	
For that is fowle / ye wote what I mene	
Or than ye drynke / for your owen honeste	Wipe your lips before you drink.
Your lippes wype / and clenly loke they be	189

[28]

Blowe not in your drinke ne in your potage	[Leaf 5 b.] Don't blow on your food,
Ne farse not your dishe to ful of brede	
Bere not your knyf / to warde your visage	192 or put your knife to your face,
For therin is parelle / and mykyl drede	
Clawe not your visage / touche not your hede	or scratch it or your head.
With your bare honde / sittynge atte table	
For in norture / suche thing is reproveable	196

[29]

Lose not your gyrdel / sittynge at your mete	Don't undo your girdle at table;
For that is a tacche / of vncurtesye	
But yf ye seme / ye be embraced streite	199 if it's tight, let it out before you sit down.
Or then ye sytte / amende it secretly	
So couertly that no wight you espye	
Beware also / no breth fro you rebounde	Don't break wind up or down.
Vp ne douñ / leste ye were shameful founde	203

196 Clawe not *your* visage, touche not *your* hede
with *your* bare honde syttyng at *the* table,
ffor in norture suche thyngis be reproveable. [Hill's Text.]

¶ Lose not *your* gyrdyll syttyng at *your* mete,
ffor *that* is a tache of vncurtesye ;
200 but yff ye seme ye be embrased streyte,
or than ye sytte, amend yt secretly
So wysely *that* no wight you aspye.
be ware also no breth fro you rebownd
Vp ne downe, lest ye were shamfull fownd.

[30]

Beth huste in chambre, cilent in the halle,
 Herkenyth well, yeneþ good audience ;
 Yef vs her or marchall for eny romour calle, 206
 Putting Iauglers to rebuke and cilence,
 Beth mylde of langage, demure of eloquence ;
 Enforeith you to them confourmyde be,
 That can most good and haue humanyte. 210

[31]

Touche not wyth mete salt in the saler,
 Lest folke Appoynt you of vneunnyngnesse,
 Dresse hit apparte vppon a clene tranchere ; 213
 Force not your mouth to fulle for wantannesse,
 Lene not vppon the table, that is but rudesse,
 And yf I shall to you so playnly say,
 Ouer the table ye shall not spette convey 217

[32]

Yif ye be seruid wyth metis delicate,
 Departith wyth youre fellowys in gentyl wyse,
 The clarke seith, ' nature is content and saciate 220
 Wyth meane diete, and lytill shall suffice.'
 Departyth therefore, as I to you devise ;
 Engrosith not vnto youre silven all,
 For gentilnesse will ay be lyberall. 224

¶ Be ye husht *in* chambre, seylente *in* hall ; [Hill's Text.]
 205 herkyn well, & geve good audyence
 yff vssher or marchall for any rymowre call ;
 putt ye yanglers to rebuke for scilence.
 208 Be ye myld of langage, demvre of eloquence ;
 Enforcee you vnto hym conformed to be
 that can most good, & hathe humanyte.

¶ Towch not with your mete salte *in* the saler,
 212 leest folke apoynte you of vneconnyngnesse ;
 Dresse yt aparte vpon a clene tranchere.
 ffarste not your mouth to full for wantonnesse ;

[30]

Be ye husht in chambre / seylent in halle	Be silent,
Herken wel ande gyue goode audience	
Yf vssher or marchal for ony Rumour calle	206
Put ye Ianglers to rebuke for silence	and put chattersors to rebuke.
Be ye mylde of langage / demure of eloquence	
Enforce you vnto hym conformed to be	Imitate him who has humanity.
That can moste good / ande hath humanyte	210

[31]

Touche not with your mete / salt in the saler	[Leaf 6 a.] Don't dip your meat in the saltcellar,
Lest folk apoynte you of vnconnyngnesse	
Dresse it aparte / vpon a clene trencher	213
Farse not your mouth to ful / for wantonnesse	
Lene not vpon the table / for that rude is	lean on the table,
And yf I shal to you playnly saye	
Ouer the table / ye shal not spetel conueye	217 or spit over it.

[32]

Yef ye be serued / with metes delicate	Share dainties with your fellows:
Departe with your felowe / in gentil wise	
The clerek saith / nature is content & saciate	220
With mene diete / and litil shall suffyse	
Departe therefore / as I you deuyse	
Engrose not / vnto your self alle	
For gentilnes / wil aye be liberalle	224 gentleness is liberal.

216 lene not on *the* table, for *that* rude ys ; [Hill's Text.]
& yff I shaft to you playnly saye,
ouer *the* table ye shaft not spetell conueye.

¶ Yff ye be *seruede with metis delycate*,
220 *Departe with your felawe in gentil wyse ;*
the clerke seyth, ' nature ys content & saciate
with mene dyete, & lytill shaft suffyce ;'
Departe therfor, as I you deuyce,
Engrose not vnto yowre selfe aft,
224 ffor gentylnesse wiff ay be lyberall.

[33]

And wan *percece* your*e* service is not large,
 Grucchith not wyth frownyng countenaunce,
 Ne maketh not ther-of to mekell charge, 227
 Disposeth you to goodly sufferaunce,
 And what ye haue, take hit for suffisaunce ;
 Holde you pleased wyth that god hath you sent,
 He hath Inough¹ that can hold hym content. 231 ^{1 MS. Inough.}

[34]

Burnysh no bonys wyth your*e* tethe, be ware,
 That houndis tecche fayleth of curtesie ;
 But wyth your*e* knyff make the bonys bare ; 234
 Handell your*e* mete so well and so clenly,
 That ye offenden not the company
 Where ye be sette, as ferre-forth as ye can ;
 Remembre well that maner maketh man. 238

[35]

And whan your teeth shall cutte your*e* mete small,
 Wyth open mouth be ware that ye not ete,
 But loke your*e* lippis be closede as a wall, 241
 Whan to &² fro ye trauers your*e* mete ; ^{2 MS. a.}
 Kepe you so close that men haue no conceite
 To seyn of you langage of vilonye,
 Be cause ye ete your*e* mete vnma[ne]rly. 245

- ¶ And whan *percaas* your *seruyce* ys not large, [Hill's Text.]
 Groge not *with* frownyng covntenaunce,
 228 Ne make ther of not to mykyl charge ;
 Dyspose you to goodly suffraunce,
 & what ye haue, take yt in suffysaunce ;
 be you plesid *with* suche as god hath you sent ;
 he hath ynough þat can hold hym contente.
- 232 Burnysshe no bonys *with* your teth, be ware, [fl C lxij back.]
 Suche howndis tacches fallen of vncurtesye,
 but *with* your knyfe make the bonys bare.
 Handle your mete so well & so clenly

[33]

And whan percaas your seruise is not large	If your helping is not large, don't grumble,
Gruecheth not / with frowning contenaunce	
Ne make therof / not to mykyl charge	227
Dispose you to goodly suffraunce	
And what ye haue / take it in suffysaunce	
Be ye plesid with suche as god hath you sent	but be content.
He hath ynough / that can holde hym content	231

[34]

Burnysshe no bones / with your teth / beware	[Leaf 6 b.] Don't burnish bones with your teeth.
Suche houndis tacches / falle of vneurtesye	
But with your knyf / make the bones bare	234
Handle your mete / so wel and so clenly	Handle your food cleanly,
That ye offende not the company	
Where ye be sette / as ferforth as ye can	
Remembryng wel / that mauners make mañ	238 for Manners make Man.

[35]

Ande whan that / ye ete your mete smalle	
With open mouth / beware ye not ete	Eat with your lips closed
But loke your lippes / be closed as a walle	241
Whan to ande fro / ye traerse your mete	
Kepe you so cloos / that men haue no conseite	
To say of you / ony langage or vilonye	
Bicause ye ete your mete / vnmanerly	245

236 That ye offende not the company (Hill's Text.)
wher ye be sette, as ferforthe as ye can,
Remembryng wel that maners make man.

¶ And whan *that* ye ete *your* mete small,
240 *with* open mowth be ware ye not ete,
but loke / *your* lypes be closed as a wall ;
whan to & fro ye traerse *your* mete,
kepe you so cloos *that* men haue no conceyte
244 To saye of you any langage or vylonye
by cause ye ete *your* mete so vnmanerly.

[36]

Be ware, my child, of laughing *ouer* mesure,
 Ye shall not Also at the borde *youre* maylis pare,
 Ne pike not *youre* teth wyth *youre* knyff, I you ensure,
 Ete at *youre* messe, and odir folkes spare ; 249
 A glottoun can but make dissches bare,
 And of Inough he taketh *neuer* hede,
 He fedith for lust more than ¹ he doth for nede.

¹ MS. that.

[37]

And whan the borde is then [as] of *seruice*, 253
 Not replenyshide wyth gret diuercite,
 Of mete and drinke good chere may than suffice,
 Hit is A signe of gret humanite, 256
 Wyth gladsom chere than fulsom for to be ;
 The poet seyth howe that the poure borde
 Men may encrease wyth cherefull wille and worde.

[38]

And o thing, my childe, I warne you vndirstonde,
 Specially for *youre* owne honeste,
 In the water wasschith so elene *youre* hande, 262
 That *youre* towell neuer ensoyled be
 So foule that hit be lothely vnto se ;
 Wasschith wyth watire till *youre* handis be elene,
 And in *youre* clothe ther shall no spotte be sene.

¶ Beware, my chyld, of laughynge *ouer* mesure ;
 Ne at *the* borde ye shall no mayles pare,
 248 Ne pyke *your* teth *with* knyff, I you ensure.
 Ete at *your* messe, & other *folks* spare ;
 A gloton can but make *the* bouys bare,
 & of ynough he takyth *nevere* hede,
 252 he ffedyth more for lust than for nede.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ And whan *the* borde ys thyn as of *servyce*,
 Nowght replenysshed *with* gret dyversite
 of mete & drynke, gud chere may than suffice,
 256 *with* honest talkyng ; & also owght ye

[36]

Beware my childe / of laughyng ou ^r mesure	
Ne at the borde / ye shall no naylis pare	
Ne pyke your teth / with knyf / I you ensure	248
Ete at your messe / and other folkes spare	
A gloton can but make the bones bare	
Ande of ynough / he taketh neuer hed-	
He fedith more for lust / than for nede	252

Don't pare your nails at table, or pick your teeth with a knife.

[37]

And whan þ ^e borde is thynne / as of seruyse	
Nought repleneshed with grete diuersite	
Of mete & drinke good chere may theñ suffise	255
With honest talkyng / and also ought ye	
With gladsom chere / thenne fulsom for to be	
The poete saith / hou that a poure borde	
Men may enriche / with cheerful wil & worde	259

[Leaf 7 a.]
When there are not many dishes,
be satisfied with chatting cheerily.

[38]

And one thyng my chylde / ye vnderstonde	
In especyalle / for your owne honeste	
In the water / wasshe so clene your honde	262
That your towel / neuer enfoyled be	
So fowle / that it be lothsom on to see	
Wasshe with water / your hondes so cleene	
That in the towel shal no spotte be sene	266

Wash your hands clean in the water, so as to leave no dirt on your towel.

with gladsum chere then fulsome for to be : [Hil's Text.]
The poete seyth how *that* ' a powre borde
259 Men may enryche with cherfull wiff & worde.'

¶ And on thyng, my child, ye vnderstond,
In especyall for your own honeste :
In the water wasshe so clene your hond
that your towelf never ensoyled be
264 So fowle that yt be lothsome on to see ;
wasshe with water your hondis so cleene
that in the towelf shall no spote be sene.

[39]

Leue not youre spone in youre dissehe standyng,
 Ne vpon the brede hit shall not lie ;
 Lette youre trenchoure be elene for eny thyng, 269
 Yif ye haue no chaunge, yit as honestly
 As ye can, maketh avoydie,
 So that no fragment from youre trenchoure falle ;
 Do this, my childe, in chambre and in halle. 273

[40]

Whan Another speketh at the table,
 Be ware ye interrupte¹ not is tale nor langage, ^{1 MS. corruptly}
 For that is a thing discommendable, ^{has nattripte.} 276
 And hit is no signe of folkes sage
 To ben of wordis besy and outrage ;
 For the wyse man seyth plainly in sentence,
 ‘ He shall be wyse that yevith Audience.’ 280

[41]

Vndre-standeth ther-fore or than ye speke,
 Printyng in youre mynde elerely the sentence,
 He that vseth A mannes tale to breke 283
 Lettyth vneurtesly the Audience,
 And hurtyth hym-sylf for lacke of silence ;
 He may not yeue answere conveyent
 That herith not fynally what is ment. 287

¶ lete not your spone in youre dissehe stond, [Hill's Text.]
 268 Ne vpon *the* table yt shuld not lye ;
 lete your trenchowre be elene for any thyng,
 & yf ye haue, change yet as honestly
 As ye can ; make avoyde manerly
 272 So *that* no fragment fro your trenchere fall :
 Do thus, my child, in chambere & in hall.

¶ And whan a-nother man spekyth at *the* table,
 be ware ye interrupte not his langage,
 276 for *that* ys a thyng on-comendable,
 & yt ys not no signe of folkis sage

[39]

Lete not your sponne / in your disshe stounding		Don't leave your spoon in your dish or on the table.
Ne vpon the table / it shold not lye		Keep your trencher clean.
Lete your trenchour / be clene for ony thing	269	
And yf ye haue chañge / yet as honestly		
As ye can / make a voyde manerly		
So that no fragment / fro your trencher falle		
Do thus my childe / in chambre & in halle	273	

[40]

And whan another man / spekith atte table		[Leaf 7 b.]
Beware ye enterrupte not / his langage		Don't interrupt man in his talk.
For that is a thinge discomendable	276	
Ande it is no signe of folkes sage		
To be of langage / besy ande outrage		
For the wyse man saide / in his sentence		
He sholde be wyse / that gyueth audience	280	

[41]

Vnderstonde therefore or than ye speke		Before you speak, settle in your mind what you have to say.
Prynte in your mynde / clerly the sentence		
Who that vsith / a mannes tale to breke	283	
Letteth vneurteysly / alle the audyence		
Ande hurteth hym self / for lack of science		
He may not gyue answere conuenyente		
That herith not fynally / what is mente	287	

280 To be of langage besy & owtrage ; [Hill's Text.]
 ffor the wyse sayd in his sentence
 'he shuld be hold [& be wyse]¹ that gevyth
 audyence.' [1 In a later hand, above the line.]

¶ 284 Vnderstond *therfor* or than ye speke ; [ff C lxiiij.]
 prynt *in your mynde* clerly *the* sentence ;
 who *that vsyth* a manys tale to breke,
 lettyth vneurteysly *all* the audyence ;
 And hurteth *hym* self for lake of scyence ;
 he maye not geve answere *conuenyente*
that heryth not fynally what ys mente.

[42]

Be ware Also, my childe, of rehersaille
 Of materis whiche ben at the table mevide ;
 Hit grevith ofte and dothe men disavaylle, 290
 Full many a man that vice hath mysschevide,
 Of evill thyng saide is wors often contrivide ;
 Suche reportis alway loke ye esschewe,
 As may of olde frendis make enemyes newe. 294

[43]

Avise you well whan ye take youre disporte,
 Honest games that ye haunte and vse,
 And suche as ben of violente reporte, 297
 I counsell you, my childe, that ye refuse ;
 For trustith well ye shall nout you excuse
 From berchely fest, yef I may you asprie
 Playng at ¹ eny game of rebaudie. 301 1 MS. or.

[44]

It is to A goodly childe well syttyng,
 To vse disportis of myrth and plesaunce,
 To harpe and lute, or lustely to syng, 304
 And in the pres ryght manerly to daunce ;
 When men se A childe of suche gouernaunce,
 They seyn, ‘ gladdē may this [childes] frendis be
 To haue a sone soo manerly as he.’ 308

¶ But beware, my child, also of rehersayle [Hill's Text.]
 289 Off maters whiche be at *the* table meved ;
 It greweth ¹ ofte, & doth men dysavayle ;
 ffult many a man *that* vyce hathe myscheved ;
 292 Off evyll thynke sayd, ys worse contryved ;
 Suche reportes alwaye, my child, eschewe.
 As may of olde frendis make ennyes newe.

[¹ The line is over the *th.*]

¶ Avyse you well whan ye take your dysporte,
 296 honeste games *that* ye hawnt & vse ;
 & suche as bene of vyleyns report,
 I counsell you, my child, *that* ye refuse ;

[42]

But beware my childe / also of rehersaylle		Don't repeat what you hear at table.
Of maters / whiche ben atte table meuide		
It greuith ofte / ande doth men disauayle	290	
Ful many a man / þ ^t vice hath myscheuide		
Of euyl thinge saide / is werse contryuide		
Suche reportis / alway my childe eschewe		
As may of olde frendis / make enemyes newe	294	

[43]

Aduise you wel whan ye take your disporte		[Leaf S a.] Play only at proper games.
Honest games / that ye haunte ande vse		
And suche as ben of vylayns reporte	297	
I counceyl you my chyld / that ye refuse		
For truste ye wel / ye shal you not excuse		
From brecheles feste / and I may you espye		
Playnge at ony game of Rybawdrye	301	

[44]

It is to a godly chyld wel syttyng		
To vse disportes of myrthe & plesaunce		
To harpe or lute / or lustely to synge	304	You should harp, lute, sing, or dance.
Or in the prees right manerly to daunce		
Whan men se a chyld of suche gouernance		
They saye / glad may this chyldis frendis be		
To haue a chyld / so manerly as is he	308	

300 ffor truste ye weþt ye shaft you not excuse
ffrom brecheles feste, & I may you espye
Playenge at any game of rebawdrye.

(*Hill's Text.*)

¶ Ytt ys to a goodly child weþt syttyng
304 To vse dysportes of myrth & plesavnce,
to harpe, to lute, or lustyly to synge,
Or in the prees right manerly to davnce.
whan men se a child of suche governavnce,
thei saye, 'glade may this childis frendys be
308 To haue a child so manerly as ys he.'

[45]

Exersice youre-selfe also in redyng
 Of bokys enournede wyth eloquence ;
 Ther shall ye fynde both plesaunce and lernyng, 311
 And so ye may in euery good presence
 Some [what] fynde and see as in sentence,
 That shall accorde the tyme to ocupie,
 That ye not nede to stoundyn idelie. 315

[46]

It¹ is fare to be comynycatyfe 1 MS. hit
 In matires vnto purpoos accordyng,
 So that a wight sume not excessyfe, 318
 For trusteth well, hit is tedious thyng
 For to here a childe multiplie talkyng,
 Yif hit be not to the purpose applied,
 And also wyth goodly termys aleyde. 322

[47]

Redith Gower in his wrytyng moralle,
 That auñcient faders memorie,
 Redith his bokis clepide 'confessionalle,' 325
 Wyth many anodir vertnous tretie,
 Full of sentence sette so frutuonsly,
 That them to rede shall yeue you corage,
 So is he fulle of sentence and langage. 329

¶ Excersyse also *your* selfe in redyng [Hill's Text.]
 Off bokes enorned with eloquence,
ther shaft ye fynde both plesyre & lernyng,
 312 so *that* ye may in euery good presence
 Some-what fynde as in sentence
that shaft accorde the tyme to occupye,
 That ye not nede to stonde ydellye.

¶ It ys fayer to be comynycatyfe
 317 In maters vnto purpose accordyng,
 So *that* a wyghte seme exersyfe ;
 ffor trustyth well yt ys a tedyovs thyng

[45]

Excercise your self also in redyngē		Practise reading of eloquent books.
Of bookes enornede with eloquence		
Ther shal ye fynde / bothe plesir & lernyngē	311	
So that ye may / in euery good presence		
Somwhat fynde / as in sentence		
That shal acorde / the tyme to occupy		
That ye not nede / to stonden ydelly	315	

[46]

It is fayr / for to be comynycatyf		[Leaf 8 b.] It is right to talk pertinently,
In maters vnto purpose acordyngē		
So that a wyght seme excersyf	318	
For trusteth wel / it is a tedyous thyngē		
For to here a chyldē / multeplye talkyng		but a bore if the talk is irrelevant.
Yf it be not to the purpose applyede		
Ande also with / goodly termys alyede	322	

[47]

Redeth gower in his wrytyngē moralle		Read Gower's
That auncent ¹ fader of memorye		1 Orig. anacyent.
Redeth his bookes / callede confessionalle	325	<i>Confessio</i> <i>Amentis,</i>
With many another vertuous trayttye		
Ful of sentence / set ful fructuosly		
That hym to rede / shal gyue you corage		
He is so ful of fruyt. sentence and langage	329	

320 ffor to here a child multiply talkyng
yf yt be not to *the* purpose applyed,
& also *with* goodly termes alyed. [Hull's Text.]

¶ Redyth gover in his wrytyng morall,
324 That Auncyente fader of memorye,
Redyth his bookes called *confessyonall*,
with many a-nothere vertuus tretye
full of sentence sett full fructuosly,
328 That hym to rede shaft geve you covrage,
he ys so full of frute, sentence, & langage.

[48]

O Fader and Founder of eternate eloquence,
 That cluminede all this oure britaigne ;
 To sone we lost his lauriate presence, 332
 O lusty licoure of that fulsome fountaigne ;
 Cursed deth, why hast thou this poete slayne,
 I mene Fadir chaucers, mastir Galfride ?
 Allas ! the while, that *euere* he from vs diede. 336

[49]

Redith his bokys fulle of all plesaunce,
 Clere in sentence, in longage excellent,
 Brefly to wryte suche was his suffesaunce, 339
 What-euer to sey he toke in his entent,
 His longage was so feyre and pertinent,
 That semed vnto mennys heryng,
 Not¹ only the worde, but verrely the thing. 343

1 MS. But.

[50]

Redith, my child, redith his warkys all,
 Refuseth non, they ben expedient ;
 Sentence or langage, or both, fynde ye shall 346
 Full delectable, for that fader ment
 Of all his purpos and his hole entent
 Howe to plesse in euery audience,
 And in oure toung was well of eloquence. 350

¶ O fader & fownder of ornate eloquence [Hil's Text]
that Illumyned hast all oure bretayne ! [fl C lxiij back.]
 332 To sone we loste thy lavreat science,
 O lusty lyqvoivre of *that* fulsum fontayne !
 O cursed deth ! why hast *thou that* poete slayne,
 I mene fader chavucer, mayster galfryde ?
 336 Alas *the* while *that* ever he from vs dyed !

¶ Redyth his werkes full of plesavnce,
 Clere in sentence, *In* langage excellent :
 Bryeffly to wryte, such was his suffysavnce,
 340 What-euere to say he toke *in* his entente,

[48]

O fader and founder of ormate eloquence	and the Father and Founder of Eloquence,
That enlunened hast alle our bretayne	
To soone we loste / thy laureate seyence	332 [Leaf 163, baek.]
O lusty lyquour / of that fulsom fontayne	
O cursid deth / why hast thou þ ^t poete slayne	
I mene fader chaucer / maister galfryde	mayster Galfryde Chawcer,
Alas the whyle / that euer he from vs dyde	336

[49]

Redith his werkis / ful of plesaunce	[Leaf 9 a.] whose works are full of plesaunce,
Clere in sentence / in langage excellent	
Briefly to wryte / suche was his suffysaunce	339
What euer to saye / he toke in his entente	
His langage was so fayr and pertynente	whose language
It semeth vnto manny's heerynge	seems not only words, but truly things.
Not only the worde / but verely the thyng	343

[50]

Redeth my chylde / redeth his bookes alle	Read <i>all</i> his books; refuse none :
Refuseth none / they ben expedyente	
Sentence or langage / or bothe fynde ye shalle	346
Ful delectable / for that good fader mente	he is delightful.
Of al his purpose / and his hole entente	
How to plesse in every audyence	
And in our tunge / was welle of eloquence	350

his langage was so fayere & pertynente,
yt semeth vnto manys heryng
343 Not only the worde, but verely *the* thyng.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ Redyth, my child, redyth his bookes aft,
Refusith Non, they ben expedyente ;
sentence or langage, bothi fynd ye shaft ;
348 ffult delectable that good fader mente,
for aft his purpose & his hole entente
[was] how to please in every audyence,
& In owre tonge was welff of Eloquence.

[51]

Beholde Oclyff in his translacion,
 In goodly langage and sentence passing wyse,
 Yevyng the prince suche exortacion 353
 As to his highnesse he coude best devyse.
 Of trowth, peace, of mercy, and of Iustice,
 And odir vertuys, sparing for no slouthe
 To don his devere, and quiten hym, as trowth 357

[52]

Required hym, anenste his souereyne,
 Most dradde and louyd, whos excellent highnesse
 He aduertysede by his writing playne, 360
 To vertue *per*teynyng to the nobles
 Of a prince, and berith wyttensse
 His treti entitlede 'of regyment,'
 Compyled of most entier true entent. 364

[53]

Loketh Also vppon dan Iohn lidgate,
 My mastire, whilome clepid monke of bury,
 Worthy to be renownede laureate, 367
 I pray to gode, in blis his soule be mery,
 Synging 'Rex Splendens,' the heuently 'kery,'
 Among the muses ix celestiall,
 Afore the hieghest Iubiter of all. 371

¶ Behold Oeklyf in his transslacion,¹
 352 In goodly langage & sentence passyng wyse
 howe he gewyth his prince such exortacion
 As to the hyste he could best devyse
 Off trowth / pees / mercy / & Iustyse,
 356 & vertu, lettynge for no slowth
 To do his devoyre & qvyte hym his trowth.

[*Hill's Text.*]
 [1 translacion]

¶ Requyre hym As Agaynst his soverayne,
 360 he advertysed by his wrytyng playne
 To vertu *aper*teynyng to nobles

[51]

Beholde Ocklyf in his translacion		Read Oecleuetoo,
In goodly langage / & sentence passyng wyse		
How he gyueth his prynce / suche exortacion	353	who gave his Prince such wise advice
As to the hyst / he coude best deuysse		
Of trouthe. pees. mercy. and Iustise		
And vertues / leetyng for no slouthe		
To do his deuoir & quite him of his trouthe	357	

[52]

Requirede hym / as ayenst his souerayne		[Leaf 9 b.]
Most drade & louyde / was excellent hyeues		
He aduertysede / by his wrytyng playne	360	
To vertu / apperteynyng to nobles		
Of a prynce / as bereth goode wytnes		
His traytye / entitlede of regymente		in his treatise <i>De Regimine Principum.</i>
Compylede of entyer trewe entente	364	

[53]

Loke also / vpon dan Iohn lydgate		John Lydgate, too, my master.
My maister whylome / monke of berye		
Worthy to be renomede / as poete laureate	367	
I praye to gode in blysse his soule be mercy		(I pray God his soul is singing <i>Rex splendens</i>)
Syngyng Rex splendens that heuenly kyrye		
Amonge the muses nyne celestyalle		
Byfore the hyst Iubyter of alle	371	

	Off a prince, as beryth god wytnes, hys treatye entytled of regemente, 364 Compyled of entyer trewe entente.	[<i>Hill's Text.</i>]
--	--	-------------------------

¶	Loke also than vpon Iohan lydgate, My mayrster, whylom monke of bury, worthy to be renomede As poetæ lavreate ; 368 I pray to god in blysse his sowle be mery, Syngyng / Rex splendens / that heuenly Kyrye, Amonge the muses nyne celestyall be-fore the hyghest Iubyter of all,
---	---

[54]

I not why deth my mastire dide envie,
 But for he shulde chaunge his habite ;
 Pety hit is that suche a man shulde die ! 374
 But nowe I trist he be a carmylite ;
 His amyse blacke is chaunged into white,
 Among the muses ix celestiall,
 Afore the hieghest Iubiter of all ; 378

[55]

Passing the muses all of elicone,
 Where is ynymparable of Armonyne,
 Thedir I trist my mastir-is soule is gone, 381
 The sterrede palays aboue dapplede skye,
 Ther to syng ' sanctus ' incessantly
 Among the muses ix celestiall,
 Affore the highest Iubiter of all. 385

[56]

Redith is volumes that ben so large and wyde,
 Souereynly sitte in sadnesse of sentence,
 Elumynede wyth colouris fresshe on euery syde, 388
 Hit passith my wytte, I haue no eloquence
 To yeue hym lawde aftir his excellence,
 For I dare say he lefte hym not on lyue,
 That coude his cunnyng suffisantly discreue. 392

372

[Omitted. See Preface, p. ii.]

[Hill's Text.]

376

¶ Passyng the mvses nyne of elycon,
 380 Wher ys no pareyff of Armonyne ;
 Thyder I trust my Maysters soule be gon,
 The sterred paleys above the dappled skye,

[54]

[Omitted. See Preface, p. ii.]

374

378

[55]

Passynge the muses nyne of Elycoñ	
Where is non pareyl of armonye	
Thider I truste my meistres soule begone	381
The sterride paleys / aboute the dapplyd skye	in the starred palace above the dappled sky, before the
There to synge sanctus incessantly	
Amonge the muses ix celestyalle	
Byfore the hyst / Iubiter of alle	385
	highest Jupiter of all.)

[56]

Redeth his volumes / that ben large & wyde	
Seueryly set / in sadnes of sentence	
Enlumyned with colours fressh on euery side	388
Me lacketh witte / I haue none eloquence	[Leaf 10 a.] Read his large volumes
To gyue hym lawde / after his excellence	illuminated with fresh colours.
For I dar saye / he lefte hym not a lyue	
That coude his connyng / sufficiently discerne	392

384	Ther to syng sanctus insessavntly Emonge the mvses nyne celestyaff, Before <i>the</i> hyste Iubyter of aff.	<i>Hill's Text.</i>
-----	---	---------------------

¶	Redyth hys volumes <i>that</i> be large & wyde, Seueryly sette in sadnes of sentence,	
388	Enlumined <i>with</i> colovres fresshe on euery side. Me lakketh wytt, I haue non eloquence, To geve <i>hym</i> lawde after his excellence, ffor I dare saye he lefte <i>hym</i> not alyve	[M C 1311j]
392	That covde his <i>connyng</i> ssufficiently discryve.	

[57]

But his werkys his laude moste nede conquere,
 He may neuer oute of remembrance die,
 His werkys shall his [name¹] conuey and bere 395 ^{1 MS. here repeats}
 Aboute the world all-most eternallie ;
 Lette his owne werkys prayse hym and magnifie ;
 I dare not preyse, for fere that I offende,
 My lewde langage shuld rather appeyre than amend.

[58]

Lo, my childe, thes good faders Auñcient
 Repide the feldis fresshe of fulsumnesse,
 The floures feyre they gadderid vp and hent, 402
 Of siluereus langage the tresoure and richesse ;
 Who wolle hit haue, my litle childe, doutelesse
 Must of hem begge, ther is no more to say,
 For of oure tounge they were bothe locke and key.

[59]

There can no man there fames nowe disteyne,
 Thanbawmede tounge and aureate sentence,
 Men gette hit nowe by cantelmele, and gleyne 409
 Here and there wyth besy diligence,
 And fayne wolde riche the crafte of eloquence ;
 But be the glaynes is hit often sene,
 In whois feldis they glayned haue and bene. 413

¶ But his werkes his lavde must nede conquere ; [Hil's Text.]
thei may never owt of remembravnce dye ;
 hys werkes shaft his name *conveye* & bere
 396 Aboute *the* world almoste eternelly.
 lete his owne *werkis* prayse hym, & magnifye ;
 I dare not prayse, leest for fere I offende ;
 My langage shuld rathere apayere than amend.

¶ Loo, my child, this faders avneyente
 401 Reopen *the* fylde fresshe of fulsomnes ;
the flowres fresshe thei gadered vp, & hente.
 Off syluer langage *the* greate ryches

[57]

But his werkis / his laude / must nede <i>conquere</i>	His works
They may neuer / out of remembraunce dye	
His werkis shal his name conueye & bere	395 shall bear his
Aboute the worlde / almost eternely	name about the
Lete his owen werkis preyse hym & magnefie	world almost
I dar not preyse / for fere lest I offende	eternally.
My langage / shold rather apeyre than amende	399

[58]

Loo my childe / these faders auneyente	[Leaf 10 b.]
Repen the feldes fresshe of fulsomnes	These ancient
The flours fresh they gadred vp & hente	fathers reaped the
Of siluer langage / the grete riches	fields,
Who wil it haue my lityl childe doutles	402 and gathered the
Muste of hem begge / ther is no more to saye	flowers.
For of our tunge / they were both lok & kaye	406 He who wants
	silver words
	must beg of them.

[59]

Ther can nomañ now her werkis disteyne	
The enbamed tunge / and aureate sentence	
Men gete it now / by cantelmele & gleyne	409 Now we only
Here and there by besy diligence	glean,
And fayne wold reche / her craft of eloquence	
And by the gleyne / it is ful oft sene	
In whos felde / the gleyners haue bene	413 and by the
	gleaning one sees
	in whose fields the
	gleaners have
	been.

404 who will yt haue, my child, dowlles [Hill's Text.]
 Muste of *them* begge: there ys no more to saye,
 ffor of owre tonge *thei* were both loke & keye;

¶
 408 Ther can no man *ther* werkes dysteyne:
 The enbamed tonge & avreat sentence,
 Men gete yt now by *cantelmele*, & glene
 here & there by besy delygence,
 & fayne wold reche *ther* craft of eloquence;
 412 & by *the* gleyne ytt ys full ofte sene
 In whose fylde the gleners haue bene.

[60]

As vnto me Age hath bede good morowe,
 I am not able clerly for to gleyne,
 Nature is feyne of crafte here eien to borowe, 416
 Me fayleth clerenesse of myn eien tweyne ;
 Begge I may, I can no gleyne certeyn,
 Ther-for that werke I wolle playnly remytte
 To folke yong, more persaunt clere of wytte. 420

[61]

And syke also, and in case ye fynde
 Suche gleyne fresch as hath some apparence
 Of fayre langage, yet take them and vnbynde, 423
 And preueth what they beth in existence,
 Coloured in langage, savory in sentence,
 And dou[te]th not, my childe, wythoute drede,
 Hit woll profite such thyng to se and rede. 427

[62]

Yit eft-sonnys, my childe, let vs resorte
 To the intente of oure fyrst matiere
 Digresside, somewhat fulle we woldd reporte, 430
 And renyue the lawde of them that were
 Founders of oure langage, thilke fadyrs dere,
 Who-is soulis god [aboue] in b[li]esse inhaunce
 That lusten so oure langage to Avaunce. 434

¶ And vnto my age bot good morowe
 I am not able clerly for to gleyne,
 416 Nature ys fayne of crafte her eyen to borow ;
 Me lakketh clernes of myne eyen twayne ;
 Begge I may / gleyne I may not certeyne ;
 therefore that werke I wilt playnly remytte
 420 To folkis yong, more passyng clere of wyte.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ Seche ye therefore, & in caas ye fynde
 suche glenars fresshe as haue sum apparens
 Off fayer langage, yet take them, & vnbynde,
 424 & preve ye what thei be in existence

[60]

And vnto me / age hath bode good morowe	
I am not able clenly / for to gleyne	I cannot glean,
Nature is fayn of craft / her eyen to borowe	416
Me lacketh clerenes / of myn eyen tweyne	
Begge I maye / gleyne I can not certeyne	I can only beg :
Therefore þ ^t werck / I wil playnly remytte	gleaning I give
To folkis yong / more passyng clere of witte	420 up to younger folks.

[61]

Seche ye therefore / and in caas ye fynde	If you find such
Such gleyhors fressh as haue soñ appare ^{nce}	gleaners,
Of fayr langage / yet take hem & vnbynde	423 unbind their sheaves :
And preue ye / what they be in existence	
Coloured in langage / sauerly in sentence	their fair speech
And doubte not my childe / withoute drede	
It wil prouffite to see suche thingis & red[e] ¹	427 will profit you.

[62]

Yet eft sones my childe / lete vs resorte	[Leaf 11 a.]
To thentente of yur first matere	But let us return to our first subject.
Degressed somewhat / for we wold reporte	430
And reuiue the laude of hem that were	
Famous in our langage / these faders dere	
Whos sowles in blysse / god eternel auancee	
That lysten so our langage to enhance	434

¹ A hole in the paper.

Coloured in langage, sauerly in sentence, [HUT's Text.]
& dowte not, my child, with-owt drede
427 yt wil profet to se such thyngis, & rede.

¶ Ye, efte-soones, my child, let vs resorte
To the yntent of your fyrst matere
Degressed somewhat, for we wolde reporte
& reuyue the lawde of them that were
432 famous in owre langage, these faders dere
whos¹ sowles in blis, god eternal^l auancee,
that lysten some owre langage to enhavnce !

¹ The s is by a later hand.

[63]

Than, litle childe, I councele you that ye
 Take hede vnto the norture that men vse,
 Newe founden or Auncient whet[h]er hit be, 437
 So shall no man youre curteyse refuse ;
 The guise and custome shall you, my childe, excuse ;
 Mennys werkys haue often entirchaunge,
 That nowe is norture, suntyme had ben full straunge.

[64]

Thinges whilome vside ben layde aside,
 And new fetis dayly ben contryvyde,
 Men[nys actes] can in no plight abyde, 444
 They ben chaungeable and oft mevide,
 Thing some-tyme alowide is nowe reprevide,
 And aftir this shall thingis vppe aryse,
 That men sette nowe but [at] litle a prise. 448

[65]

Thus mene I, my childe, that ye shall vse and haunte
 The guise of them that don most manerly,
 But be ware of vnthrefte ruskyn galaunte, 451
 Counterfetoure vncunnyng of curtesie,
 His tecches ben infecte wyth vilonye,
 Vngerde, vnblesside, seruyng at the table,
 Me semeth hym *seruaunt* full pendable. 455

¶ Then litiþ Iohñ, I consayle you *that ye*
 436 Take hede to *the* nortvres *that men* vse,
 newe fownd or avneyent, *whether* yt be ;
 So shall no man *your* curtesye refuse ;
the gyse & custum, my child, shall you excuse.
 440 Menys werkes haue oftyn enterchavnce ;
that nowys norture, *somtyme* hath be stravngc ;

[Hill's Text.]

[fol C lxiiij back.]

¶ Thyngis whylom vsed be now layd a-syde,
 & newe fetes dayly be contryved :
 444 Menys actes *can* in no plyte abyde,
 They be chavngable & ofte meved ;

[63]

Thenne lityl Iofin / I counceyl you that ye		Little Jack,
Take hede to the norture / that men vse		take heed to the
Newe founde / or auneynt whether it be	437	manners of your
So shal no man / your curtoisye refuse		time,
The guyse & custom / my child shal you excuse		
Mennys werkis / haue often enterchaunge		for customs
That nowe is norture / somtyme had be straunge	441	change,

[64]

Thingis whilom vsed / ben now leyd a syde		
And newe feetis / dayly ben contreuide		new ways are
Mennys actes / can in no plyte abyde	444	invented every
They be changeable ande ofte meuide		day,
Thingis somtyme alowed / is now repreuid		
And after this / shal thinges vp aryse		and will be
That men set now / but at lytyl pryse	448	hereafter.

[65]

This mene I my childe / þ ^t ye shal haunte		[Leaf 11 b.]
The guyse of them / that do most manerly		Imitate the well-
But beware of vnthryft Ruskyn galañte	451	mannered, and
Counterfeter of vnconnyng curtoisye		beware of ruskyn
His tacchis ben enfeete with vilonye		gallants
Vngyrte. vnblyssed. seruyng atte table		of bad habits,
Me semeth hym a seruañt nothing able	455	servng ungirt,

thynges sumtyme alowed be now repreved ; [Hill's Text.]
 & after this shaft thynges vp a-ryse
 448 that men sett now but at lytiff pryse :

¶ This mene I, my child, *that* ye shaft havnte
the gyse of *them that* do most manerly ;
 452 but be ware of onthryft¹ ruskyn gallavnte,
 Conterfeter² of vnconnyng curtessy,
 hys taches ben enfeete *with* vylonye ;
 Vngerte / vnblessed / *servyng* at table,
 Me semeth *hym* a *servavnte* no thyng able ;

¹ A later hand has added *y*.
² The *r* is by a later hand.

[66]

Wynter ne somer to his souerayne
 Chappron hardy no bonet lust avale,
 For euery worde yenyng his maister tweyne, 458
 Vaunparlere in euery mannes tale,
 Absolon wyth the disculede heres smalle ;
 Lyke to A presener of seint Malouse,
 A sonny bush myght cause hym to goo louse. 462

[67]

O I passe norture ! fy ! fy ! for schame !
 I shuld haue seide he myght go hauke and huzt,
 For that schuld be A gentilmannys game, 465
 To suche disportis thes gentis folkys be wounte ;
 I seide to ferre, my langage was to blounte,
 But of this galaunte, loo ! loke a while & fele,
 He feccheth his compace whan he shall bowe or kuele,

[68]

Braced so straytly th[at h]e¹ may not plie, ¹ MS. the.
 But gaderith hit in by maner of wyndlese,
 And ȝif he wrenche aside or lytil wrye, 472
 His gere stonte all in pertous² case, ² Read perious ?
 The scho, the hose, the point, doublet, and lace ;
 And if ought breke, somme thinges³ that ben badde ³ Read tounses.
 Shall sey anon, ‘ a knaue hath broke a ladde.’ 476

¶ Wynter & somer to his soverayne [Hill's Text.]
 457 Capron hardy, no bonet lyst to avayle,
 For euery worde geveyng his mayster twayne,
 avantparler In euery manys tale,
 460 Absolon with disheveld heres smale,
 lyke to a prysoner of saynt malowes,
 A sonny busshe able to the galowes.

¶ O ! I passe nortvre ! fy, fy, for sham !
 464 I myght haue said he shuld go havke & honte,
 ffor that shuld be a gentylman[i]s game,
 To suche dysportis gentiff folkis be wonte ;

[66]

Wynter and somer to his souereyne	
Capron hardy / no bonet lyste to auale	not doffing his cap to his master,
For every word / gyuing his maister tweyne	458
Auauntparler / in every manny's tale	forward in speech,
Absolon with disheneid heeris smale	rough-haired,
Lyke to a prysoner of seynt malowis	and lousy-headed,
A sonny busshe / able to go to the galowis	462

[67]

O I passe norture fy fy for shame	(though it's hardly good manners to say so.)
I myght haue said he shold go hauke & honte	
For that shold be a gentilmans game	465
To such disportes / gentil folkes be wonte	
I sayd to ferre / my langage was to blonte	
But yet sir galante whan ye shal bowe or knele	When he tries to kneel, he works
He goth by compace round as doth a whele	469 round like a wheel,

[68]

Braced so strait / that he may not plye	[Leaf 12 a.]
But gaderith it / by maner of a wyndelas	being braced so tight that he can't bend.
And he ought wrenche a syde / or a litil wrie	472 If he twists, a lace is like to crack.
His geer stondesth thenne / in ful parlous caas	
His sho / his hose / doblet / point & laas	
And yf ought breke / somme tunges þ ^t be bade	
Wil mocke & saie / a knaue hath broke a lad	476

468 I sayd to ferre, my langage was but blonte ; [Hill's Text.]
 but yet, sir gallavnt, whan ye shaft bowe or
 knele
 he goth by compasse rovnd as doth a whele.

¶ Braced so streyte þat he may not plye,
 472 but gaderyth yt by manere of a wyndlas ;
 & he awght wrench a-side, or a litil wrye,
 hys gere stondyth them in full parlous caas,
 hys sho // his hose / doblet, poynt & laas ;
 & yff owght breke, sum tonges that be bade
 476 wiff moke & say, "A knave hath broke a
 lade."

[69]

Lat galaunte go, I mene, recheles ruskyn ;
 Take hede, my childe, to suche as ben cunningyng,
 So shall ye wyrship best conquere and wynne, 479
 Enforsith you in all youre demenyng
 To sewe vertu, and¹ from foly declynyng ; 1 Omit and.
 And, my childe, that ye loue of honeste,
 Which is accordyng wyth humanyte. 483

[70]

That is, to you to vndirstond And knowe,
 That youre aray be manerly and resonable,
 Not appeissh knawen² and to mowe, 486 2 Sic.
 I[n] nyse aray that is not couenable,
 Fetis founde be folkys vnprofitable,
 That maketh this worlde so pleyedly transformate,
 That men semen almost effeminate. 490

[71]

Pley not Iakke mAlaperte, that is to sey,
 Be ware of *presumpcioun*, be ware of pride,
 Take not the fyrst place, my childe, be no way, 493
 Till odir be sette manerly abyde,
 Presomcion is often sette asyde,
 And Avalith f[r]om his highe³ de-gre, 3 MS. hight.
 And he sette vppe that hath humanite. 497

¶ Lete gallant go ! I mene, recheles ruskyn : [Hill's Text.]
 Take hede my child to suche as be cunningyng,
 so shaft ye best worship conquere & wynne ;
 480 Enforce you in all your demenyng
 To folowe vertu, & fro foly declynyng ;
 & weyte well that ye love honeste
 which ys accordyng vnto humanyte.

¶ That ys for you to vnderstond & knowe,
 485 that your araye be manerly resonable,
 Not apysshe vnto moke ne to mowe ;
 To nyce araye that ys not commendable.

[Thu 1503 per
 Richard Hill : ff
 C lxx]

[69]

Lete galante go / I mene recheles ruskyñ		Let Reckless Ruskyn go! You follow skilful men,
Take hede my chyld to suche as be connyng		
So shal ye best worship conquere & wyne	479	
Enforce you in al your demenyngē		
To folowe vertu / & fro folye declynyngē		virtue and
And waite wel that ye loue honeste		honesty.
Whiche is acordyngē ¹ vnto humanyte	483	

[70]

That is for you / to vnderstonde & knowe		[Leaf 12 b.]
That your araye / be manerly resonable		Don't dress
Not apysshe / on to mocken ne to mowe	486	apishly
To nyce araye / that is not commendable		or foppishly.
Fetis newe founden ² by foolis vnprouffitabe		
That make þ ^e world so plainly transformate		
That men semen almoste enfemynate	490	

[71]

Playe not Iack malapert / that is to saye		Don't play Jack Malapert, that is, don't be presumptuous.
Beware of presumpcion / beware of pryde ³		
Take not þ ^e first place my child by the waye	493	
Tyl other be sette / right manerly abyde		Wait till others are seated.
Presumptuous ben often set a syde.		
Ande alleday aualyde / as men may see		
And he is sette vp / that hath humylyte	497	

¹ *Orig.* acerdyngē.² *Orig.* fonuden.³ *Orig.* pryte.

488 ffetys, newe fonden by foolis vnprofytable, [Hill's Text.]
that make the worlde so playnly transformate
that men semen Almost enfemynate.

¶ Playe not Iacke maleperte, *that ys to say,*
 492 be ware of presumpcion, be ware of pryde ;
 take not *the* first place, my child, by *the* waye ;
 - tilt oder be sette, ryght manerly a-byde,
 presumtuous be ofte sette a-syde
 496 & all day aualed, as men may see,
 & he ys sette vp *that* hath humylyte.

[72]

To ¹ *cunnyng* persones regarde ye take,
 Where ye be sette in right atentif wyse,
 Cunnyng folke *cunnyng* folke shulde make, 500
 To their goodnesse ye shalle make your *summise*,
 And as thei do, ye mosten deuysse ;
 For this, my childe, is as the gospell treue,
 Whoo wolle be *cunnyng* muste the *cunnyng* sewe.

1 MS. The.

[73]

And o thing I charge you speciall[ie],
 To womanhode good kepe you take alway,
 And them to serue loke that ye haue an eie, 507
 Ther comaundementis, my childe, loke ye obey,
 Plesant wordis to them I warne you saye,
 And in all wyse do your dilligence,
 To do them plesure, honoure, and reuerence. 511

[74]

As at this tyme this tretice shall suffice,
 Disposeth you to kepe in your mynde
 The doctrines whiche for you I deuysse, 514
 And douteth not, fulle welle ye shall hit fynde ;
 To your honoure enrolle hit vp and bynde
 Ryght in your brest, and in your ryper age
 I shall wryten you here-of the surplusage. 518

¶ To *comnyng* persones regarde ye take,
 wher ye be sette, right in ententyf wyse ;
 500 *Comnyng* folke *comnyng* men shaft make ;
 to *ther* *comnyng* ye shaft make your surmyse,
 & as *thei* do, ye must your selfe deuysse ;
 ffor this, my child, ys as *the* gospell trewe,
 504 ‘ who wiff be *comnyng*, he must *comnyng* sewe.’

[Hill's Text.]

¶ And on thyng I warne you speycally :
 to womanhede take awe alway,
 & them to *serue* loke ye haue an eie,
 508 & *ther* *comavndmentis* that ye obeye ;

[72]

To connynde persoñs regarde ye take	Watch knowing folk, and
Where ye be sette / right in ententyf wyse	
Connyng folk / connyng men shal make	500
To their connyng ye shal make your surmise	their skill.
And as they do / ye muste your self deuyse	
For this my childe / is as the gospel trewe	
Who wil be connyng / he must þ ^e connyng sewe	504

[73]

And one thing / I warne you speyally	Specially attend to women, and
To womanhede / take awe alweye	
And them to serue / loke ye haue an eye	507
And their commandementis that ye obeye	
Plesant wordes I auyse you to them seye	speak pleasant words to them.
And in alle wyse / do ye your diligence	
To do them plesure / and reuerence	511

[74]

And at this tyme this trefye shal suffice	This is enough for the present. Mind you attend to it,
Dispose you / to kepe it in your mynde	
The doctrine whiche for you I deuyse	514
And doubteth not / ful wel ye shal it finde	
To your honour / enrolle it vp and bynde	
Right in your breste / and at your riper age	and when you're older I'll write you the rest.
I shal wryte to you / herof the surplusage	518

511 Plesant wordis I avyse you to them saye,
& in all wyse do ye your delygence
To do them plesyre and reverence. [Hill's Text.]

¶ And at this tyme *this* treatise shaft suffice ;
Do pose you to kepe it in *your* mynde,
the doctryne which for you I devyse ;
& dowlth not, full well ye shaft yt fynde
516 To *your* honowre ; enrolle yt vp & bynde
Right in *your* brest, & at *your* ryper age
I shaft write you here-of the surplusage.

[75]

Goo, litle childe, and who doth you Appose,
 Seyng, youre quaire kepeth non accordaunce,
 Tell [hym], as yite neyther of ryme ne prose 521
 Ye be experte ; pray hym of sufferaunce ;
 Childer must be of childly gouernaunce,
 And they must also entredet ¹ be 1 *Read entredet.*
 Wyth esy thyng, [and not] of subtilte. 525

[76]

Youre lytil quaier *summitteth* euery where
 To coreccion and beneuolence,
 But where enuie is, loke hit come not there, 528
 For eny thing kepith youre trefy thense ;
 Enuie is full of frowarde reprehense,
 And howe to hurte liethe euere in awayte,
 Kepeth youre quaieres, that hit be not her baite.

EXPLICIT.

DOMINE, SALUUM FAC REGEM.

¶ Go, litiff Iohn, & who doth you oppose, [*Hill's Text.*]
 520 sayenge your quayre, kepeth non accordavnce ;
 Tell hym as yet neythere in ryme ne prose
 ye ben experte ; pray hym of suffraunce.
 Chyldren ¹ muste be of chilydly gouernavnce, 1 MS. Clyldren.
 524 & also *thei* muste entredet be
 With easy thyng, & not with subtilte.

[75]

Go lytyl Iohn / and who doth you appose	Whoever
Sayng your quayer / kepe non accordance	questions you,
Telle hym as yet / neyther in ryme ne prose	521 say you are not
Ye ben expert / praye hym of suffrañce	yet up in ryme or
Chyldren muste be / of chyldly gouernañce	prose.
And also they muste entreyde be	
With esy thing / and not with subtylte	525

[76]

Go lytil quayer / submytte you eury where	Little book,
Vnder correctiön of benyuolence	I submit you to
And where enuye is / loke ye come not there	correctiön :
For any thinge / kepe your tretye thens	528
Enuye is ful of froward reprehens	but go not where
And how to hurte / lyeth euer in a wayte	envy is.
Kepe your quayer / that it be not ther bayte	532

Explicit the book of curtesye.

¶ Go, lytiff quayer, submyte you eury where	[Hill's Text.]
vnder correccion of benevolence ;	
528 & wher envy ys, loke you cum not there,	
ffor any thyng kepe your treatye thens ;	
Envye ys full of froward reprehens,	
& how to hurte lyeth ever in a-wayte ;	
532 kepe your quayre that yt be not ther bayte.	

Here endyth A lytyff treatyse
called *the boke of curtesy or litiff Iohan.*

INDEX.

H. stands for Hill's MS. at the bottom of the pages, O. for the Oriel MS. on the even pages. Cot. is for Cotgrave's Dictionary.

- Absolom with dissheveled hair, l. 460.
- Amyse, l. 376, amice. Fr. *amiet*, an Amiet or Amice, part of a massing priest's habit. Cot. From L. *amicire*, to throw round; *am* and *jacere*. Mahn.
- Annoy no man, l. 170.
- Apayer, l. 399 H., appeyre, O., worsen, impair.
- Apish, don't let your dress be, l. 486.
- Apnose, l. 519, question. See Oppose.
- Avale, l. 457, lower, take off.
- Ave Maria, say, l. 27, 77.
- Avoyde, l. 271, emptying.
- Austin, St, tells men how to behave at table, l. 158.
- Author is old, l. 414-18.
- Authors, the right ones to read, l. 323, 335, 351, 365, 393.
- Bearing, men praised or blamed for their, l. 153.
- Belch not, l. 202.
- Beware of ruskyn, l. 451.
- Birds and beasts, don't throw stones at, l. 64.
- Blow not in your drink, l. 190.
- Brecheles, l. 300, without breeches, of flogging.
- Breth, l. 203, wind.
- Capron, H., chappron, O., l. 457. O. Fr. *Chaperon*, "habillement de tête." Roquefort. Provençal, *capayron*, from Lat. *caput*. Skeat. *Chaperon* . . . any hood, bonnet . . . *In Chaperon fait à ven veux*, A notable whipster or twigger; a good one I warrant her. Cotgrave. 'Capron hardy' must then be 'a bold or saucy young scamp.'
- Cantelmele, l. 409, piecemeal: *cantel*, a corner, bit.
- CHAUCER, read his works full of pleasure, l. 335-350.
- Chere, l. 131, face, expression on it.
- Childly, *adj.* l. 523, O., childy, H., fitted for children.
- Children are like wax, l. 6.
- Church, how to behave at, l. 71-98.
- Clappe, l. 80, noise.
- Claw not your visage, l. 194.
- Comb your head, l. 36.
- Communicative, be, l. 316.

- Compace, l. 469. Fr. *compas*, a compasse, a circle, a round.
- Constaunce, l. 102. Fr. *constance*, stabilitie, firmenesse. Cot.
- Couenable, l. 487. Fr. *couenable*, apt, fit, meet for, beseeming, seemlie, &c. Cot.
- Crede, say it, l. 77.
- Cross yourself on rising, l. 25.
- Cumpenable, l. 151. Fr. *compagnable*, companable, friendlie, sociable.
- Cunning, (knowing) men, take heed to them, l. 478, l. 498-504.
- Cup, soil not yours, l. 186.
- Dancing, right for a child, l. 305.
- Deprave, l. 157, backbite, run down. Fr. *despraver*, spoyle, marre, make crooked, wrest, wry to bad purposes. Cot.
- Detraction, the vice of, l. 163.
- Disauayle, l. 290, harm, damage.
- Discreue, l. 392, describe.
- Disculede, l. 460, O., dissheveled.
- Disteyne, l. 407, stain, spot.
- Dogs, don't iritate them, l. 67.
- Dress, to be manerly, l. 47, 52; to be reasonable, l. 485.
- Ears, clean yours, l. 37.
- Entredet, l. 524, O., entretyde, H., taught.
- Envy, keep clear of, l. 528.
- Estate, l. 122, lord noble.
- Exercyse, excersyf, l. 318, ? practised, able to handle a subject. Fr. *exercer*, to handle, manage. Cot.
- Eye, cast not yours aside, l. 101.
- Face, have no spots on it, l. 38.
- Farsyone, l. 186, H., stuffing: *farse* (or *ferce*, l. 191), to stuff; *farsure*, stuffing. Cp. Chaucer's *ferthyng*, of the Prioress, *Prolog. Cant. T.*, and the Oriel text.
- Fetis, l. 443, O., fashions. Fr. *faict*, feat, pranke, part. Cot.
- Fewe, l. 171, little, few words.
- First place, don't take it, l. 493.
- Follow virtue, l. 481.
- Founders of our language; revive their praise, l. 431.
- Fulsom, l. 257, ! full, satisfied; or helpful, A.S. *fylst*, help, assistance.
- Fulsomnes, l. 401, fulness, plenty. 'Fulnesse or plente (fulsumnesse, K. H. P.) *Habundancia, copia*.' Promptorium.
- Games, play only at proper ones, l. 296.
- Girdle, don't loose yours at table, l. 197.
- Glaynes, l. 412, O., gleynes, l. 422, O., gleanings. Fr. *glane*, a gleaning; also the corne thats gleaned or left for the gleaner. Cot.
- Gluttonous, don't be, l. 180.
- Good cheer, make it serve for a scanty table, l. 253-5.
- GOWER's moral writings, read them, l. 323; and his *Confessio Amantis*, l. 325.
- Halke, l. 124, generally means corner; A.S. *heal*, an angle, a corner; but another *heal* is a hall, place of entertainment, inn, which may be the meaning here.
- Hands, wash yours, l. 43; wash 'em clean at table, l. 262-5.
- Hanging, the servant that deserves it, st. 65, O.
- Harping recommended, l. 304.
- Head, don't scratch it at table, l. 194.
- Holy water, l. 72.

- Humanite, l. 497, Fr. *humanité*,
courtesie, ciuilitie, gentleness.
Cot.
- Inhaunce, l. 433, put forward, up.
Lat. *in antea*, Prov. *enansar*, to
advance, exalt. Wedgwood.
- Interrupt no man's talk, l. 275,
283.
- Is, l. 386, O., his.
- Iubiter, l. 371, 378, God.
- Jangelynge, l. 80, chattering.
- Kery, l. 369, *κυριε*, Lord, [have
mercy upon us!]
- Knife, don't put it near your face,
l. 192.
- Ladde, l. 476, O., lade, H., a
thong of leather, a shoe-latchet.
Halliwell.
- Language, silver, is to be learnt
only from our old poets, st. 58,
l. 400-6.
- Lewed (ignorant), he must be who
will not learn, l. 21.
- Lips, wipe yours before drinking,
l. 186, 189.
- Look men, you speak to, in the
face, l. 99.
- Louse, l. 462, catching lice.
- Luting recommended, l. 302.
- LYDGATE, JOHN, my master, l. 365;
read his volumes large and wide,
l. 379.
- Malapert, Jack, don't play, l. 491.
Fr. *Müere*, malapert, outrageous,
ever doing one mischief or other.
Marmiton, a saucie, malapert, or
knauish fellow. Cot.
- Malouse, l. 461, Malo's.
- Manner & measure should guide
you, l. 125.
- Manners make man, l. 238.
- Mass, help the priest at, l. 85.
- Matins, our Lady's, l. 32.
- Mouth, eat with it shut, l. 241.
- Multiply talking, don't, l. 320.
- Nails, clean yours, l. 44; don't
pare them at table, l. 247.
- Norture, l. 436, deportment,
manners.
- Nose, clean it, l. 39; don't pick
it, l. 41.
- OCKLYF; read his translation of
De Regimine Principum, l. 351-64.
- Oppose, l. 518, 'I oppose one, I
make a tryall of his lernyng, or I
laye a thyng to his charge, *ie* *oppose*.'
Palsgrave. See Towneley Mysteries,
pp. 193-95. Way, in Promptorium.
We may bi oure law examyne hym
fyrst . . .
. . . let me *oppose* hym . . .
T. Myst, p. 195.
- Outrage, l. 278, outrageous, beyond
bounds, too talkative. See Mala-
pert.
- Owers, l. 34, see *pryme*.
- Pater noster, say yours, l. 26, 77.
- Pendable, l. 455, O., Fr. *pendable*,
hangable, that deserves hanging,
thats fit to be hanged. Cot.
- Poor table, men to be cheerful at,
l. 258.
- Presumption, beware of, l. 492.
- Pride, beware of, l. 492.
- Print your words in your mind
before you speak them, l. 282.
- Pryme & owers, l. 34. 'The *prime*
and other *hours* are the services *Ad*
primam horam, *Ad tertiam*, *Ad*
sextam, and *Ad nonam*, found in the
Primer, or layman's prayer-book.
They are sometimes called the
middle hours, as distinguished

- from Matins and Vespers.' H. Bradshaw.
- Quaire, l. 520, 526, 532, quire, pamphlet, treatise.
- Ravenous, don't be, l. 176.
- Read eloquent books, l. 310.
- Rehersaylle, l. 288, rehearsal, repetition.
- Repeat conversations, don't, l. 288.
- Report (tale-telling) is the chief nurse of mischief, l. 135.
- Reward, l. 127, look at, watch.
- Rising, what to do on, l. 23.
- Secret, keep what you hear, l. 134.
- Sewe, l. 481, follow, pursue.
- Silence, keep, l. 140; in hall, l. 204.
- Siluerous, l. 403, O., silvern.
- Singing lustily is good for a child, l. 304.
- Speak fair to folks, l. 60.
- Speaking, the conditions to be observed in, l. 143.
- Spoon, don't put it in your dish or on the table, l. 267.
- Surplusage, l. 518, rest, remainder.
- Syttyng, l. 302, fit, suitable.
'Syttyng or conveyent—m. *asse-ant* . . . *aduenant*.' Palsgrave.
- Table, how to wait at, l. 113.
- Tacches, l. 176, tache, l. 198; Fr. *tache*, a spot, staine, blemish. Cot.
- Taches, H., teches, O., l. 453, manners.
- Teeth, don't pick 'em with your knife, l. 248.
- Terre, l. 67; *tar*, to set on, provoke; O. Fr. *atarier*. They have *terrid* thee to ire. Wiclif, Psalms. Se. *tirr*, to snarl; quarrelsome, crabbed. Wedgwood.
- Thewed, l. 20, mannered.
- Towel, don't soil it, l. 263, 266.
- Traverse, l. 242, change from side to side.
- Trencher; keep yours clean, l. 269.
- Trety, l. 529, treatise.
- True as the gospel, l. 503.
- Weyne, l. 166, A.S. *wanian*, to diminish, take away.
- Wind, break not, up or down, l. 202.
- Wise man, the; his marks of a youth likely to be bad, l. 104;—his counsel as to speaking, l. 137, 147.
- Women, always take good heed to them, l. 506.
- Wyndlese, l. 471, windlass.
- Yanglers, l. 207, chatterers.
- Ydelye, l. 315, idly.
- Yunypariable, l. 380, unequalled, L. *par*, Fr. *pareil*, equal, like.

BUNGAY :
CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS,
THE CHAUCER PRESS.

The Qurial

made by maystere Alain Charretier.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. LIV.

1888.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Curial

made by maystere Alain Charretier.

Translated thus in Englyssh by

William Caxton.

1484.

COLLATED WITH THE FRENCH ORIGINAL BY

PROF. PAUL MEYER,

AND EDITED BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL,

M.A., TRIN. HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL. BERLIN.

LONDON:

PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXVIII.

Dedicated
TO
MY FRIEND AND HELPER,
F. S. ELLIS.
F. J. F.

Extra Series,

LIV.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

FOREWORDS.

OF this book printed by Caxton in 1484 (no doubt), in his type No. 4*, Mr. Blades says, in his *Biography and Typography of William Caxton*, 2nd edition, 1882, p. 297 :—

“Caxton translated the Curial from the French ‘for a noble and virtuous Erle,’ probably Lord Rivers, who was beheaded at Pomfret, on June 13th, 1483.

“Alain Chartier, born in Normandy about 1386, earned for himself the appellation of ‘excellent orateur, noble poëte, et très-renommé rhétoricien.’ He held the office of ‘Secrtaire de la Maison’ to both Charles VI and Charles VII. He died about 1457. The most complete editions of his works are those by Galiot du Pré, 16mo, Paris, 1529; and by Duchesne, 4to, Paris, 1617. In the former, however, is an error which has led to some confusion, as ‘Livre de l’Esperance’ is there entitled ‘Le Curial,’ the real Curial being a much shorter piece, and totally different in design. By the ‘Curial’ being addressed to his brother, it is supposed to have been written by Alain to Jean Chartier, known as the author of ‘Histoire de Charles VII.’

“As an instance of the great repute in which the writings of Chartier were held in his age, it is reported that Margaret, the wife of the Dauphin of France, afterwards Louis XI, finding him one day asleep in his chair, kissed his lips, to the great astonishment of her attendants. ‘Je ne baise pas la personne, mais la bouche dont estoient sortés tant de beaux discours,’ she exclaimed. There is a painting in Add. MS. No. 15,300 (in the British Museum) vividly depicting this scene.”

The above statement about the Dauphiness kissing Alain Chartier, is left as Mr. Blades wrote it; but he cannot have seen the one illumination in the Addit. MS. 15,300. That pictures a big-headed crown'd lady standing up with her arms spread, as if in astonishment, with a stout man lying on the ground before her, possibly asleep,—his left hand covers part of his face,—while at her left is an armed

man leaning on a 2-handed sword; and on his left, a seated scribe writing. In the background is the city wall, with a turreted gate, and towerd and turreted buildings inside. The MS is one of Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogus Inrecturus*, written because he thought the hand of God was upon France, inasmuch as "en l'an mil CCCC, vint et deux, Ie veisse le Roy anglois, ancien aduersaire de ceste seigneurie, soy glorifier en *nostre* ignominieux reproche, Enrichir de nez despoilles, et desprisier nez faiz et nez courages" (leaf 5, back). (lf. 6) "Et Ie, meu de compassion pour ramener a memoire l'estat de *nostre* infelicite, & a chascun ramenteuoir ce que lui en touche, Ay composé ce present traictie *que* l'appelle [lf. 6, bk.] 'quadrilogue', pource que, en quatre personnages est ceste euure comprise. Et est dit 'Inuectif', en tant qu'il procede par maniere d'enuaissement de paroles, et par forme de reprendre."

Of the *Curial*, says Mr. Blades, only two copies are known; one is in the British Museum (here reprinted), and the other at Althorpe, Lord Spencer's Library. The Collation is

"A 3ⁿ¹, signed j, ij, iij, without any blanks: In all, six leaves. There is no title-page. The type is entirely No. 4*. The lines, which are spaced to an even length, measure $4\frac{1}{8}$ inches, and there are 38 to a full page. Without catchwords or folios. The Text begins on sig. j. recto . . . The 'Curial' finishes on the sixth recto . . . On the verso, Caxton has given us the translation of a ballad, written by Alain Chartier, consisting of 28 lines. It has a burthen:—'Ne chyer but of a man Joyous.'"

In itself, the *Curial* or Letter has little literary worth; but Caxton englisht it, and that fact justifies its reprint. Moreover, short books are always handy for the E. E. T. Soc. The subject is the old one which afterwards interested Shakspeare;—compare the Duke, Touchstone &c. in *As You Like It*, and Belisarius in *Cymbeline*, III. iii.;—the disadvantages of the intriguing restless life at Court, compared with the quiet and restfulness of the country. Two books on this topic which are well worth reading, were reprinted by Mr. W. C. Hazlitt in his *Roxburygh Library*, 1868:

¹ A *Ternion* is 6 leaves, 12 pages. A 4ⁿ is a *Quaternion*; 8 leaves. A 5ⁿ or *Quinternion*, is a section of 5 sheets folded together in half, making 10 leaves or 20 pages.—*ib.*, p. 168.

1. *Cyuite and Vncyuite Life*, as its headlines call it, tho' the full title is

“The English / Courtier, and the / Cuntrey-gentleman: / A pleasaunt and learned Disputation, / betweene them both: very profitable and ne- / cessarie to be read of all Nobilitie / and Gentlemen / Wherein is discoursed, vvhath / order of lyfe, best bescemeth a Gentleman, (aswell for e- / ducation, as the course of his whole life) to make him a / person fytted for the publike service of his Prince and / Countrey. / Imprinted at London, by / Richard Iones: dwelling at the signe / of the Rose and Crowne neere / vnto Holborne Bridge. 1586. / An earlier Qto. 1579.

2. [by Nicholas Breton.] The / Court and Country, / or / A Briefe Discourse betweene the / Courtier and Country-man; / of the Manner, Nature, and Condi- / tion of their liues. / Dialogue-wise set downe betwixt a / Courtier and Country-man. / Conteyning many Delectable and Pithy / Sayings, worthy Observation. / Also, necessary Notes for a Covrtier. / Written by N. B. Gent. / London / Printed by G. Eld for Iohn Wright, and are to / be Sold at his Shoppe at the Signe of the Bible / without Newgate. / 1618. /

Alain Chartier's sketch of the French courtier of his time is not a cheering one. But it differs little from those of the English Elizabethan courtier by Spenser in his *Colin Clout*, and by Harrison in his *Description of England*.

Both were the necessary consequence of despots being the sole sources of honour, and their whims being law. And though Society and Fashion still breed Flunkeyism and Falseness, and some Demagogues pander to the base prejudices of all classes from the highest to the lowest, we may surely believe that our Victorian time is better, in this regard, than the Caroline in France, or the Elizabethan here.

The headlines, side-notes, and modern stops of the Text are mine. Caxton's tagd ð and gʳ are not reproduced.

July, 1888.

P.S. Oct. 1888. My chance sending of a proof to my old friend Prof. Paul Meyer, induced him, in the kindest possible way, to set aside all his own pressing work, and not only collate for us Caxton's English with the French original, and give us many most valuable corrections and explanations of Caxton's text—see the footnotes,—but also to hunt out and copy for us the original of the supposed

Balade by Alain Chartier which Caxton englishit and printed at the end of his *Curial*. Prof. P. Meyer has also written an Introduction to the Balade, which will be found on p. 17 below, and the following comments on Alain Chartier's *Curial*, and Caxton's englishing of it.

All our Members will join with me in thanking Prof. Meyer for his great kindness, and his admirable enrichment of the present little Text.

COMMENT BY PROF. P. MEYER.

The French *Curial* has been printed several times since the first edition of Alain Chartier's works (Paris, Le Caron, 1489), until Du Chesne's much improved edition (Paris, 1617).¹ The manuscripts are not scarce, but those which I have seen are very corrupt. So are, and even worse, the ancient editions, previous to Du Chesne. Chartier writes, particularly in his *Curial*, a refined and elaborate style which has often been misunderstood by the copyists. We must not wonder if Caxton's translation is not free from mistakes. Some of these are to be traced to the MS. which he used, some to mere misreadings, some to excusable misunderstandings. A due allowance being made for the difficulties of the task, the translation cannot be pronounced to be wanting in force and intelligence. One noticeable peculiarity in Caxton's anglicizing of the *Curial* is the habit of rendering some of the words of the original by two consecutive synonyms,² one of them being the very word of Chartier, the other a more generally accepted English word. For example, p. 5, l. 19, "ewrous and happy," for the Fr. *heureux*; l. 23, "rendre and yelde," for the Fr. *rendre*; p. 7, l. 22, "the dore . . . of the chambre or wythdraught," Fr. *Unys du retrait*; p. 8, l. 21, "the ryghtes and droytes," Fr. *les droits*; p. 9, l. 27, "rendrid and gafe," Fr. *rendoient*, etc.

Whenever Caxton's translation has been found defective or erroneous, the French text has been quoted from Du Chesne's edition; the MSS. having been resorted to only in special cases.—P. M.

¹ For a full description of the editions, see Brunet, *Manuel du libraire*, under CHARTIER (*Alain*).

² This practice is known also in the English Bible and Prayer-book.—F. J. F.

[The
Curial of Alain Charretier.]

4 Here foloweth the cople of a lettre whyche maistre
Alayn Charetier wrote to hys brother / whyche desired
to come dwelle in Court / in whyche he reherseth many
myseryes & wretchydnesses therin vsed¹ / For taluyse
8 hym not to entre in to it / leste he after repente / like
as hier after folowe / and late translated out of frensshe
in to englysshe / whyche Cople was delyuerid to me
by a noble and vertuous Erle / At whos Instance &
12 requeste I haue reduced it in to Englyssh.

Yght welbeloyd brother, & persone Eloquent /
r thou admonestest and exhortest me to prepare &
make redy, place and entree for the vnto the lyf
16 Curiall / whyche thou desirest / And that by my helpe
and requeste thou myghtest haue therin offyce / And
herto thou art duly² meuyd by comyn error of the
people / whiche repute thonours mondayne & pompes of
20 them of the courte / to be thynges more blessyd & happy
than other / or to thende that I Iuge not wel³ of thy
desyre / Thou wenest paraurenture / that they that wayte
on offices / ben in vertuous occupacions, & reputest them
24 the more worthy for to haue rewardes & merites / And
also thou alioushest other causes that mene the therto /

[sign. j.]
The Letter that
Alain Chartier
wrote to dissuade
his Brother from
coming to Court.
Englisht by
Wm. Caxton.

Dear Brother,
you ask me to
get you a place
at Court,

thinking that
men in office are
virtuous,

¹ Nearly every final d is ð in the original, and every final g has a like curl to it.

² French *indeuement*, but the MS. used by Caxton may have had *deuement*.—P. M.

³ The French has: "ou ain que je ne juge *mal* de ton desir."—P. M.

by the example of me / that empesse my selue for to
 serue in the courte Ryall / And to thende that thou
 myghtest vse thy dayes in takyng companye wyth me /
 and that we myghte to-gidre enioye the swettenes 4
 of frendshyppe / whyche longe tyme hath ben bytwene
 vs tweyne / And thys knowe I wel / that thy courage
 is not wythdrawen fer from my frendshyppe / And the
 grace of humanyte is not dreyed vp in the / whyche 8
 compryseth hys frendes as presente, And leueth not at
 nede to counseylle & ayde them absente to hys power /
 And I trowe that thyn absence is not lasse greuous to
 me / than myn is to thy self / For me semeth, that 12
 thou beyng absente, I am there where the places and
 affayres desioyne vs / But by cause god of fortune hath
 so departed our destyne / that thou awaytest frely on
 thyn owne pryuate thynges / And that I am occupied 16
 on thynges publyeque, & seruyes in sorowful passions /
 that whan I haue on my self compassion / Thenne am
 I enioyed of thyn ease / & take grete playsir / in this,
 that *thou* auoydest the myseries that I suffre every 20
 day / And yf I blame or accuse fortune for me / I
 preyse and thanke her on that other parte for the / Fer
 so moche as she hath exempte the fro the anguysshes
 that I suffre *in the courte / And that she hath not 24
 made vs bothe meschaunte /

You want to be
 with me at Court.
 I wish more to be
 alone with you.

Thou desirest, as thou sayst, to be in the courte wyth
 me / And I coueyte yet more to be pryuely and syngulerly
 wyth the / And also for me thou woldest gladly leue thy 28
 fraunchyse and pryuate lyf / I ought more gladly for the
 loue of the, leue thys seruytude mortell / For as moche
 as loue acqyteth hym better in humble tranquyllyte than
 in orguyllous myserye / late hyt suffyse to the & to 32
 me / that one of vs tweyne be Infortunat / And that
 by my meschaunte lyf thou mayst see and knowe more
 certainly that one and that other fortune / But what
 demaundest thou / Thou seechest the way to lese thy 36

self / by the example of me / And wylt lepe fro the
hauen of sewerte / for to drowne thy self in the see
of peryl and myserye / Repentest thou the to haue
4 lyberte / Art thou annoyed to lyue in peas / humayne
nature hath suffred suche vnhappynes / that she ap-
petyteth and desireth to haue that thyng / whyche she
hath not / Thus misprysest thou the peas of thy corage /
8 and the sure estate of thy thought / And by therroure
of mēsprysement whyche thou hast gotten / the thynges
whyche of theyr owne condicion ben more to be mes-
prised / than they that ben shewde by the lyf of
12 another¹ / I meruaylle me moche / how thou, that art
prudent and wyse of goodes² / art so ouerseene and fro
thy self, for to dar expose thy self to so many perillis.
And yf thou wylt vse my counseyl / Take none
16 example by me for to poursewe the courtes / Ne the
publycque murmures of hie palaysis / But alleway late
my perylle be example to the for to fle and eschewe
them / For I dar not afferme / that emonge the bruyt
20 of them that torne / be ony thyng stedfast ne hol-
somme / Thou shalt wene & hope to fynde / exercite of
vertu / in myserye thus commune & publycque / And
so certaynly shalt thou fynde / yf thou makest thy view³
24 to fight constauntly agenst alle vices / But be ware &
make good watche that thou be not the fyrst that shal
be ouercome / For I saye the / that the courtes of hie
prynces be neuer disgarnysshed of peple deceyuyng by

Why will you
jump from the
Hauen of Security
into the Sea of
Misery?

Human Nature
always longs for
what it hasn't.

But take my
advice: Don't
come to Court.

Courts are full
of deceivers,
bullies, flatterers,
hinderers of good.

¹ Caxton's phrase seems to be unfinished. The Fr. has: "Les choses qui de leur mesme condition (that is, on account of their very condition) sont plus a mespriser que par vices (var. *que par la vie*, Caxton's reading) d'autrui a priser, *tu loues et exaltes*." The last words, "thou praisest and exaltest," seem to have been left out.—P. M.

² *of goods* has no meaning. The French has: ". . . qui es prudent et saige *de biens* si forsené." Caxton may have misread *de biens* instead of *de biens*, becomest.—P. M.

³ Caxton's *rien* is a mistake for *con*, Fr. *veu*: "se tu fais veu de batailler," if thou vowest, or takest a pledge, to be constantly fighting.—P. M.

fayr langage / or feryng by menaces / or stryuyng by
 enuye / or corrupte by force of yettes / or blandyssh-
 yng by flaterers / or accusyng of trespaces / or enpessh-
 yng & lettynge in *somme* maner wyse / the good wyl of 4
 true men ; For our poure humanity is lyghtly enelyned
 to ensiewe & folowe¹ the maners & condycions of other /
 And to doo as they doo. *And vnnethe may he escape
 that is asseged and assaylled of so many aduersaryes / 8
 Now late vs graunte that thou woldest persecuere in
 vertue / And that thou sholdest escape the vycyous and
 the corrupcion of suche vycyous persones / yet in thys
 caas thou haddest vaynqnysshed none but thy self / 12
 But thys had ben better that thou haddest don it in
 thy owne secreete pryue place. And be thou certayn,
 that for thy vertue thou shalt be mocqued, and for thy
 trouthe thou shalt be hated / or that thy dyscrecion 16
 shal cause the to be suspecte / For ther is nothyng
 more suspecte to euyl peple / than them whom they
 knowe to be wyse and trewe /
 The reste thenne is thys / that thou shalt haue 20
 labour wythoute fruyt / And shalt vse thy lyf in
 perylle / And shalt gete many enuyous at the / And yf
 thou stryue at theyr enuye / or that thou takest venge-
 ance / I telle to the, that thy vengement shal engendre 24
 to the, more greuous aduersytees² than thou haddest
 tofore / And by the contrarye / they that conne dys-
 symyle, ben preyed, and vse better theyr tyme in
 courtes than the other peple / The abuses of the 28
 courte / And the maner of the peple curyall or courtly
 ben suche that a man is neuer suffred tenhaunce hym
 self / but yf he be corruptable / For vertue whyche is
 in so many maners enuyed³ / yf she be not prowde / 32
 she is mesprysed / yf she bowe not / she is by force
 sette abacke / yf she be broken or hurte, she is by force

Our poor
humanity follows
bad examples.

[* sign. ij.]

If you keep
virtuous,

you'll be mockt
and hated ;

your life 'll be in
danger,

and you'll be
worse off than
before.

Corruption is the
only way to
success at Court.

¹ *Orig.* folo-lowe

² Fr. *adversaires*.—P. M.

³ Another mistake of Caxton's: the French is '*envirouñée*.'—P. M.

hunted away / who is he thenne that may kepe hym
 that he be not corrupt or coromped / or who is he that
 shall escape without hauyng harme / Suche be the
 4 werkes of the courte, that they that be symple ben
 mesprysed / the vertuous enuyed / And the prowde
 arregaunts in mortel peryllis / And yf thou be sette
 down and put aback vnder the other courtiours /
 8 Thou shalt be enuyous of theyr power / yf thou be in
 mene estate / of whyche thou hast not suffysaunce /
 thou shalt stryue for to mounte and ryse hyer / And yf
 thou mayst come vnto the hie secrets whyche ben
 12 strongly for to doubtte and drede / in the doubtfuls
 courteynes of the most hie prynces / Thenne shalt thou
 be most meschaunt / Of someche as thou wenest to be
 most ewrous¹ and happy / so moche more shalt thou be
 16 in grete perill to falle / lyke to hym that is mouned in
 to the most hie place / For to them whom fortune the
 variable hath most hyely *lyfte up / and enhaused /
 resteth nomore but for to falle fro so hie down / by
 20 cause she oweth to them nothyng but ruine / yf thou
 haste take of her alle that thou myghtest / and that
 she wold gyue / thenne art thou debytour of thy self /
 To thende that she rendre and yelde hym meschaunt
 24 whom she had enhaused / And that she mocque hym
 of hys meschef whom she had made blynde of vayn
 glorye of hys enhaunsyng / For the grete wyndes that
 blowe in hie courtes ben of suche condicion / that they
 28 only that ben hiest enhaused / ben after theyr des-
 poyntement / as a spectacle of enuye / of detraction /
 or of hate vnto alle peple / and fynde them self sub-
 gettes tyl they be shamed and put down among the
 32 peple² / And that they that tofore poursiewed to them
 and flattered / Reporte of them more gretter blames and
 dyvyisions³ than the other / For multytude of peple

The simple are
despised, the
virtuous envied.

When you seem
most happy,
and in high
position,

[* sign. ij. back]

then Fortune
will ruin you

and make you
miserable.

As soon as
Courtiers reach
the highest posts,
they are envied
and hated till
they are abased.

¹ Fr. *curieux*: *heur* of *bonheur*, *malheur*

² Fr. "entre les populaires," viz. among the mob, low people.
—P. M.

³ Misprint? Fr. *derisions*.—P. M.

mespryse alwaye them / that fortune hath most aualed¹
 and throwen down / And also is envyous of them that
 she seeth enhaunsed and lyft vp / Fortune gladly hath
 sette hys eyen on hem that ben in hye degree, and on 4
 the soueraynes yet more / And whan she pleyeth wyth
 smale and poure folkes / that is no certayn / for of the
 meschief of poure peple she retcheth not / ne doth but
 smyle / But she lawgheth wyth ful mouth, and smyteth 8
 her paulmes to gydre, whan she seeth grete lordes falle
 in to meschyef / she retcheth but lytel for tessaye and
 preue her fortune in lytyl and lowe places / But for to
 make the grete and myghty to falle and ouerthrowe, 12
 she setteth gladly her gymnes / And them that ben
 poure & caste down, maketh she oftymes to ryse &
 mounte fro certaynte to Incertaynte, and fro good
 rewle to euyl rewle / Them deceyueth she gladly / 16
 whom she fyndeth esy to deceyue / and variable as
 she is / But she doth the custommes & strength to them
 that setteth by her.² And whan she seeth her despysed
 & nought sette by / thenne she leueth them in peas / 20
 But she flateryth and lawgheth for nought vnto them
 that haue hye and hole courage / Now she essayeth to
 Iuste ayenst them that ben most stronge / And now
 she enhaunseth them that ben most feble / now she 24
 lawheth to one / and she grymmeth to other / But the
 man that hath grete corage & vertuous, mespriseth her
 lawhynges and mowes / And nothyng doubteth her
 menaces / ³But the courte maketh ouer moche compte 28
 of thys fortune / that draweth the peple lyghtly to
 her / *forgetyng theyr poure estate / And forgetyng

Fortune

laughs and claps
 her hands when
 great lords fall
 into trouble.

Men of high and
 whole hearts
 disregard
 Fortune.

The Court thinks
 too much of
 Fortune.

[* sign. iij.]

¹ From *à val*: orig. Fr. *varallés*, cast down.—P. M.

² What does this mean? The French has (in MS. texts, for Du Chesne's edition is corrupt here): "Mais elle *hait* les constans et vertueux qui elle ne font compte." Caxton seems to have read "Mais elle *fait* les *coustumes*."—P. M.

³⁻³ This passage was completely misunderstood by Caxton. He ought to have translated "maketh moche more compte of thys fortune . . . than she doth of the wyse men." French:

and not knowyng them self as sone as they ben en-
haunced / whyche the wyse men do not / whiche for
none anauncement ne hauyng of good, enpayre not them
4 self³ / There assaye thou for to mounthe / yf thou wylt
leue thy lyberte and franchyse / Thenne oughtest thou
to knowe / that thou shalt haue habundaunce thy self /
whan thou shalt wylle to poursewe the court / whyche
8 maketh a man to leue hys propre maners / And to applye
hym self to the maners of other. For yf he be veryt-
able / men shal holde hym atte scole of fayntyse / yf
he loue honest lyf / men shal teche hym to lede dys-
12 honest lyf / yf he be pacyent / & sette by no prouffyt¹ /
he shal be left to haue suffraunce / For yf he can
nought / men shal demaunde him nothyng / And also
he shal fynde none / that shal gyue hym ony thyng² /
16 yf he entre Inportunatly / They that be Inportune shal
put hym abacke / yf he be acustomed to ete soberly /
and at a certayn houre / he shal dyne late, and shal
soupe in suche facoun that he shal disacustomme hys
20 tyme and hys maner of lyuyng / Yf he haue be
acustomed to rede and studye in bookes / he shal muse
ydelly alday, in awaytyng that men shal open the dore
to hym, of the chambre or wythdraught of the prynce /
24 yf he loue the rest of his body, he shal be ennoyed³
now here / nowe there / as a courrouer or renner per-
petuell / yf he wil erly goo to his bedde, and Ryse late
at his playsir, he shal faylle therof / For he shal wake
28 longe and late / and ryse ryght erly / and that ofte he

But wise men
rest content.

The Court makes
you give up your
own morals for
worse ones,

and your own
habits for other
folk's.

At Court, the
Student must
turn Idler and
Place-hunter.

“Mais la court fait trop plus grant compte de celle fortune . . .
. . . . qu'elle ne fait des (*ed. les*) sages qui, pour bien avoir,
ne se empirent.”—P. M.

¹ Fr. “Et non chalang d'avoir prouffit,” viz. “and cares
not to have profit.”—P. M.

² Mistralation arising from a bad text. Fr. “S'il ne
sçait ou ne veut riens demander, aussi ne trouvera il qui riens
luy donne.”—P. M.

³ Unless Caxton printed “*ennoyed*” for *enuoyed*, envoyed,
he must have read *ennuyé*; but the French has *envoyé*, sent
on an errand.—P. M.

S The dependance of Court life: the independance of Country life.

Every one must
lose his natural
rest,

and yet not gain
favour.

The Courtier is
always lodgd in
another's house,

and must eat,
and sleep at
another's will.

[* sign. iij. back]

A country house-
holder is a King
in his own house.

Contrast the ills
of the Court and
the good of the
Country,
in eating,

sleeping,

shal lese the nyght wythout slepyng / yf he studye for
to fynde frendshyp / he¹ shal neuer come² trotte so
moche thurgh the halles of the grete lordes that he
shal fynde her / but she holdeth her wythoute, and ⁴
entreteth not wyth ony / For she is moche better knowen
by them that vsen her, whyche ben experte of reffuse /³
throwen down by fortune / than by them that entre
ygnoraunt / and not knowen her tornes / Now beholde ⁸
thenne / and see, whyche of the two thou shalt chese /
or that in my yssuyng and goyng out / I drawe the to
our comune prouffyt, or in thyn entryng thou brynge
me to our comune dommage and hurte / And forgete ¹²
not that who serueth in the courte / Alway hym be-
houeth to be a gheste / and herberowed in another
mannes hows / And also he muste ete after thappetyte
of other / and otherwhyle wythoute hungre, and fayn ¹⁶
he maye / And in lyke wyse he muste wake otherwhyle
atte *the wylle of other / after that he hath begonne to
slepe, and by grete gryef,⁴ what thyng is more domageus
than to sette vnder fortune the vertues of nature / and ²⁰
the ryghtes and droytes of lyf humayne / seen that it is
[not]⁵ a thyng more free in a man / than to lyue naturelly.
emong vs seruantes of courte / we doo nothyng but
lyue after thordonance of other / And thou lyuest in ²⁴
thyn hous lyke an Emperour / thou regnest as a kyng
paysyble / vnder the couerte of thyn hous / And we
tremble for drede to dysplayse the lordes of hie houses /
Thou mayst ete whan thou hast hungre / at thyn ²⁸
houre and at thy playsir / And we ete so gredyly &
gloutonnously, that otherwhyle we caste it vp agayn
and make vomytes / Thou passest the nyght in slepyng

¹ *he* means friendship; Fr. "jamais elle ne scet troter."—P. M.

² be able to, know how to

³ *refuse* is evidently wrong. The French has "expers des ruses (ed. *jeux*) de fortune," its tricks.—P. M.

⁴ Fr. "par grief sommeil," heavy sleep.—P. M.

⁵ Fr. "veu qu'il n'est chose plus franche."—P. M.

as long as it playseth the / And we, after ouermoche
drynkyng of wynes and grete paynes, lye down ofte in
beddes ful of vermyne / & somtyme wyth stryf and and beds.

4 debate¹ /

Retourne, brother / Retourne to thy self / And
lerne to know the felicite / by the myseryes that we Recognise the
happiness of
private life.

8 hath in his pryuate and propre hous / but he that to-
fore mespryseth thanguysshes that he hath suffred in
admystracion publyeque / Arystotle the phylosophre Neither Aristotle

12 of kyng Alysandre / And had leuer to leue there hys
discyple Calistenes / than there lenger to dwelle /
Dyogenes also, whiche in hys tyme, aboue alle other nor Diogenes
cared for courts
or wealth.

16 rychesses and wordly loyes to whyche he was callyd /
he fledde them for to enhabyte and dwelle frely wythin
the tonne / wherin he slepte / And also durst somoche
aauante hym / that he was more puyssaunt prynee, in

20 that he myght more reffuse of goodes, than the said
Alysandre hath power to gyue hym. For the veray
phylosophre / that can wel mespryse thambycious
vanyte of the peple of the court / techeth to his coun-

24 seyllours² / that ther is more of humanyte in smale
thynges and eases³ / than in the courtes of prynces /
And the benes of Pictagoras / And the wortes that
Orace etc / rendrid and gafe better sauour / than that

28 Sardanapalus fonde in the grete and delycious wynes
Aromatyques that he dranke / for as moche as the
delyces were medled with the galle of poyson / Feures /
& anguysshes mondaynes / that he had alway vpon hys

32 herte / not only our lyf / but thexaction of our lyf /
hys tormentis adioyne to our lyf in suche wyse that

There is more
Humanyte in
private life than
in Princes' courts.

¹ Fr. "atout le bast." means harnesssed, dressed.—P. M.

² French, "Car vraye Philosophie est quand on scait mes-
priser . . . et apprehendre a ses escolliers."—P. M.

³ French *cases*, poor houses, not *causes*.—P. M.

[* leaf iij.]

Folk think much
of a Courtier's
rich dress; but
they don't know
the cost and
trouble of it.

*she ne hath glorye mondayne / ne pompe caduque
wythoute aduersyte / Oftymes the peple make grete
wondrynges of the Ryche robe of the courtyour¹ / but
they knowe not by what labour ne by what dyffyeulte 4
he hath gotten it /

Courtiers' deck-
ings are not won
by merit.

The peple otherwhyle honoureth and worshypeth
the grete apparaylle of a puyssant man, But they
acompte not the pryckkyng that he hath felte in the 8
pourehassying of it / Ne the greys that he hath gotten
in shewyng of yt / Othertymes beholde the peple
thordynaunces and grete houshold of the hye and grete
lordes / but they knowe not of what dyspence they ben 12
charged for to nourysshe them / Ne consydre nothyng
the tytle / of whyche they knowe certaynly / that they
haue in them no merites / Yf we calle an hare / a lyon /
or saye that a fayr mayde is fowle² / or a fowle / croke- 16
backed / haltyng / or euyl shapen, to be as fayre as
Helayne / that shold be a grete lesynge / and worthy
of derysion / And allewaye emonge vs courtyours en-
fayned / we folowe more the names of thoffyces / than 20
the droytes and ryghtes / we be verbal / or ful of
wordes / and desyre more the wordes than the thynges /
And in thys we ben contrarye to the wyse Cathon /
whyche desired more to excersise hym self vertuously 24
in comune offyce and publyeque / than to haue the
name / And in suche wyse gouerneth he hym self /
that whan he was called / he was allewaye founde
worthy to haue better than he was callyd to / And 28
somoche more was he honowred / as whan he fiedde
most the worldly honours / But by the contrarye we
coueyte to be honowred / how wel that we ben not
worthy / And so take the honours as by force and 32

They think more
of official titles
than Right, and
of Words than
Things.

They desire
Honour, tho' they
know they arn't
worthy of it.

¹ French, "De la riche robe d'un pautonnier." Evidently Caxton did not understand *pautonnier*, a vagabond, a contemptible man.—P. M.

² French, "que une jeune fille laide, bossue, ou mal atournée, fust aussi belle comme Helene."—P. M.

strengthe / er we ben called therto. And herof foloweth
that we lese by good ryght / that whyche we Iuge¹ to
our self, and that we dar demande indewly / And to
4 saye trouthe, the honours flee fro vs / whyche we
poursewe ouer fololy /

Therefore, brother, I counseylle the / that thou So, Brother,
delyte the / in thy self / of thy vertue / For she
8 yeldeth Ioye and preysynge to them that lyue wel /
late thy grete suffysaunce² reteyne the wythin thy lytyl stay at Home!
Cenacle / And repute not thy self vertuous by heryng
saye, as done men of the courte / But do payne to be
12 verytable by theffecte of the werke / wherto coueytest
thou the gloryes of palayses, whyche for theyr wretched
myserye haue nede that men haue pyte *on them / Ne [* leaf iij. back]
poursewe it not in fayt / But by the playnt of myn
16 vnhappynes / folowe not me / by cause I am³ oftymes Do not follow me
cladde wyth the beste⁴ / But haue pyte and compassion
of the peryls / of whyche I am asseged / and of
thassaultes of whyche I am enuyronned nyght and who am sur-
rounded with
traitors, and must
watch my every
word.
20 day / For I haue nede to beholde on what foot that
euery man cometh to me / And to note and marke the
paas and the peryl of euery worde that departeth fro
my mouth, to thende that by my vtterance I be not
24 surprysed / and that in spekyng vnpourueydly, I ne
gyue mater to ony man to make false relacion / ne to
interprete euyl my worde / whyche I maye neuer
renoke ne put in agayn / For the courte is the nourysse The Court breeds
men who study
to entrap you in
talk,
28 of peple / whyche by fraude and franchise / studye for
to drawe from one and other⁵ suche wordes / by whyche

¹ French, "ce a quoi nous *ingerons*," arrogate, claim falsely, misread *jegerons*.—P. M.

² French, *souffrance*, patience, endurance.—P. M.

³ Abridged or translated from a corrupt text. French, "mais par la plainte de mon malheur te chastie (viz. change thy mind), ne ne regarde ou ayes consideration a ce que je suis . . ."—P. M.

⁴ Rather, "with the beste-cladde"; French, "avec les mieux vestuz."—P. M.

⁵ "Les uns des autres," the one from the other.—P. M.

12 *Competition for places at Court. Uncertainty of success.*

that they may,
by disclosing it,
curry favour of
the great.

You are soon
supplanted by a
new-comer,

or, if you keep
your Place,

envious men

will give bribes to
get it from you;
and then you
must bribe too.

But in private
life, in your own
house, you are
free.

[* leaf v.]

they may persecute them / by that / whyche by the
perylles¹ of other / they may entre in to the grace of
them that haue auctoryte to helpe / or to annoye / And
whyche take more playsyr in false reportes / than in 4
verytable and trewe wordes / yf thou haue offyce in
courte / make the redy to fyghte / For yf thou haue
ony good / other shal desyre to take it fro the / and
thou shalt not escape wythout debate / Somme shal 8
machyne by somme moyen to deceyue the / And the
behoueth to tormente thy self to resist hym / And
after whan thou shalt haue employed thy body / thy
tyme and thy goodes for to deffende the / Another 12
newe one cometh to the courte, & shal supplante thy
benediction / And shal take it gylefully fro the / Thus
shalt thou lese wyth grete sorowe / that whyche thou
haste gotten wyth grete labour / Or yf thyn offyce 16
abyde wyth the / so shal thou not abyde longe wythout
drede and fere of hym, or of other enuyous whyche shal
laboure to take it fro the / Tofore that thou hast ony
offyces Thou boughtest peas and moderacion to lyue / 20
And as sone as thou shalt haue it / thou shalt be
deffyed of an other / which shal enforce hym for to
gyue largely for to take it fro the; And the behoueth,
maulgre thy self / that thou gyue as moche as he / to 24
thende that thou kepe it / And that it abyde wyth the /

Beholde thenne, brother, beholde / how moche thy
lytyl hous gyneth the liberte and franchyse / And
thanke it that it hath receyuyd the as only lorde / 28
And after that thy dore is shette and closed, ther
entreth none other but suche as pleseth the / Men
knocke oftymes atte yates of ryche and hye palayses /
Ther is alleway *noyse and murmure / In grete places 32
ben grete and moche peples / of whyche somme ben
harde pressyd / The halle of a grete prynee is comunely

¹ French. "ad ce que, au moyen des parolles d'autrui qu'ils rapportent."—P. M.

Infecte and eschaufed of the breeth of the peple / The
vssher smyteth wyth hys Rodde vpon the heedes of
them that ben there / Somme entre by forse of threst-
4 yng / And other stryue for to resyste / Somme tyme a
poure man meschaunt that hath to-fore be sore sette
abacke, is further sette forth than an other / And the
most fyers and prowde whom a man durste not tofore
8 touche / is put further aback, and is in more gretter
daunger / There knoweth noman in certayn yf hys
astate be sure or not / But who someuer it be, alway he
is in doubte of hys fortune / And whan thou wenest to
12 be most in grace / Thenne remembre the [wordes] of the
poete that sayth / that it is no grete preysynge / for to
haue ben in the grace of a grete prynee¹ / And to thende
that thou mayst the better knowe now the courte / I
16 wyl dyscryue and dyffyne it to the /

The courte, to thende that thou vnderstande it / is
a couente of peple that, vnder fayntyse of Comyn wele,
assemble hem to gydre for to deceyue eche other / For
20 ther be not many of them but that they selle, bye / or
eschange somtyme theyr rentes or propre vestementis /
For emonge vs of the courte / we be meschaunt² and
newfangle / that we bye the other peple / And somm-
24 tyme for theyr money we selle to them our humanyte
precyous / we bye other / And other bye vs / But we
can moche better selle our self to them that haue to
doo wyth vs / how moche thenne mayst thou gete /
28 that it be certayn / or what sewrte / that it be wythout
doubte and wythout peryll / wylt thou goo to the
court for to selle or lese / the goodnes of vertues whyche
thou haste gotten wythoute the courte / I saye to the,
32 whan thou enforcest the to entre / thenne begynnest
thou to lese the seynorye of thy self / And thou shalt

A Prince's hall
is infected with
people's breath.
The Usher hits
them on the head
with his rod.

No one is safe in
his situation.

There's no merit
in having a
Prince's favour.

The Court is an
assemblage of
mutual deceivers,

who buy and sell
one another.

Any one who
enters it, loses the
rule of himself,

¹ Principibus placuisse viris non ultima laus est.—Horat.
Epist. I, xvii. 35.—P. M.

² Fr. "marchans affaictiez," tricky dealers.—P. M.

14 *Court-Life is evil. The Court is deceitful and ungrateful.*

nomore enioye the droytes and ryghtes of thy franchyse
 and liberte / Certes, brother, thou demandest that /
 whyche thou oughtest to desyre / And fyxest thyn
 hope in that / that shal drawe the to peryl and 4
 perdicion / And yf thou come / the courte shal serue
 the with so many contryued lesynges on that one
 parte / And on that other syde, she shal delyuere to
 the so many cures and charges / that thou shalt haue 8
 wythin thy self contynuell bataylle / thought / and
 anguysshes / And for certayn a man may¹ not *wel
 saye / that he is wel happy / that in tyme of tempeste
 is bought, and in so many contrarytees assayed and 12
 proued /

and gets only
 lies, burdens,
 and troubles.

[* leaf v. back]

And yf thou demandest / what is the lyf of them
 of the courte, I answere the, brother / that it is a poure
 rychesse / An habundance miserable / an hyennesse that 16
 falleth / An estate not stable / A sewrte tremblyng /
 And an euyl lyf² / And also it may be called of them
 that ben amoureuse, a deserte lyberte³ / Flee, ye men, flee,
 and holde and kepe you ferre fro suche an assemblee / 20
 yf ye wyll lyue wel and surely / and as peple wel
 assured vpon the Ryuage / beholde vs drowne by our
 own agreement / And mespryse our blyndenes / that
 may ne wyllle knowe our propre meschyef / For lyke as 24
 the folysshe maronniers / whyche somtyme cause them
 self to be drowned / by theyr dyspourueyed aduyse-
 ment / In lyke wyse the courte draweth to hym and
 deceyueth the symple men / and maketh them to desire 28
 and coueyte it / lyke as a Rybaulde or a comyn
 womman wel arayed / by her lawhyng and by her
 kyssynge / The courte taketh meryly them that comen
 therto / in vsyng to them false promesses / The courte 32

Court life is
 unstable, and evil.

Keep clear of it!

Stand on the
 bank, and see us
 wilfully drown
 in it.

The Court draws
 simple men to it
 like a Harlot does,
 by false promises.

¹ *Orig.* man.

² Fr. "ainsi comme un *pillier* tremblant et uue moureuse
 (*al.* mortelle) vie."—P. M.

³ French, "de ceux qui sont amoureux de sainte liberté."
 Caxton read *deserte* instead of *de sainte*.—P. M.

lawheth atte begynnyng on them that entre / And
after she grymmeth on them / And somtyme byteth
them ryght aygrelly / The courte reteyneth the caytyuus
4 whiche can not absente and kepe them fro thene / and
alday adnewe¹ auctoryse and lorshippe vpon suche as
they surmounte / The courte also by error forgeteth
ofte them that beste seruen / And dyspende folyly her
8 propre good for tenryche them that ben not worthy /
and that haue ryght euyl deseruyd it / And the man is
vnhappy that is taken in / and had leuer to perysshe /
than to yssue and goo out / And ther to lose hys cours
12 of nature / wythout euer to haue hys franchyse and
lyberte vntyl hys deth / Beleue surely, brother, and
doubte nothyng, that thou excersyset ryght good and
ryght prouffyttable offyce yf thou canst wel vse thy
16 maystryse that thou hast in thy lytyl hous / and thou
art and shal be pyussaunt as longe as thou hast, and
shal haue of thy self, suffysaunce / For who that hath
a smal howshold and lytle meyne, and gouerneth them
20 wysely & in peas / he is a lorde / And somoche more is
he ewrous & happy as he more frely maynteneth it /
As ther is nothyng so precious vnder heuen / as for to
be of sufficient comynycacion wyth franchyse² /
24 O fortunéd men / O blessyd famyllye, where as is
honeste *pouerte that is content with reson, without
etyng the fruytes of other mennes labour / O wel happy
howse, in whyche is vertue wythout fraude ne barat /
28 and whyche is honestly gouerned in the drede of god
and good moderacion of lyf / There entre no synnes /
There is a true and rightful lyf / where as is remorse
of euery synne, and where is no noyse / murmure ne
32 enuye / of suche lyf enioyeth nature / and in smale³
eases lyueth she longe / and lytyl and lytyl she cometh

When they come,
it bites them.

It forgets those
who serve it,
and spend their
money on it.

Be sure, Brother,
that you are doing
right in keeping
to your own
house.

Freedom is the
most precious
thing under
heaven.

[* leaf vj.]

Private life is
rightful,

and comes to an
honest old age.

¹ French *adrene*, asserts his authority.—P. M.

² Absurd! French, "*commutation contre franchise*," exchangeable value for freedom.—P. M.

³ French *telles*, such.—P. M.

Courtiers get
weary of life;
they haste to
their death.

If, Brother, you
have begun an
honourable life,
don't lose it by
coming to Court!

to playsaunt age and honeste ende / For as seyth
Seneke in his tragedyes / Age cometh to late to peple
of smale howses / whyche lyue in suffysaunce / But
emong vs courtiours that be seruauntes to fortune / we 4
lyue disordynatly / we wexen old more by force of
charges than by the nombre of yeres / And by defaulte
of wel lyuyng, we ben wery of the swetenes of our lyf /
whyche so moche we desire, and haste to goo to the 8
deth, the whyche we somoche drede and doubte /
Suffyse the thenne, broder, to lyue in peas on thy
partye / & lerne to contente the by our meschiefs / Ne
mesprise not thy self so moche / that thou take the 12
deth / for the lyf / ¹Ne leue not the goodes that thou
shalt be constrayned to brynge / For to seche to gete
them after wyth grete wayllynges and sorow / whych
shal be to the, horryble and harde to fynde¹ / Fynably 16
I praye the / counseylle and warne the / that yf thou
hast taken² ony holy and honeste lyf / that thou wyl
not goo and lese it / And that thou take away that
thought, And despyse³ alle thy wyl for to come to 20
courte / And be content to wythdrawe the wythin
thenclose of thy pryue hous / And yf thou haue not in
tyme passed knowen that thou hast ben ewrous And
happy / thenne lerne now to knowe it fro hens forth / 24
And to god I comande the by thys wrytyng, whyche
gyue the hys grace / Amen.

Thus endeth the Curial made by maystre Alain
Charretier, Translated thus in Englyssh by Wylliam 28
Caxton.

¹⁻¹ Caxton seems to have misunderstood the French: "Ne delaisse pas a faire le bien que tu serois contraint de reparer par après a grans regrets pour querir ce que te seroit horrible a trouver.—P. M.

² French, "se tu prises," if thou appreciatest.—P. M.

³ French, *disposes* (Du Chesne, *dissipes*), not *despises*.—P. M.

INTRODUCTION TO THE *BALADE*.

BY PROF. PAUL MEYER.

Caxton probably found in his manuscript of the French *Curial* the original of the ballad which he printed at the end of his translation. It is not, however, so far as I can ascertain, included in any manuscript or printed collection of Chartier's works. Thanks to my friend E. Picot's unparalleled knowledge of xvth century French poetry, I have been able to trace various copies of it. It seems to have been printed first about the end of the xvth cent., in the *Jardin de plaisance et fleur de rhétorique* (first edition, Paris, Verard, 1499 or 1500).¹ It appears in Olivier Arnoullet's edition (1520—1530) at fol. 73 v^o, among some ballads which recent editors have attributed to Villon. From the *Jardin de plaisance*, our ballad was transferred by Jannet to his edition of Villon (Paris, 1867, p. 142). It occurs also, printed from a Brussels MS., in *La danse aux aveugles et autres poésies du xv^e siècle, extraites de la Bibliothèque des Ducs de Bourgogne* (Lille, A. J. Panckoucke, MDCCXLVIII, 12^o), p. 273, and has been recently edited from a Lyon MS., in a provincial periodical, *Lyon-Review*, 1886, p. 307. The ballad is anonymous in all these texts, and so it is in MS. Bibl. Nat. Fr., 1881, fol. 218 (xvth cent.), and 2206, fol. 106 (early xvith). But in the British Museum MS., Lansdowne 380, fol. 220, it is attributed to Alain Chartier.² Still the authorship remains doubtful. It has been supposed by Heer Bijvanck, in his *Specimen d'un essai critique sur les œuvres de François Villon* (Leyde, 1882, in 8^o), p. 49, that our ballad was the model from which Villon composed his ballad, *Il n'est soing que quant on a faïn* (printed by Bijvanck, p. 219, from a Stockholm MS., and presenting Villon's name in acrostic), but it does not follow that the original is Chartier's, the attribution to this author resting only on the authority of the Lansdowne MS., and to a certain extent on Caxton, who seems to have considered it as Chartier's work. One thing is certain, viz. that it is not Villon's, notwithstanding a certain resemblance to his style, as it is by no means likely that the same poet composed two ballads on the same rhymes.

¹ See Brunet, *Manuel du libraire*. JARDIN.

² "Ballade faicte et composee par le doux poete, Maistre Alain Charretier," fo. 218, MS. 380, 8vo.—Catalogue of the Lansdowne MSS., p. 111, col. 2.

Here follows the text of the French ballad from the Paris MS., Bibl. Nat. 1881, with various readings from the *Jardin de plaisance*.¹ The text of MS. 2206 does not differ from that of the *Jardin*; both omit the same verse in the third stanza. The text of the *Danse aux aveugles* is incorrect, and diverges considerably from the one adopted here, as well as from Caxton.

Il n'est dangie[r] que de villain,	
N'orgueil que de povre enrechiz,	
Ne [si] sur chemin que le plain,	
Ne secours que de vray ami,	4
Ne desespoir que de jalousie,	
Ne hault vouloir que d'amoureux,	
Ne paistre qu'en grant seignorie,	
Ne chiere que d'omme joyeux.	8
Ne servir que de roy souverain,	
Ne lait nom que d'omme ahonty,	
Ne mangier fors quant on a fain,	
N'emprise que d'omme hardi,	
Ne povreté que maladie,	12
Ne hante[r] que les bons et preux,	
Ne maison que la bien garnie,	
Ne chiere que d'omme joieux.	16
Et n'est richasse qu'estre sain,	
N'en amours tel bien que mercy,	
Ne que la mort riens plus certain,	
Ne meilleur chasty que de luy,	20
Ne tel tresor que predommie	
N'engoise qu'en cuer convoiteux	
Ne puissance ou il n'ait envie,	
Ne chiere que d'omme joyeux.	24
Que voulez vous que je vous die?	
Il n'est parler que graciens,	
Ne louer gens qu' après leur vie	
Ne chiere que d'omme joyeux.	28

¹ Indicated as *J.* in the footnotes.

3 [si] from *J.* 5 The line has its proper length in *J.*, where *de* is left out.
 6 *J.* *N'angoisse que cucur convoiteux* (see l. 22). 7 *J.* *Ne puissance ou il n'ait envie.* 9 *J.* *qu' au roy.* 10 MS. *ahontey.* 17 *J.* *Ne r. que d'estre.*
 20 MS. *chastey.* 22 This line is left out in *J.* (see v. 6). 23 *J.* *Ne paistre qu'en grant seigneurie.*

[BALADE BY ALAIN CHARTIER.]

(1)

Ther ne is dangyer / but of a vylayn,	[leaf vj. back]
Ne pride / but of a poure man enryched,	
Ne so sure a way / as is the playn,	There is no road so sure as a
Ne socour / but of a trewe frende,	4 level one,
Ne despayr / but of Ialousye,	
Ne hye corage / but of one Amoureuse,	
Ne pestilence ¹ / but in grete seygnorye,	
Ne chyere / but of a man Ioyous.	8 and no cheer but a joyous man's.

(2)

Ne seruyse / lyke to the kyng souerayn,	
Ne fowle name / but of a man shamed,	There is no foul name, but of a
Ne mete / but whan a man hath hungre,	12 man who is shamed.
Ne entrepryse / but of a man hardy,	
Ne pouerte / lyke vnto maladye,	
Ne to haunte / but the good and wyse,	
Ne howse / but yf it be wel garnysshed,	
Ne chyere / but of a man Ioyous.	16

(3)

Ne ther is no ryChesshe / but in helthe,	There is no riches but in
Ne loue / so good as mercy,	health.
Ne than the deth / nothyng more certayn,	
Ne none better chastysed / than of hym self,	20
Ne tresour / lyke vnto wysedom,	There is no treasure like
Ne anguysshe / but of ay herte coueytous,	Wisdom.
Ne puyssaunce ² / but ther men haue enuye,	
Ne chyere / but of a man Ioyous.	24

[Envoy.]

What wylle ye that I saye?	
Ther is no speche / but it be curtoys,	
Ne preysyng of men / but after theyr lyf,	
Ne chyer but of a man Ioyous.	28 There is no cheer but a joyous man's.

Caxton

¹ Caxton may have read *peste*.—P. M. ² *orig.* puyssaunce

GLOSSARY.

- adionstest, 1/25, urgest, bringest forward.
 adnewe, 15/5, renew? But see footnote.
 appettyeth, 3/5, Fr. *Appéter*. To count, long for, lust after . . . affect, fancie, desire much.
 assaged, 11/18, Fr. *Assagé* . . . Besieged, beleaguered.
 aualed, 6/1, debased.
 auctoryse, n. 15/5, authority, oppression. Fr. *cb. Auctoriser, Authoriser*.
 aygvely, 15/3, sharply.
 barat, 15/27, cheating.
 benediction, 12/14, good name and fame : good place, office.
 Caduque, 10/1, Fr. *Caduaque* : com. Fraile, caduke, feebie, ruinous, readie to fall, vnable to support it selfe.
 Cenele, 11/10, Fr. *Cenele, Senele*. A height, or storie in a building.
 come, 4/26, 8/2, know how to, be able, can.
 corage, 3/7, heart, spirit, mind.
 courroux, 7/25, eourier, rumer, runner.
 courtynes, 5/13, ? courts, or cabinets.
 Curyall, or courtly, 4/29.
 deffye, 14/3, Fr. *Deffier*. To mistrust.
 despoynement, 5/28, loss of office, fall.
 disacustomme, *et.* 7/10, put out of custom or habit, change.
 domageus, 8/19, hurtful.
 droytes, 10/21, 14/1, Fr. *Droit* . . . right, law . . . equitie . . . a mans due . . . priuiledge . . . power
 dysponreyed, 14/26, unconsiderd, ill considerd, Fr. *Despourceur*.
 empeshe, *et.* 2/1, Fr. *Empescher*. To . . . pester, trouble, disturbe, incoomber.
 enclose, 16/22, enclosure, walls.
 enfauned, 10/20, hypocritical, untrustworthy.
 enhaunce, *et.* 4/30, 5/18, 6/3, 24, advance, exalt ; enhaunsyng, 5/26, 7/1.
 enioyed, 2/19, glad, rejoiced at.
 epuyre, 7/3, Fr. *Empurer*, make worse.
 empesshyng, 4/3, Fr. *Empeschement* . . . a let, stop, hinderance, disturbance, comber.
 eschaufed, 13/1, heated.
 ewrous, 5/15, 15/21, Fr. *Eureur, Hareur* . . . Happie, blessed . . . prosperous, luckie, fortunate.
 exerceite, 3/21, Fr. *Exercice* . . . vse, practise, action.
 fayntysse, 13/18, pretense.
 fortunel, 15/24, Fr. *Fortané* . . . Fortunate, happie, luckie ; also, made fortunate, blessed with good hap.
 fraunchyse, 2/29, 9/15, Fr. *Franchise* . . . freenesse, libertie, freedome.
 fynably, 16/16, Fr. *Finablement, Finalement*. Finally . . . at the last ; in summe, in conclusion, in the end.
 grymmeth, 6/25, 15/2, looks grim, frowns at.
 haunte, 19/14, Fr. *Hauter*. To . . . resort vnto ; to be familiar with ; to conuerse, or com-
 merce with.
 indewly, 11/3, unduly.
 machyne, *et.* 12/9, scheme ; Fr. *Machiner*. To machinate ; frame ; contrive, deuise ; to
 practise, plot, conspire against.
 meschaunte, n. 2/33, 14/23, 15/22, Fr. *Meschant*. Who has no chance, unlucky, miserable.
 meschef, 5/25, mishap, ill fortune.
 mespryement, 3/9, undervaluing, disdain.
 misprysest, 3/7, Fr. *Mispriser*. To disesteeme, contemne, dis-laine, despise, neglect, make
 light of, set nought by.
 mondaines, 9/31, Fr. *Mondain* . . . mundane, worldlie, secular.
 nouryshe, 11/27, Fr. *Nourrisse, Nourrice* : f. A Nurse.
 ouerseene, 3/13, deceived, mistaken.
 ouertrowe, *et.* 6/12, tumble over, upset.
 poursewe, 3/16, 5/32, Fr. *Poursuyr* (an old word), as *Poursuicre* . . . eagerly to follow or
 chose ; earnestly to proceed in, or goe on with.
 refuse, 9/20, Fr. *Refuser*. Refuse.
 resteth, 5/19, there remains.
 saye, n. 11/11, talk, gossip ; or *vb.* (hearing men) talk.
 surmounte, 15/6, Fr. *Sarmonter*. To surmount, surpasse, get before . . . to subdue, vanquish,
 ouercome.
 theue, 15/4, thence ?
 tonne, n. 9/18, barrel.
 vnpourueydly, 11/24, without forethought, unpremeditatedly, Fr. *Pouruoir, Pourvoir*, to
 provide.
 verbal, or ful of wordes, 10/21.
 vermyne, n. 9/3, bugs, &c.
 wythdraught, n. 7/23, withdrawing-room.

1490

Caxton's Eneydos

1490

ENGLISH FROM THE FRENCH *LIURE DES ENEYDES*, 1483.

EDITED BY

THE LATE W. T. CULLEY, M.A., OXFORD,

AND

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., CAMB.,

HON. DR. PHIL. BERLIN,

WITH

A SKETCH OF THE OLD FRENCH *ROMAN D'ÉNÉAS*

BY

DR. SALVERDA DE GRAVE.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

1890.

Extra Series.

LVII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE, BY THE LATE W. T. CULLEY	V
AFTERWORDS, BY F. J. FURNIVALL	XX
ON THE FRENCH PROSE <i>ENEYDES</i> AND THE OLD VERSE <i>ROMAN</i> <i>D'ÉNÉAS</i> BY DR. SALVERDA DE GRAVE	XXIV
EXTRACTS FROM THE ITALIAN PROSE VERSION OF THE <i>ÆNEID</i> IN 1476	XXIX
CAXTON'S <i>PROLOGUE</i>	1
„ TABLE OF CONTENTS	5
HIS ENEYDOS	10
INDEX AND GLOSSARY, BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN	167
COLLATION OF CAXTON'S ENGLISH WITH ITS FRENCH ORIGINAL AS SHOWN IN THE <i>LIURE DES ENEYDES</i> , 1483	188

PREFACE.¹

THIS curious little book was printed by Caxton, and specially dedicated to Prince Arthur, eldest son of King Henry VII. It is a translation into English by Caxton himself of a French version of the 'Aeneid,' and is a folio, as usual without any title-page; but Caxton in his colophon at the end gives the date of the translation as June 22nd, 1490, that being probably the period at which he completed it. There are, according to Mr. Blades in his 'Biography and Typography of William Caxton,' eighteen or nineteen copies extant, of which three are in the British Museum, three at St. John's College, Oxford, one at Trinity College, Cambridge, one in the Hunterian Library, Glasgow, and the rest in private libraries. The first and eighth leaves out of a total of eighty-six are blank, but the first is not reckoned in the signature, and the Prologue begins on the second, signed **Aj**. The lines are spaced to an even length, measuring four and three-quarter inches, and thirty-one go to a full page. No other edition is known. Caxton englished his *Envydos* either from the French '*liure des eneydes*' printed at Lyons by Guillaume Le Roy on Sept. 30, 1483, or from a more correct MS. of it. A fairly full collation of Mr. Alfred Huth's copy of the French print has been made by Dr. Furnivall—misprints and all—and will be found at p. 188-214 below.

As to the great English printer and his other works nothing need here be said, but we may add a few words on the work before us. It begins with a Prologue by Caxton himself, and ends with a colophon of his own as well, in which he gives the date of the translation. The Prologue is amusing, especially for his perplexity as to the style of words to be used in his translation. No doubt the English language was changing very rapidly in Caxton's time, but in his Prologue he uses most plain and excellent English, quite readable at the present

¹ By Mr. Culley, with a few corrections on pages v—vii by me.—F. J. F.

day, and very different to that in which 'Piers Plowman,' for instance, was written, not so very much over a century before. The same can hardly be said of the translation, but that seems to be (to some extent) the fault of his original. From a remark of Caxton's in his Prologue, the French version appears to have been written by a priest, who says that he translated it out of Latin into French. On the whole, Caxton adhered faithfully to his original, as in the latter part of the Prologue he states he has done, but he often put two words for one, and the language of the 'Eneydos' is frequently turgid and exaggerated, epithets being heaped on epithets in a marvellous and bewildering manner, and the tautological repetition of words is wonderful: see in Capitulo x. 39/9, "grete assaultes, effortes and bataylles;" in Cap. xiv. 52/9, "thondres, lyghtnynges, choruscaycions and merveyllouse tourmentes;" Cap. xv. 59/19, "had construed, edified and made" (Fr. *construit et ediffie*). Though the book is not in a general way difficult to read, the construction is curious, as Caxton very often translates the French idiom literally,—as, by the bye, Lord Berners often does in his translation of the French Romances,—and he frequently uses the French words without rendering them into English at all. No better example of the former can be found than in Cap. xvi., p. 63-4, when Mercury addresses Aeneas as "Man effemynate wythout honour ravysshed in to dilectacion femynyne," or of the latter than the use (25/35) of "syncopysed" for fainted, or elsewhere (46/1) of "orages" for storms, and "suffoung" (87/26) for smoke or fumigate. It is needless to multiply examples which any reader can easily see for himself.

Though Caxton tells us that he translated his French original, the 'Eneydes,' most carefully into English, that French original was by no means a literal translation of Virgil's 'Aeneid,' but rather an extremely free paraphrase,—with importations from Boccaccio and other authors, omissions and abridgments,—not only telling the story of Aeneas in quite a different way to the 'Aeneid,' but occasionally giving an altogether different account. It is more or less interesting to trace these differences, and to do so will serve as a preliminary digest of the tale. Instead of being in twelve books like the 'Aeneid,' the 'Eneydos' is divided into sixty-five ill-arranged

chapters of varying length. Its story begins quite differently from the 'Aeneid,' the first book of which is occupied with the shipwreck of Aeneas, caused by Aeolus letting loose the winds at the instigation of Juno; the kind reception of him and his companions at Carthage by Dido, together with the promise made by Jupiter to Venus of Aeneas's future greatness in Italy; Venus's appearance to Aeneas after his shipwreck; her brief recital to him of Dido's story, and her changing Cupid into the form of Aeneas's son Ascanius to inspire Dido with love for Aeneas; while the second and third books are filled with Aeneas's recital to Dido of the story of the destruction of Troy, and of his six years' wanderings. In the 'Eneydos' (French, *les Eneydes*: Caxton turned this plural into a genitive singular), after a brief prologue by the unnamed author, the first subject handled is Troy, which is said to have been built by Priam. This is odd, as everywhere else Priam is stated to have been the last king of Troy. Here he is said to be son of Laomedon, and descended from Dardanus, son of Jupiter and Electra, which is the old Greek tradition, but it is not mentioned in the 'Aeneid.' Then comes a notice of the siege of Troy by the Greeks under Agamemnon, when Priam,—that his family should not become extinct in case of defeat,—sends his son Polydorus to Plasmator (Polymestor), King of Thace (Thrace), who, on the decline of Priam's fortune, murders Polydorus and buries him in the sand by the seashore. The first chapter ends by the burning of Troy by the Greeks, only the gate Stex being left. In the second Cap. the gate Stex takes fire, and Eneas flies, bearing his father Anchises, leading his son Yolus (Iulus), and accompanied by Creusa his wife. (No mention is made of Simon and the wooden horse, Laocoon and the snakes, or the loss of Creusa, so particularly described by Aeneas to Dido.) Eneas and the Trojan refugees reach the port of Simois and put to sea, pass Anchandron (Antander) and the forest of Yde, and arrive in Trace, where they begin to build a city, and because the building goes on slowly they hold a sacrifice. This is on the spot where Polydorus is buried; and on Eneas attempting to cut down some of the bushes to crown his altar with, blood issues from them; and on his trying to tear them up, Polydorus speaks, tells his sad fate, and informs

Eneas that he must not remain there, but that the gods have ordained Italy as his future home. The third, fourth, and fifth chapters are occupied by this and the obsequies of Polydorus, after which the Trojans go to sea. All is described much as by Aeneas himself to Dido in Book iii. of the 'Aeneid,' but at very much greater length, and a considerable portion of the story as told by Virgil is here omitted, namely, in the first place, that which recounts, as related by Aeneas himself to Dido, his voyages to Delos and Crete, the oracle of Delos and the prophecy of the Trojan gods, the visit to the Strophades, the Harpies, and the prophecy of Celæno, though this is referred to long after in Cap. xxxiv., where it is attributed to Anchises. No mention is made either of how Aeneas finds Andromache in Epirus, one of the most touching scenes in the 'Aeneid,' of his interview with Helenus, of the arrival of the Trojans in Sicily, or of the death of Anchises, though Anchises is evidently considered as being dead when the Trojans arrive in Italy, and his tomb in Sicily is mentioned in Cap. xxx. Aeneas is not mentioned again till the tenth Cap., and in Cap. vi. we come to Dido, leaving Aeneas at sea, and we are told of the two different stories, one by Boccaccio, the other by Virgil. Boccaccio's story occupies Caps. vi., vii., viii. It does not differ seriously from Virgil's, though told at much greater length, up to the foundation of Carthage; in both we are told of Dido's royal birth, her marriage to Acerbas, otherwise Sichæus, the murder of the latter by her avaricious brother the King Pygmalion, her exodus with a body of followers and her husband's riches, her arrival in Libya, her purchase of land, and the founding of Carthage. The principal differences are, that Dido is said by Virgil to have been made aware by a vision of the murder of her husband, which Pygmalion had long concealed, and that Virgil says nothing of Dido's visit to Cyprus on her way to Libya, which is told at length in "Jhonn bhocace's" story, as quoted by the writer of the 'Eneydos'; but then Virgil gives Dido's antecedents briefly. The two accounts of Dido's death, however, differ *in toto* as to the cause, though not quite so as to the manner, for that taken from Boccaccio relates that a neighbouring king asked Dido in marriage, threatening destruction to Carthage if he were refused, and Dido having been inveigled by

her subjects into a statement that it was noble for a person to die for his country, to solve her difficulties ascends an altar and sacrifices herself in public. (Her self-murder as described in the 'Æneid' is of course secret.) This description of Dido's life and death is taken from Boccaccio's 'Falles of Princes.' The Latin copy of this work in the Bodleian Library is entitled "Johannis Bocacii de Certaldis historiographi prologus in libros de casibus virorum illustrium incipit," and is dated in MS. "Vlmæ 1473." It is not divided into books or chapters, nor are the pages numbered, but our story begins on or about page 46, and is headed "de Dydone regina." An early printed translation in the Bodleian is thus entitled, "Here begyneth the boke calledde John bochas deservinge the falle of princis princesses and other nobles trāslated ito Englissh by John ludgate mōke of the monastery of seint edmūdes Bury at the co māndemēt of the worthy prince humfrey duke of Gloucestre beginnyngē at adam and endingē with kinge john take prisoner in fraunce by prince Edwardē." R. Pynson 1494. Our story comes in the second book, and is headed "Howe Dido quene of Cartage slough hir silf for conservaeyon of her chastitie." Wayland's later edition—(undated) beginning thus, "The Tragedies gathered by Jhon Bochas, of all such Princes as fell from theyr estates throughe the mutability of Fortune since the creacion of Adam until his time: wherin may be seen what vices bring menne to destruccion wyth notable warninges howe the like may be auoided. Translated into Englysh by John Lidgate, Monke of Burye. Imprinted at London by John Wayland, at the signe of the Sunne over against the Conduite in Fletestrete,"—gives the story at Book ii. Cap. xiii., "Howe Dydo quene of Cartage slough herself for conseruacion of her chastitie." The writer of the 'Eneydos' of course wrote from much earlier copies, probably manuscripts, but we seem to have no clue as to the period. The story given in the 'Eneydos' as Boccaccio's was taken by Boccaccio, or the authority Boccaccio followed, from Justin, who gives the story of Dido, otherwise Elissa, and the founding of Carthage, in the fourth, fifth and sixth chapters of Book xviii. of his 'Historie.' The facts are almost precisely the same as given by Boccaccio and quoted in the 'Eneydos,' but the terse Latin of Justin

contrasts strangely with the insufferable verbosity of the French writer, who exaggerates most monstrously the brief speeches of Dido as given by Justin. It may be remarked that Justin does not use the name Dido, but only Elissa; also that the writer of the 'Eneydos' seems to mistake Fenyce as applied to Dido as being really her name, like Elissa. Virgil, of course, when he speaks of her as Phœnissa in Book iv. of the 'Aeneid' merely refers to her race. Justin tells us that the African king who sought Elissa (Dido) in marriage was named Hiarbas, which name appears of course in the 'Aeneid.' The 'Eneydos' omits his name, and only tells us that he was King of the 'musitaynes or momydes.' This may be thus explained: Justin calls him King of the Maxitani, probably a variation of Mauritani, and corrupted by the French scribe or the authority he followed into 'musitaynes'; and Eustathius says that he was King of the Mazices, otherwise called Numidians, otherwise Nomades, the wandering tribes, which last appellation appears to have been mis-spelt as to the initial letter by the French author. The author of the 'Eneydos,' too, in comparing the two accounts, seems to think that Virgil must have been right and Boccaccio wrong, and wonders why the latter should tell a different tale from Virgil. Of course if there is any truth at all in the story of Dido and her founding Carthage, Justin's account is far the more likely to be correct. He says that Carthage was founded seventy-two years before Rome, *i. e.* in the year B.C. 825, according to common computation. Velleius Patereulus puts the interval at sixty-five years; Livy, as we gather from the epitome of his fifty-first book, at ninety-three (for he says that Carthage was destroyed in the seven-hundredth year after its foundation, which would place the latter in the year B.C. 846); Solinus at one hundred and twenty-nine; and Josephus apparently at about one hundred and fifty. Against this testimony we can scarcely set Appian's story of the great antiquity of Carthage, which probably is either a myth or refers to an earlier settlement, for it would seem that that enterprising people the Phœnicians had at least one settlement earlier than Carthage on the Libyan coast. All dates in these periods are more or less uncertain, but that commonly accepted for the destruction of Troy is B.C. 1184; and the seventh year of Aeneas's wanderings, which is

that in which he comes to Africa, would be 1177; so it is plain that Virgil relegates Dido to those remote ages merely to make an interesting incident in his own tale without the smallest regard to history—if indeed the legends of those early days can be called history.

In Cap. ix., after a eulogium on Dido's chastity, we return to our former story. Juno's implacable hatred of the Trojans impels her to persuade Yolus (Æolus) and Neptunus to raise a dreadful storm around Aeneas's fleet. In the 'Æneid' it is only Æolus to whom Juno applies, and it is Neptune who, roused by the din, rebukes the winds and calms the storm. In Cap. x. the storm breaks on the Trojan fleet, apparently coming from Thrace, as no mention is made of the intervening events related by Aeneas to Dido, or of their visit to Sicily, and drives it shattered on the coast of Libya near Carthage, where Dido receives Aeneas and his shipwrecked comrades kindly. No mention is made of Aeneas's recital of his adventures contained in Books ii. and iii. of the 'Æneid,' but yet here the stories of the 'Æneid' and the 'Eneydos' unite, and they go along after this more or less side by side, with certain discrepancies, which it will be curious to observe. The fourth book of the 'Æneid' is of course occupied with Dido's unhappy love for Aeneas, his departure, and her melancholy death. The corresponding chapters of the 'Eneydos' are the eleventh to the twenty-ninth, and are very long, verbose, and exaggerated. For instance, Dido's confession of her love to her sister, and the encouraging reply of the latter, are most lengthily and exaggerated paraphrases of their words as told in the 'Æneid.' The events as told in the 'Eneydos' are pretty much the same as in the 'Æneid,' but are very differently described. The description of the hunt is much exaggerated, and like that of a mediæval gathering; and that of the storm is told at much greater length; while the lamentation of the nymphs when Aeneas and Dido meet in the cave, one of the most picturesque pieces in the 'Æneid,' is omitted. The account of Fame is much enlarged, and the prayer of Iarbas to Jupiter slightly extended. There is also a long account of the meeting of Mercury and Atlas, when the former is on his way to warn Aeneas that he must leave Carthage, which is very briefly noticed in the 'Æneid.' Mnestheus, S-rgestus, and Cloanthus are called Nestor, Sergeste, and

Cloant. In Cap. xviii. Dido's entreaty to Aeneas is given with much verbosity and repetition, and Aeneas in his reply, when he puts the responsibility of his departure on Apollo, is made to say, "the god Appollo of the citee of tymbre," whereas the epithet used in the 'Aeneid' is "Grynæus" (v. 345); Thymbræus is, however, used as an epithet of Apollo in lib. iii. v. 85, which was perhaps in the French scribe's mind at the time. Dido's address to Aeneas, Caps. xix. and xx. ('Aeneid,' vv. 365-386), is again dreadfully exaggerated and elongated, as is the comparison of the Trojan sailors to ants, Cap. xxi., 'Aeneid,' v. 401. There is a curious mistake in the heading of Cap. xxii. which runs, "How eneas brake the oken tree for the grete love of Dido." It refers of course to the comparison of Aeneas to an ancient oak in a tempest, 'Aeneid,' v. 441; this is very fairly rendered in the 'Eneydos.' The same cannot be said of the description of the witch of Atlas and her incantations, briefly noticed in the 'Aeneid,' but given at immense length in the 'Eneydos,' and the same may be said of Dido's invocation of vengeance on the Trojans and prophecy of a future avenger, Cap. xxvii., 'Aeneid,' vv. 610-625. Dido's visions and delusions, too, are told at immense length compared with the original; and the comparison of her sufferings to those of Orestes in v. 471 is extended to many lines. The beautiful passage at the end of Book iv. of the 'Aeneid,' 693-705, where Juno sends Iris to cut the fatal lock and release Dido's struggling spirit, is transformed into a strange contest between Iris and Proserpine for the possession of Dido's soul, with a long description of Proserpine and her power over mortals, and a really ridiculous story about Proserpine's hair, nothing of which appears in the 'Aeneid,' and it would be difficult to say where the writer of the 'Eneydos' got hold of it. It looks as if he had read an edition of Virgil with copious notes on the superstition of Proserpine's cutting the fatal lock, and tacked them on to the story with his own additions and inventions! Iarbas appears in both Justin's story and Virgil's, and in both as a Moorish king and a suitor for Dido's hand; in the former he is a fierce suitor whose imperious conduct leads directly to Dido's death; in the latter he is merely "despectus Iarbas," despite his birth as son of Jove and Garamantis, and exercises little influence on the

tale. It is much the same where he appears in the 'Eneydos,' Cap. xv., etc. There he is said to be son of Jove and Nyuyse, goddess of fountains, and daughter of Eazymas. He is said, however, by Ovid ('Fasti,' iii. 553), and Silius Italicus ('de Bello Punico,' viii. 79), to have occupied Carthage forcibly after Aeneas's departure and Dido's death, when Anna fled and landed in Italy, where she was received by Aeneas then married to Lavinia, and finally became a goddess under the tital of Anna Perenna. Ovid in his 'Heroides' (vii. 125), represents Dido as in fear of Iarbas. In Marlow's tragedy of 'Dido, Queen of Carthage,' Iarbas, in despair, commits suicide along with Dido, and Anna, enamoured of Iarbas, does the same, but this is probably only the invention of the playwrighter.

After the fourth book, events are told in the 'Eneydos' in pretty much the same sequence as in the 'Aeneid,' but still there are considerable differences in places. The fifth book of the 'Aeneid' is occupied by Aeneas's being driven by a storm on the coast of Sicily, his kind reception as before by Acestes, a very long detail of the games at the tomb of Anchises, the attempt of the Trojan women to burn the ships, the founding of a new Troy for the aged and infirm and those who wish to go no farther, the departure for Italy, and the death of Palinurus. Cap. xxx. notices the storm and the arrival in Sicily very briefly, and only just mentions the games which are described at such length and so interestingly in the 'Aeneid.' Cap. xxxi. begins with a brief notice of the attempt to burn the ships, the saving of which is attributed to Ascanius, whereas in the 'Aeneid,' though Ascanius is said to be the first to arrive on the scene, it is Aeneas who saves them by his prayer to Jove, who answers by a thunderstorm sufficiently violent to quench the flames. Four ships are said to be burned in the 'Aeneid,' three in the 'Eneydos.' Cap. xxxi. then briefly notices the foundation of New Troy, afterwards called Acestre, after Acestes, king of the country. In the 'Aeneid' the place is simply called Acesta, and it is to stand in the place of Ilium to those who remain in it: it seems afterwards to have been called Segesta. By the bye, the 'Eneydos' merely says that Acestes was of Trojan lineage, and does not mention his being the son of the river-god Crimisis and a Trojan damsel, as stated in the 'Aeneid,' v. 38. After

briefly noticing the departure from Sicily and the death of Palinurus, Cap. xxxi. says the Trojans landed on an isle called Tulyola, where was a city called Thetys, after a nephew of Eneas, who settled in it after conquering Italy. Here it says Dædalus took refuge when he flew from Crete, and here begins a long digression on the history of Dædalus, Minos of Crete, his wife (here called Pasyfa), the Labyrinth, Aegeus, Theseus, and Ariadne, here called Adryane, ending with the flight of Dædalus and the death of Icarus (here called 'sycarus'), only Dædalus at the end is said to have arrived in Sardinia. This occupies as well all Cap. xxxii., and this long story is all founded on a very few lines in the beginning of Book vi. of the 'Aeneid,' vv. 15—30, where Dædalus is briefly mentioned, and is said to have founded the temple of Apollo at Cumæ, and dedicated his wings there to the god.

The sixth book of the 'Aeneid' begins with Aeneas's arrival at Cumæ. This is called in the 'Eneydos,' Cap. xxxii., the "yle of Eulyola," as in xxxi. Tulyola. This may have some connection with "Euboicis Cumarum allabitur oris," 'Aen.' vi. 2, as Cumæ in Italy was founded by joint colonies from Chalcis in Eubœa and Cumæ in Asiatic Aeolia, led by Megasthenes and Hippocles respectively, and Eulyola may be intended to bear a resemblance to Euboicæ. The rest of the sixth book is entirely occupied by Aeneas's visit to the Cumæan Sibyl, and his descent into Avernus. The latter event is very briefly noticed by the writer of the 'Eneydos,' who expresses his disbelief in it. He evidently looks on the 'Aeneid' as in the main a true story, and thinks it marred by the introduction of such an improbable occurrence. His remarks on the matter in the beginning of Cap. xxxiii. are very amusing.

The two last lines of Book vi. of the 'Aeneid' bring Aeneas from Cumæ to Caieta. Book vii. describes his arrival in the Tiber, and after an account of Latinus, his kingdom and family, and of Turnus, goes on to describe the fulfilment of Celeno's prophecy, the embassy to Latinus and its gracious reception, the evil influence of Juno on Amata and Turnus, the accidental wounding by Ascanius of Sylvia's deer, the consequent skirmish and commencement of hostilities, and winds up with a long account of Latin chiefs who rally round Turnus's standard. To this book correspond more

or less Caps. xxxiii.-ix. of the 'Eneydos,' but with many discrepancies. No mention is made of Juno, Alecto, or Amata. The few lines at v. 45 of Book vii. describing Latinus's descent are magnified into a sort of chronology or history of Italy from Latinus's predecessors to Julius Cæsar! This is in Cap. xxxiv.

There are said to have been seven Italian kings reigning for one hundred and fifty years up to the time of Aeneas's arrival, but only five are given, Janus, Saturnus (distinctly said not to be the father of Jupiter), Pyrrus, Faunus, and Latinus. Virgil mentions Latinus, Faunus, Picus, and Saturn. There are also said to be seven kings reigning after Romulus, but only the usual six are named, their names being wonderfully spelt. The period allotted to them is much the same as given by Livy and others, viz. two hundred and forty years. Aeneas lands (Cap. xxxiii.) at the mouth of the river Tonyre, and the fulfilment of the prophecy of Celæno is here mentioned, though it had not been mentioned before in the 'Eneydos,' and is here attributed to Anchises, not to the Harpy. It is true that Aeneas on this occasion does say that Anchises had explained the mystery of the prophecy to him, which might lead to the error of attributing to him the prophecy itself. In Cap. xxxv. we are told, as in the 'Aeneid,' that Latinus called his capital Laurence (Laurens), from a laurel growing in the palace, but we are also told that it was first called Lamyra, from Lavynus, King Latinus's elder brother. This story is told by Servius, who calls it Lavinum, from Lavinus, but whence he got it is not known, and it looks like a confusion with the Lavinium founded afterwards by Aeneas in honour of Lavinia, daughter of Latinus. It is not in Virgil at all. In Cap. xxxvi. Ilioneus is called 'dyoneus.' Turnus (Cap. xxxiii.) is quaintly described as "a bachelor of ytalie—y^t was moche preu and hardy." In Cap. xxxviii. is described the fray caused by Ascanius inadvertently wounding Sylvia's tame deer. Sylvia is here described as the daughter of Turnus, and the young man slain in the fray as son of Turnus; in the 'Aeneid,' Sylvia and the youth (Almo) are children of Tyrrheus, shepherd to Latinus; and Turnus's children, here mentioned as two sons and a fair daughter, do not appear at all in the 'Aeneid,' where Turnus is introduced as quite a young man. The

host gathered by Turnus as described at length in vv. 647—815, ‘Aen.’ Book vii. is mentioned very briefly in Cap. xxxix. as of Lombardy, “to scane, and the valles of ytalie,” and no one is named save Camilla, here called ‘canulla,’ and said to come from ‘prouerne’ (Privernum), and to be daughter of ‘medabus’ (Metabus).

Book viii. of the ‘Aeneid’ begins briefly with Turnus’s embassy to Diomede to ask help, and then gives at length Aeneas’s journey on a similar errand to Evander, an Arcadian settled at Mount Palatine on the Tiber, at the instigation of Father Tiber who appears to him in his sleep. Evander receives him kindly, tells him the story of Cacus, promises him his son Pallas with four hundred horse, and sends him on to the Tyrrhenes, who have just expelled their king Mezentius for his cruelty. It winds up with Venus giving Aeneas a splendid set of arms which she persuades Vulcan to forge for him, and on the shield is engraven the future story of Rome, much to Aeneas’s astonishment. Caps. xl. and xli. of the ‘Eneydos’ correspond to this, but tell the tale briefly, omitting the story of Cacus and the expedition to the Tyrrhenes. Evander is said to be nephew of King Thalamus of Archade, to have left his native land on account of having killed his father by advice of his mother Vyceta, to have settled on mounte Palatyne on the river Tonyre, and to have a town called Palence, after King Palantyne of Archade. He is said to have a daughter, Palencia, and a son, Palas, whom he gives to Eneas with four thousand men. His wife is also mentioned as grieving over Palas’s departure. Nothing of this appears in Virgil, where Evander’s mother is Carmentis,—his wife from vv. 158, 159 of Book xi. is evidently dead,—and no daughter is spoken of. His city, Pallanteum, is named after an ancestor, Pallas: some historians say it was after a similarly named city in Arcadia, from whence he came. Elsewhere we find that he had two daughters, Rome and Dyna, but they are not mentioned in the ‘Aeneid,’ which seems to imply that Pallas was an only child. Evander’s parting address to his son is very correctly translated in the ‘Eneydos,’ but no mention is made of Venus’s gift to Aeneas.

The principal events of Book ix. are Turnus’s attack on the Trojans, instigated by Juno, during Aeneas’s absence, the burning

of the Trojan ships and their wonderful metamorphosis into sea-nymphs, the fierce conflict round the Trojan camp, and the sally of Nisus and Euryalus. This is told with no important variation except that we are not told that Turnus got inside the Trojan camp (ix. vv. 725—818), and Nisus (Nysus) and Euryalus (Eryalus) are represented as being mounted. The names are often wonderfully spelt; Volscens, who intercepts Nisus and Euryalus, is called Boleus. Can the mis-spelling arise from a mistaken sound, as if the story had been written down from oral repetition, not copied from a book? Some other of the wonderful variations from the Latin names suggest the same idea. No mention is made of Juno's message by Iris to Turnus, or the metamorphosis of the Trojan ships, though their burning is described: similarly the Council of the Gods mentioned in the beginning of Book x. is omitted in Cap. xlviii., which corresponds to it. Such incidents, the scribe of the 'Eneydos' evidently thinks unworthy of a true story such as he is translating from Virgil. The spectral image of Aeneas which, by retreating, lures Turnus from the battle and on board the empty ship that carries him with the current to Ardea is attributed, not to Juno, as by Virgil, but to the Fiend! Here we may notice that Ardea is called 'darda,' and Daunus, Turnus's father, 'daryus.'

The events of the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth books are pretty faithfully followed in the 'Eneydos,' viz. Aeneas's return with Pallas and the Tyrrhenes under Tarchon, the battle, Ascanius's sally, the deaths of Pallas, Mazentius, and Lausus, the truce, the return of the embassy to Diomedes, Latinus's council, the second battle and death of Camilla, the arrangement for single combat between Aeneas and Turnus, the renewal of hostilities, the suicide of Amata, the single combat between Aeneas and Turnus, and the death of the latter. The story is however differently told in the 'Eneydos' in a few particulars. Aeneas's visit to the Tyrrhenes is not mentioned; nor is their army which returns with him, and is described at length in the 'Aeneid,' Book x. vv. 165—212, mentioned either, except to say that Aeneas returns with "moche folke" from Palence, viz. thirty ships under King Carton; and the fact is mentioned that Carton's (Tarchon's) ship was too big ("to grete") to get into the haven.

Virgil's account is that it ran aground and came to pieces. The deaths of Lausus and Mezentius are very correctly taken from Virgil. Of course the meeting of Aeneas with his own ships in the shape of nymphs is ignored, as is the sending of Opis by Diana to avenge the death of Camilla, here called Canulla. Her slayer Aruns is called Anyus, and is said to be slain by a maid in revenge for her mistress's death. Chloreus, whom Camilla was pursuing when struck by Aruns, is called Cleonis, and is said to have been a bishop in Troy! In the 'Aeneid' he is "sacer Cybele—olimque sacerdos." Diana's long account of Camilla and her father to Opis, vv. 532-594, is also omitted. In Cap. Iv., on the renewal of hostilities, Turnus makes "bussynes and trompettes to be blown." This is a translation of

"Bello dat signum rauca cruentum
Buccina."—'Aeneid,' lib. xi. v. 475.

In Cap. Iviii. the Latin queen Amata, here called Amatha, is at last mentioned as endeavouring to dissuade Turnus from single combat with Aeneas, and her death is mentioned in Cap. lxi. The interference of the gods, which plays so important a part in Virgil's story, is still ignored by the scribe of the 'Eneydos,' though admitted previously in Book iv. Juturna's interference at the instigation of Juno (Book xii. v. 221) in the arrangements for the single combat is left out, and all the blame for the resumption of hostilities laid on Tolumnius, here called Tholomæus, "a deuynowre," nor is her appearance as Turnus's charioteer (v. 467) mentioned. Most of the fighting, however, is pretty faithfully copied from the 'Aeneid,' and so is the death of Turnus in Cap. lxii., which winds up immediately after Turnus dies with the entirely extraneous sentence—

"All thus was conquered all Lombardy and the pucelle Laayne by the hande of eneas."

Here the story of the 'Aeneid' ends, but the 'Eneydos' contains three more chapters, giving a history of Aeneas and Lavinia, and the Alban kings that succeeded them. This requires little notice. Three Roman writers have left lists of the Alban kings, viz. Livy, Dionysius of Halicarnassus, and, oddly enough, Ovid, in his 'Metamorphoses': Dionysius alone gives the length of their reigns; and all three accounts differ in the order of succession and names of these kings.

The account given in Cap. lxxv. of the 'Eneydos' differs from all the others both in order of succession and names of the kings, and gives the length of the reigns differently to Dionysius; moreover, the reigns as given in both fall far short of the four hundred and seven years given both in Caps. lxxv. and xxxiv. as the period from Aeneas to Romulus. As to the history of that period as given here it is impossible to offer any opinion, as no two historians give a similar account. As Livy says (lib. i. cap. 3), "quis enim rem tam veterem pro certo affirmet?" It is curious to see the term Lombardy, belonging to a different place and a very different period, applied to the Latin kingdom, and the attempt to reconcile the chronology of the Alban period with that of contemporary states is interesting. According to the scribe of the 'Eneydos' the Israelitish Exodus from Egypt took place about one hundred and forty years before the time usually ascribed to it, and there is a similar difference as to King David; as to the date assigned to Homer, the scribe of the 'Eneydos' is perhaps as likely to be right as any one else. It ends very abruptly.

On the whole the 'Eneydos,' as englished by Caxton from the French *Eneydes*, is a romance mainly following the outlines of Virgil's story in the 'Aeneid,' but by no means a translation of it, and the writer of the French original seems to have possessed some historical information which he interpolates from time to time, by way of, in his opinion no doubt, improving the story. These interpolations we have in some measure endeavoured to trace. As to the date we know nothing, except that it must have been written later than Boccaccio's 'Fall of Princes,' and Boccaccio died in 1376. In being founded on an existing work, it differs from many of the early French Romances, which for the most part are either pure fable or founded on legends little better than mythical.¹ We are in equal ignorance as to the author, but from different little things in the tale, as well as what Caxton says in the beginning of his Prologue, the writer was probably an ecclesiastic.

¹ Like Virgil's 'Aeneid,' may we say?—F.

AFTERWORDS BY F. J. FURNIVALL.

OUR kind helper Mr. Culley unhappily died from a disease in the throat, before he could revise his Preface, written before—by the help of Prof. P. Meyer, Brunet's *Manuel*, 1814, and the Huth Catalogue—I had found out the wrongness of Mr. Blades's statement that no copy of the French original of the *Eneydos* was known. When Mr. Culley—who had always taken interest in the E. E. Text Soc.—told me that he had kept up his Oxford classics, I askt him to edit for us this Caxton's *Eneydos* which Mrs. A. Furnivall had copied for the Society. As I agreed to read it for him with Caxton's print, revise his side-notes when needed, and get the index and glossary made for him by Mr. T. Austin, Mr. Culley agreed to help us, and he saw the text through the press. When he came to London to be under his doctor, he was too ill to collate the English with its French original, and so I did it,¹ Mr. Alfred H. Huth continuing the kindness which his father always showd me, and for which I heartily thank him. Would that the Ashburnhams were like the Huths, Spencers, Crawfords, and the other generous owners who so freely grant the use of their treasures to us literary antiquaries!

As Dr. L. Kellner will treat thoroughly Caxton's syntax in his Introduction to our old printer's *Blanchardyn*—which I hope will go out with this *Eneydos*, for the text has all been long in type—I need do nothing more here than refer the reader to my collation of the English and French texts of the present version of Virgil's poem on pages 188-214 below. He will see that Caxton often keeps up the earlier English custom of using two equivalents for one French

¹ The misprints in the French text both amused and comforted me, so I left them, to show that Le Roy was more careless than Caxton.

word,¹ though he sometimes (but rarely) reverses the process, and puts only one English for two or more French.²

Dr. Kellner's contention, that though Caxton imported French words freely, he did not import French constructions, I met by citing Caxton's 'the his' (23/19) for the French *le sien*; ³ and I suppose that arrangements like 'the Iugemente that to hym was fortunat' (25/16), are due to French influence, *son iugement que lay estoit fortune*; but Dr. Kellner is no doubt right in the main. Still, I never felt how largely French construction has influenst English, till the often-by-me-sought source of our 'How do you do' turnd up one day in the old French

[“ COMMENT LE FAITES VOUS, comment vous portez-vous ?]

Lors li dist la dame, *comment*

Le faites-vous, biaux tres douc sire ?

Roman du chastelain de Couci, v. 3488.

Il li demandent de lur piere,

Et *coment le fesait* lur miere.—Lai d'Haveloc, v. 562.

Que fait [How does] mes sires? est-il sains et haitiés ?

Roncevaux, p. 159.”

Hippeau. *Glossaire*, Pt. II, 1872, p. 170.

Since this, I've always felt humble when I've met a Frenchman; and if he'd claimd all England and English Literature as French, I

¹ sorowfulle and bywepte, *esplourée*, 19/1-2; chasse and hunte, *chacer*, 51/36; appareylled and covered, *couverte*, 53/27; &c., &c.

² 'places' for *lieux et lieux* 26/32, 'maydens' for *pucelles ou ieunes filles* 29/27, 'the owle' for *la voix de la frezaye aultrement dūt cheucche* 80/14, 'techer' for *enseigneresse et doctresse* 85/5, 'kyng' for *roy et sire* 114/24, 'wente' for *vindrent & errerent* 123/28, 'wyses' for *facens & maniers* 123/55. See also *tuc & occis pour sa grand forenerie*, slayne, 153/2; *inoult ire & courrouce*, sore ananged, 143/6; *aioustances ou appentances*, appartenaunces, 164/25; &c., &c.

³ On the other hand, he gives *hors du sens* its English equivalent of 'besyde hymself' 59/33, tho' he renders *forcee* by 'mad and beside herself' 97/9-10. (A woman) *ensainte* is englishit 'wyth chylde' 117/5, *vers la bout de la nef* is 'vpon the forecastell' 116/26, and *puerces* is 'made fayre' 83/6.

When Caxton thinks his literal englishing of the French may be misunderstood, as in describing Dido's moderate-sized nose, he enlarges *le nes moyen* into 'a meane nose, not to grete nor to lytell' 112/28. So also *espierus ayuz* is renderd 'logges wyth sharpe yron atte the ende' 138/22-31.

should hardly have dared say that they belonged to us.¹ Who too would have thought that we owed 'mother country' to France? Yet there it is in the *Eneydes*, 'la douce terre mere,' p. 192 below, 29/4-5; and that Caxton actually left out the *mere*, and englished 'the swete country' only!² However, we'll forgive him, for his delightful bit about the egges and eyren at the Kentish Foreland, p. 2-3, his praise of Skelton, p. 3-4, and his touch 'when we halowe any solemnyte in the tyme of somer' (17/22), to be compared with the French, p. 189, col. 2. If only Caxton would have written us an account of the England of his time, how gladly we'd have done without his englishing one or two of his dull foreign books!

The other point on which I wisht information to be given in this edition, was, what is the relation of the prose *Eneydes* to the early verse *Roman d'Énéas*, and of that to Virgil's *Aeneid*. Luckily Prof. Paul Meyer reviewed in the last number of the *Romania* Dr. Salverda de Grave's Introduction to the edition of the *Roman* which he has been for some time preparing. And at my request Dr. de Grave has been kind enough to write us the short essay which follows, and for which we all thank him.

On pages xxix—xxx1 I have added a few extracts from the Italian prose shortening of the *Aeneid*, translated (?) from the Greek of Athanasius in 1476. The student who wishes to follow the Middle-Age changes of Virgil³ further, should read

1. 'Virgilio nel Medio Evo, per Domenico Comparetti, Livorno, 1872: Parte prima, Virgilio nella Tradiziona Letteraria fino a Dante; Parte seconda, Virgilio nella Legenda Popolare.' See the Table of Contents (*Indice*) at the end of Part II.

¹ Our good friend Prof. Paul Meyer is now writing an Essay in which he claims that in the early part of the 14th century, French had almost driven English out of England. He thinks it 'a very great pity' that his French did not wholly conquer, as then all Britain, America, India and our Colonies would have spoken French, and we should all have been saved the trouble of learning it. Chaucer, Shakspeare, Milton &c. would have written in French too (poor things!), and French would have been the ruling tongue of the world.

² Our old worthy's worst-looking rendering in his translation is 'tygres infernalle' for the French *tiges* stocks (? families, deities) of hell; but as Prof. P. Meyer doesn't acknowledge *tiges* as the right word here, Caxton probably found *tigres* in his original, which is occasionally better than the printed text.

³ The man. For the *Aeneid*, see M. Parodi's book, p. xxvii, note ¹, below.

2. *Master Virgil*. The Author of the *Aeneid* as he Seemed in the Middle Ages. A Series of Studies by J. S. Tunison, 1889. (Robert Clarke & Co. \$2.00.)

'The Studies discuss the diabolism, the superstitions, and science of the middle ages, and the magical and prophetic character of the author of the *Aeneid*, from its rise in fables to its outcome in the legends that were generally accepted at the close of the mediæval epoch.'—*Lit. World*, Boston, U.S.A., 1889.

The English black-letter *Virgilius* of about 1520, which was in Laneham's or Captain Cox's famous Library, and which I sketched in my Introduction to L.'s *Letter* of 1575 in the Ballad Society, was reprinted by Thoms in his 'Early Prose Romances,' Pickering, 1827. The old title is

'This Boke treateth of the Lyfe of Virgilius, and of his Deth, And Many Maruayles that he dyd in his Lyfe Tyme by Whycherafte and Nygramaneyc thorough the helpe of the Deuyls of Hell.' The colophon is 'Thus endethe the lyfe of Virgilius with many dyuers consaytes that he dyd. Emprynted in the cytie of Anwarpe By me Iohan Doesboreke dwellynge at the camerporte.' 4to, 30 leaves. *Bodleian* (Douce).—Hazlitt.—F. J. F.

3 *St. George's Sq. Primrose Hill, N. W.*
May 24-5, 1889; 1.40 a.m.

ON
THE *ENEYDES* AND THE *ROMAN D'ÉNÉAS*,

BY

DR. SALVERDA DE GRAVE.

THE inquiry naturally arises, 'Did the author of Caxton's original, the French prose *Eneydes*, use any of the numerous Middle-Age versions of the *Aeneid*, or did he work—as he says he did—from Virgil's own poem?' The many changes that the French writer made in Virgil's story—see p. vii—xix above—favour the view that at least some of his alterations were due to former hands, but my searches for these have been hitherto in vain, and I doubt whether any future student will be more fortunate in discovering them, though I hope he may be.

Meantime, among the earlier versions of the *Aeneid* already known to us, the verse *Roman d'Énéas* presents itself in the first place: it is the oldest existing version of Virgil's poem in the vulgar tongue. Being occupied in preparing an edition of this Old-French romance, and having already published the results of my researches on its relations to Virgil,¹ I have been asked by Dr. Furnivall to add to the edition of Caxton's *Eneydos* some observations on the *Roman d'Énéas*, and to see whether any relation exists between it and Caxton's original, or if they are independent of one another. As to the latter question, if there is any connection between them, it is so remote that it is of very slight importance. However, I will say something of the *Roman d'Énéas*, because of the literary interest in comparing how the same matter is treated by a poet of the twelfth century and by one of his prose compatriots of three centuries later.

There is no doubt that the *Roman d'Énéas* (the author of which is unknown) was translated directly from the *Aeneid* of Virgil. The supposition of a school version in prose as the immediate original of

¹ Introduction à une édition critique du *Roman d'Énéas*. La Haye, 1888.

the Old-French romance is inadmissible. The two poems are so entirely alike, not only in the main lines of the narrative, but also in most of the particulars, that there is no need to separate the French romance from the great Latin poem. However, the translation is far from being literal. The various episodes of Aeneas's voyages and wars are to be found in it as well as in Virgil, but the manner in which they are told is completely different. Indeed, the poets and artists of the Middle Ages, instead of treating antiquity with the same respect as we do, try to adapt the adventures of classic heroes to the customs and usages of their own later age; to them the local colour was little; and so they regenerate Aeneas, and turn him into a 'chevalier' surrounded by his 'barons,' who fights in just the same way as the hero of a 'chanson de geste.'

This is the chief reason why the Old-French romances imitated from classical poems preserve such an individual character. Another reason is this, that the Old-French poets don't content themselves with the marvels they find in the original, but add to them still greater prodigies, and overload their translations with the description of marvellous tombs and magnificent costumes, which appear to us puerile, or at least misplaced in a masterpiece of antiquity.

The anonymous translator and converter of the *Aeneid* into the *Roman d'Énéas* is a great friend of such descriptions and interpolations. In my Introduction I have tried to find the sources whence he got the materials for his additions. Certainly not in the glosses of an *Aeneid* manuscript; for in no such manuscript did I find glosses that could be considered as having furnished material to the French writer. I believe, therefore, that he took them here and there, and I have pointed out three sets of sources that helped him: 1. the classic authors (Ovid, and perhaps Lucian and Statius); 2. the 'Bestiaires'—for instance, that of Philippe de Thaün;—3. the 'Chansons de geste.'

The beginning of the 'Roman' is different from the Latin: instead of throwing us *in medias res*, the French poet takes from the Second Book of the *Aeneid* the history of the destruction of Troy, and places it in the front of his translation. It has been said that this change was made in order to couple the *Roman de Troies*, by

Benoit de Sainte-More, with the *Roman d'Énéas*. However, this alteration of the beginning is common to many of the mediæval *Aeneid* translations, and it is probable that they all made that change for the same reason, namely, the irregularity of the proceeding of Virgil in not beginning *ab ovo*, and in presupposing as known to his readers particulars that he has not yet mentioned. The prose *Eneydes* too changes Virgil's beginning. Moreover, it not only consults the Second Book of the *Aeneid*, but it takes from the Third Book the account of Aeneas finding Polydorus's grave. The *Roman d'Énéas*, on the contrary, passes by the whole of Virgil's Third Book.

I will now enumerate the most important additions and changes of the *Roman d'Énéas*:

1. The judgment of Paris. The same episode is related in the Romance of Troy, with some differences.

2. The full description of the palace of Dido.

3. *Aen.* I. 656. Venus takes Ascanius to her, and gives his shape and figure to Cupid, who must excite Dido's love for Aeneas; the *Roman d'Énéas*, on the contrary, says that Venus gives to Ascanius himself the power of inflaming Dido's heart.

4. The priestess of whom Dido speaks to her sister becomes a sorceress.

5. The description of the infernal regions is very different from the Latin.

6. The skill of the tame stag of Tyrus's daughter Silvia.

7. Long description of Camilla.

8. Accounts of the adultery of Venus and Mars: this episode was probably taken from the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid.

9. Turnus, having killed Pallas, takes a ring off his finger.

10. Description of Pallas's tomb.

11. Description of Camilla's tomb.

12. Love of Aeneas and Lavinia. This is undoubtedly the most important addition; the love-scenes and monologues of this episode occupy nearly a sixth part of the whole romance. The addition is important for Old-French literature, because it brings the *Roman d'Énéas* near to Benoit's *Roman de Troies*, in which an analogous episode has been inserted.

These few observations will enable the readers of Caxton's translation to remark the difference between the manner of treating antique matters by the poet of the Old-French romance and that of the author of the prose *Eneydes*. The chief difference is this, that the candour, the spontaneity of the *Roman d'Énéas* have disappeared; this is also the principal reason why the prose *Eneydes* is infinitely less interesting for the history of literature than the Old-French poem.

The influence of the *Roman d'Énéas* on later Virgilian literature has not been so great as might be expected. M. Parodi, in his interesting studies on the Italian translations and versions of the *Aeneid*,¹ after having proved that only one translator used the *Roman d'Énéas*, has given a very probable reason for it, namely, that no translation could rival in popularity the *Aeneid* itself, and that therefore, whosoever occupied himself with the *Aeneid* went direct to the original.

After this digression I return to the question I placed in front of my little essay. I call the attention of the readers of Caxton to a version of the history of Aeneas that has been pointed out by M. Paul Meyer, in Vol. xiv. of the *Romania*, p. 36, &c. This version forms a part of a Treatise on Ancient History,² very popular in the Middle Ages, as is proved by the great number of its manuscripts that M. Meyer speaks of. This version offers an interesting coincidence with the *Eneydes*.

Turnus, after having killed Pallas, takes the belt, richly gilt, belonging to his vanquished enemy, and adorns himself with it (*Aen. X. 495*):

. . . . Et laevo pressit pede talia fatus
 Examinem, rapiens immania pondera baltei
 Impressumque nefas. . . .

In the Twelfth Book of the *Aeneid* (line 941) Aeneas has vanquished Turnus; he takes pity on him, and is near pardoning and

¹ I rifacimenti et le traduzioni Italiane dell' *Encidi* di Virgilio, prima del Rinascimento. *Studi di filologia romanza*.

² It is a history of the World, from the Creation to Rome, but deals chiefly with the history of Troy.

sparing him ; but he sees Pallas's belt on the shoulder of his opposer ; this view excites his rage, and he kills Turnus :

. . . . infelix humero quam adparuit alto
Balteus, et notis fulserunt cingula bullis
Pallantis pueri.

In the *Histoire Ancienne*, instead of the belt, it is the ring of Pallas which Turnus takes from him ; but, in the last episode, it is said that Eneas sees 'the girdle and the ring' of Pallas, worn by Turnus. How to explain this contradiction matters little, but it is remarkable that exactly the same terms are found in the *Eneydes* : on the occasion of Pallas's fight with Turnus, the author of the *Eneydes* mentions the 'ring,' p. 140 below, line 16 ; and in the episode of Aeneas's fight with Turnus he speaks of 'the girdle and the ring,' p. 162 below, l. 15.

Unless we take this coincidence to be fortuitous (which is very unlikely), it can only be explained by accepting a common version from which both the *Histoire Ancienne* and the *Eneydes* descend, or which both knew. Perhaps though the author of the *Eneydes* took the difference above-named from the *Histoire Ancienne* itself. Tracing back higher still, we find in the *Roman d'Énéas* the belt also changed for a ring ; only, in both episodes, the poet speaks only of a ring, and omits the girdle in the second. So we can say that the hypothetical version of the *Aeneid* we accepted for the *Histoire Ancienne* and the *Eneydes* is remotely related to the *Roman d'Énéas*.

As to the *Eneydes*, the only fact we can assert is this : it is possible that its author had before him the Latin poem itself, but he used at the same time a former translation or version of Virgil's work.¹

Paris, May 20th, 1889.

¹ I do not find in the Italian translations, or in the Latin or Italian versions of the *Aeneid* spoken of by M. Parodi, one single particular that indicates a relation of any one of them to the *Eneydes*.

THE ITALIAN PROSE VERSION OF 1476.

THIS little Italian Quarto—*a-m* in 8s, *n* in 6—contains the Italian Translator's *Prologus*¹ giving his reasons for setting forth the book, then a short sketch (9½ lines) of Eneas's person, &c. 'Qui parla la natione ele fatezze de Enea,' and naming 'Virgilio / il cui libro scriuere intendo,' followed by the Prologue of the Greek Athanasius's prose version of the *Aeneid*, which (I suppose) the Italian says he will translate :—

Questo e il prologo dil greco athanagio [a 3]

[C] Onciosiacossa che uirgilio, homo scientatissimo, poeta optimo / di natione mantuano di sangue / Non cossi / come di nobile uirtute Intendesse di compilare / adornare / et a laude de octauiano Augusto, secondo imperadore di Roma, Nepote di Iulio ciesare / E suo figliuolo adoptiuo et herede : Aleuno libro de la uita militare / Cioe de la scienza de le battaglie. Pero che de la due altre uite / le quade furono anzi che humana generationee² Tre generationi di gente furono in roma. Troiani da Enea. Greci da euandro, che fue darchadia. sabinì dale donne che rapite romulo ala festo e per/cusio titio. Constricta per cupidine di potentia cum ferri spandesse sangue humano, cio fu lagiorgica e la buccolica de la uita pastorale / e de la uita agricolturale. Aue astricto, scrisse questo libro de li magnifici facti e felicie opere de Enea, dal qualle il dicto Octauiano disciese. Il quale libro el greco Athanagio, de li greci doctore maiore : homo discreto e litterato, cum molta fatica recho deuersi in prosa. Lascian-done cierta parte senza la quale li parue che questo libro stare suffi-cientemente potesse. Et lui possia ad instantia dicta non molto leuemente di grammatica in lingua uolgare translatee.

¹ On *a* 2, after the heading 'P. Maronis Virgilio Liber Encidos feliciter Incipit.'

² Sign. a 3 back.

Compendium omnium librorum eneidos.

Primus habet lybicum / ueniant ut Troes in urbem.
¹ Edocet excidium Troie : clademque secundus.
 Tertius a Troia uectos cauit equore Teucros. &c. &c.

Then a Compendium of the 1st Book on *a* 4; 4 lines of 'Principium quo usus est Virgilius. sed decisum fuit a Tuca. et Varro.' Then

[*a* 4 bk.]

Sequitur verum principium.

Arma uirumque cano : Troie qui primus ab oris
 Italiam fato profugus [*&c.*, 4 lines]

Quiui incomencia Virgilio, el quale narra le aspere bataglie
 et li facti de Enea.

[**D**Elle aspere bataglie / Io Virgilio in uersi narro / ei facti di
 quello homo il quale fugito prima uenne de le *contrade* di
 troia fatatamente in Italia / et alidi de lauina. Colui fue [*a* 5] molto
 gittato *per terra et per mare*, *per forza de li dei*, *per la concordeuole ira*
 de la crudele Iuno. E molte fatighe in bataglia patie. Infino chelli
 edificoe la citade / e portoe li dei in Italia. Onde disciese il sangue
 latino / e li padri dalbana / e lalta roma. O scienza recha nela mia
 memoria la cagione quale deita fue offesa. e *per che la regina de li dei*
 dolendosi chaccioe lhuomo chiaro *per pietade auolgere tante fortune* /
 et *entrasse in tante fatiche*. oue furon cotante ire neli cielestiali animi.

[*Headings of the Chapters.*]

- (I. 2) Qui nauicando perdi enea una naue per aspera fortuna.
 (I. 3) Come li troiani riuarono nel porto di libia. [*a* 6]
 (I. 4) Risponso che diede Ioue a Venus di facti de Enea. [*a* 6, bk]
 (I. 5) Come Venus aparue ad Enea nela selua. [*a* 7, bk]
 (I. 6) Come Venus narra a Enea la morte de Sicheo. e come dido
 uene a carthagine. [*a* 8]
 (I. 7) Come uenus condusse Enea a cartagine doueli trouo
 icompagni. [*a* 8, bk]

¹ The initials P and E change places in the original.

- (I. 8) Come Ilioneo parlo a Dido. [b 2]
 (I. 9) Come Dido receuete itroiani. [b 2, bk]
 (I. 10) Come Enea se manifesto a Dido. et offerseli richi doni. [b 3]
 (I. 11) Come Dido si inamoro de Enea. [b 4]

.P. Maronis Virgilio Libri Primus Explicit. [b 5]

Incipit Libra Secundus

[F] Vnera Dardonie narrat: fletusque secundo.
 Conticuere omnes: tuuc sic fortissimus heros

and so on to the end, finishing with this last Chapter and Colophon:

[*last Chapter, on n 4*]

Come Enea fue facto signore, e fecie alba, e la sua fine.

[F] Acte queste cosse, rifermato fue Enea signore di tutta la hereditade del Re dapo ala sua fine per lo Re medesimo. Et in laurenza stette Enea asuo uolere. e quando [n 4 bk] alui piaque di partirsi quella parte del regno ellesse che lui uole per lo suo habitare. doue hedificoe la grande Alba, citta nobilissima. Ne la quale regno molti anni. et in quelli tempi alla sua signoria peruenne la terra tutta di Latino / Hauendo elo finita la lunga etade. Si che tutta Italia ala sua ubidienza permanea. Poi dapo la sua magnanimita essendo il suo excellentissimo corpo riceuto de la gran madre regno Ascanio / E poi regnorono apresso di lui li gran magnanimi significati ad enea dal suo padre Anchise nel deliso. Che come a lui disse cossi uenero magnificenti / exaltando piu et piu la infinita / et gloriosa fama de lo eternale Imperio. Et in questo tempo hedificata fue alta Roma / per Romolo / e Remulo, suoi sucieessori. Da cui dapo molti anni disciese il nobile Iulio Ciesaro.

DEO GRATIAS AMEN.

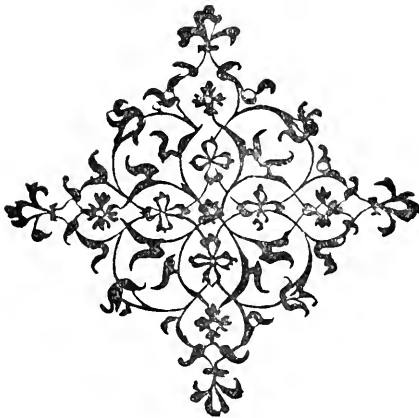
[Then follows the Colophon, and after it two pages of ‘Publii Maronis Virgilio Epitaphia.’]

[*Colophon*: on n. 5]

O uoi periti / et anche uoi non docti / che legiereti o uer ascot-
 areti la nobile opera gia in uerso componuda per lo famosissimo Poeta
 laureato .P. Marone Virgilio Mantuano, ad honore / et laude de
 Octauiano Augusto secundo Imperatore de Romani: et da puoi de
 uerso in lingua uulgare reducta per lo litteratissimo greco Athanagio
 per consolatione de Constantio figuolo de Constantino Imperatore /
 Veramente senza dubio alcuno remaneretì tutti lieti et contenti
 neli animi uostri per la intelligentia de li eccellenti et mirabile facti
 de Enea como ne la presente opera si contiene: non meno quanto
 altra uulgar opera se potesse per consoiatiene legiere et audire:
 La qual e stata impressa ne la famosa cittade de Vicencia. per
 Hermanno Leuilapide da Colonia grande / ne Iano dil Signore
 .M.CCCC.LXXVI. adi Marti .xii. Marcio.

Iam presens opus hoc mille Athanasius annis
 Encadum cecinit: lege dulcia carmina lector.

.P. B. C. O.



[Virgills *Æneids* translated.¹]

[CAXTON'S PROLOGUE.]

* AFTER dyuerse werkes made / translated and
 achieved / hauyng noo werke in hande, I, sitting in
 my studye where as laye many dyuerse paunflettis and
 4 bookys, happened that to my hande came a lytyl
 booke in frenshe, whiche late was translated oute of
 latyn by some noble clerke of fraunce, whiche booke is
 named Eneydos / made in latyn by that noble poete
 8 & grete clerke vrygyle / whiche booke I sawe ouer
 and redde therin, How, after the generall destruceyon
 of the grete Troye, Eneas departed, berynge his olde
 fader anchises vpon his sholdres / his lityl son yolus on
 12 his honde, his wyfe wyth moche other people folow-
 ynge / and how he shypped and departed, wyth alle
 thystorye of his aduentures that he had er he cam to
 the achievement of his conquest of ytalye, as alle a longe
 16 shall be shewed in this present boke. In whiche booke
 I had grete playsyr, by cause of the fayr and honest
 termes & wordes in frenshe / whyche I neuer sawe
 to-fore lyke, ne none so playsaunt ne so wel ordred ;
 20 whiche booke, as me semed, sholde be moche requysyte
 to noble men to see, as wel for the eloquence as the
 historyes / How wel that many honderd yerys passed
 was the sayd booke of eneydos, wyth other werkes,
 24 made and lerned dayly in scolis, specyally in ytalye &
 other places / whiche historye the sayd vrygyle made
 in metre / And whan I had aduysed me in this sayd
 boke, I delybered and concluded to translate it in-to

[* Brit. Mus. C
 21. d. 24. sign.
 A J]

Caxton, having
 got hold of the
 French version
 of the 'Æneid,'

telling *Aeneas's*
 escape from Troy

and his conquest
 of Italy,

was so pleased
 with it

that he resolved
 to translate it
 into English.

¹ This heading is in an 18th century hand.

englysshe, And forthwyth toke a penne & ynke, and wrote a leef or tweyne / whyche I ouersawe agayn to corecte it / And whan I sawe the fayr & straunge termes therin / I doubted that it sholde not please 4
 some gentylmen whiche late blamed me, sayeng *that* in my translacyons I had ouer curyous termes whiche coude not be vnderstande of comyn peple / and desired me to vse olde and homely termes in my translacyons. 8
 and *fayn wolde I satysfye euery man / and so to doo, toke an olde boke and redde therin / and certaynly the englysshe was so rude and brood that I coude not welle vnderstande it. And also my lorde abbot of west- 12
 mynster ded do shewe to me late, certayn euydences wryton in olde englysshe, for to reduce it in-to our englysshe now vsid / And certaynly it was wreton in suche wyse that it was more lyke to dutche than 16
 englysshe; I coude not reduce ne brynge it to be vnderstonden / And certaynly our langage now vsed varyeth ferre from that whiche was vsed and spoken whan I was borne / For we englysshe men / ben borne 20
 vnder the domynacyon of the mone, whiche is neuer stedfaste / but euer wauerynge / wexyng one season / and waneth & dyscreaseth another season / And that comyn englysshe that is spoken in one shyre varyeth 24
 from a nother. In so moche that in my dayes happened that certayn marchau^{tes} were in a shippe in tamyse, for to haue sayled ouer the see into zelande / and for lacke of wynde, thei taryed atte forlond, and 28
 wente to lande for to refreshe them; And one of theym named sheffelde, a mercer, cam in-to an hows and axed for mete; and speccially he axyd after eggys; And the goode wyf answerde, that she corde speke no frenshe. 32
 And the marchau^t was angry, for he also coude speke no frenshe, but wolde haue hadde egges / and she vnderstode hym not / And thenne at laste a nother sayd that he wolde haue eyren / then the good wyf 36
 but couldn't get 'em till they were called Eyren.

Caxton blamed for his over-curious terms.

[* sign. A j, back]

The Abbot of Westminster askt Caxton to turn Old English into Modern,

but he couldn't.

Englishmen are always changing.

One shire's speech differs from another.

Mr. Sheffield askt for Eggs at the Foreland,

but couldn't get 'em till they were called Eyren.

sayd that she vnderstod hym wel / Loo, what sholde
 a man in thyse dayes now wryte, egges or eyren /
 certaynly it is harde to playse every man / by cause of
 4 dyuersite & chaunge of langage. For in these dayes
 every man that is in ony reputacyon in his countre,
 wyth vtter his commynyaeyon and maters in suche
 maners & termes / that fewe men shaH vnderstonde
 8 theym / And som hoⁿest and grete clerkes haue ben
 wyth me, and desired me to wryte the moste curyous
 termes that I coude fynde / And thus bytwene playn
 rude / & curyous, I stande abashed. but in my Iudge-
 12 mente / the comyn termes that be dayli vsed, ben
 lyghter to be vnderstonde than the olde and auneyent
 englysshe / And for as moche as this present booke is
 not for a rude vplondysshe man to labour therin / ne
 16 rede it / but onely for a clerke & a noble gentylman
 that feleth and vnderstondeth in faytes of armes, in
 loue, & in noble chyualrye / Therfor in a meane
 bytwene bothe, I haue reduced & translated this sayd
 20 booke in to our englysshe, not ouer rude ne curyous,
 but in suche termes as shaH be vnderstanden, by goddys
 grace, accordyng to my cople. And yf ony man wyth
 enter-mete in redyng of hit, and fyndeth suche termes
 24 that he can not vnderstande, late hym goo rede and
 lerne vrgyH / or the pystles of ouyde / and ther he
 shaH see and vnderstonde lyghtly aH / Yf he haue a
 good redar & enformer / For this booke is not for
 28 every rude and¹ vnconnyng man to see / but to clerkys
 and very gentylmen that vnderstande gentylnes and
 seyence ¶ Thenne I praye alle theym that shaH rede
 in this lytyl treatys, to holde me for excused for the
 32 translatyng of hit. For I knowleche my selfe ignorant
 of comynge to enpryse on me so hie and noble a
 werke / But I praye mayster Iohn Skelton, late created
 poete laureate in the vnyuersite of oxenfoorde, to ouersee

All men of
 consequence use
 words that few
 others can
 understand.

[¹ sign. A ij]

Caxton endeavours to use
 moderate and
 readable terms.

This book is only
 for clerks and
 gentlemen.

John Skelton
 poet laureate.

¹ orig. dna

Caxton prays
Skelton to
correct his trans-
lation.

[* A ij, back]

Skelton's learn-
ing.

Caxton's
Dedication to
Prince Arthur.

and correcte this sayd booke, And taddresse and
expowne where as shaHe be founde faulte to theym
that shaH requyre it. For hym, I knowe for suffycient
to expowne and englysshe euery dyffyculte that is 4
therin / For he hath late translated the epystlys of
TuHe / and the boke of dyodorus syculus,¹ and diuerse
other werkes oute of latyn in-to englysshe, not in rude
*and olde langage, but in polysshed and ormate termes 8
craftely, as he that hath redde vrgyle / ouyde, tullye,
and all the other noble poetes and oratours / to me
vuknownen : And also he hath redde the ix. muses, and
vnderstande theyr musicaHe seyenees, and to whom of 12
theym eche seyence is appropred. I suppose he hath
dronken of Elycons weH. Then I praye hym, & suche
other, to correcte, adde or mynysshe where as he or
they shaH fynde faulte / For I haue but folowed my 16
cotype in frenshe as nygh as me is possyble / And yf
ony worde be sayd therin weH / I am glad ; and yf
otherwyse, I submytte my sayd boke to theyr corre-
ctyon / Whiche boke I presente vnto the hye born my 20
tocomyng natureH & souerayn lord, Arthur, by the
grace of god, Prynce of Walys, Duc of CornewayH, &
Erle of Chester, fyrst bygoten sone and heyer vnto our
most dradde naturaH & souerayn lorde, & most crysten 24
kyng / Henry the vij. by the grace of god, kyng of
Englonde and of Fraunce, & lord of Irelande / bysech-
ing his noble grace to receyue it in thanke of me, his
moste humble subget & seruauant / And I shaH praye 28
vnto almyghty god for his prosperous encreasyng in
vertue / wysedom / and humanyte, that he may be egal
wyth the most renommed of atte his noble progeny-
tours ¶ And so to lyue in this present lyf / that after 32
this transitorye lyfe he and we atte may come to
euerlastyng lyf in heuen / Amen :

¹ The MS. of this translation is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. It has long been copied for the Early English Text Society, but still needs an Editor.—F.

[TABLE OF CONTENTS.]

* ¶ Here foloweth the table of this present booke [*leaf A 3]

- How the ryche kynge Pryamus edifyed the grete cyte of troye. *capitolo* primo [p. 10]
- How the cyte was crueHy sette a fyre & flamme / And how Eneas, armed, bare his fader oute of the same cyte. *capº.* ij [p. 14]
- How Eneas sacryfyced to his goddys in the place where Polydorus had be slayn. *capº.* iijº. [p. 17]
- How Eneas, in makynge the forsayd sacryfyce, hewe y^e tronke of a tree, oute of the whiche yssued bloode. And how polydorus declared the sygnifycacyon of the sayd miracle, and the wyHe of the goddys. *capitolo* iiijº. [p. 17]
- Thobsequyes of Polydorus. *capº.* vº. [p. 21]
- Here begynneth the historye how dydo departed from her country. *capº.* vjº. [p. 22]
- How dydo arryued¹ in Lybye, a strange contrey, & bought as moche lande or grounde as she myght conteyne wyth y^e space of an hide of an oxe / in whiche she buylded and edefyed the cyte of Cartage / *caº.* vijº. [p. 30]
- How a kynge, neyghbour to Cartage, dyd demaunde to wif the fayr dydo / quene of Cartage. y^e whiche, for the loue of her late husbonde, had leuer to slee her selfe than to take the sayd kynge. *capº.* viijº. [p. 33]
- A comendacyon to dydo. *capº.* ixº. [p. 36]
- How Iuno, for tempesse thoost of eneas whiche wold goo into ytalye, prayd y^e goddes of wyndis / that

¹ *orig.* arryued

euerych bi him selfe sholde make concussyon & torment in thayer. ca.	x. [p. 39]
How dydo counseled wyth her suster Anne. cap ^o	xj ^o . [p. 41]
Thansuers of anne to hir suster dydo. ca.	xij ^o . [p. 43]
How Eneas, after grete fortunes of the see, arryued in cartage. And how dydo, for his swete behauoir & fayr spekyng, was esprysed of his loue. capytulo	xiiij [p. 46]
* How the goddes accorded the maryage of Eneas to dydo. capitulo	xiiij [p. 49]
Of the gret tempest & storme at maryage of theym. ca.	xv ^o . [p. 52]
How yarbas complayned hym to Iubyter, of Eneas, that edyfied the cyte of Cartage / And how Iubyter sent sodaynly Mercurys toward Eneas, for to make hym to retorne in-to the contree of ytalye. cap ^o .	xvj [p. 60]
How dydo, knowynge the departyng of Eneas, ranne thorough the cyte of Cartage, as a woman dysperate and from her selfe. capitulo	[x]vij ^o . [p. 65]
How dydo sorowfully bewayled the departyng of Eneas, bi swete & amyable wordes. ca.	xviii [p. 66]
How dydo, aft in a rage, complayned her to Eneas and to the goddys. ca.	xix ^o . [p. 69]
How dido, wyth grete cursynges, gaaf leue to Eneas. capytulo	xx ^o . [p. 72]
How dydo fyl down in a swone / and how she was borne away by her wymen / and also how dyligently the nauye of Eneas was made redy for to goo in to ytalye. ca.	xxj [p. 73]
How Eneas brake the ooken tree of the grete loue of dydo. capytulo	xxij ^o . [p. 77]
Of the wordes of dydo to her suster Anne. ca.	xxiiij ^o . [p. 84]
How dydo, in grete bewaylynges, prayd her suster to make a grete fyre in a place most secrete in her	

[* leaf A 3, back]

- palays, for to brein y^e harnoys and raymentes of
eneas / and how by dyuerse sortes she supposed to
haue destroyed hym. ca. xxiiiij [p. 86]
- How dydo made her lamentacyons repreuyng the
periurement of laomedon. ca / xxv [p. 90]
- of y^e vysion *that* eneas had for to depart towarde
ytalye. *capitulo*. xxvj [p. 92]
- How Eneas encyted the patrons & maystres of his
shyppes / for to departe. cap^o. xxvij^o. [p. 95]
- * How dydo, full of grete rage, & dyspoureyd of
wytte, slewe hirselfe wyth the swerde of Eneas /
& how be it *that* to-fore is made mencyon of this
occysion, It was no thyng but for to shewe the
dyuercyte of fortune / And here thexecusion of the
dede is shewed. *capitulo* xxviiij [p. 105]
- Of the beaute of dydo. *capitulo* xxix [p. 111]
- How Eneas sayled / and how by tempest he aryued in
Secyle. *capitulo* / xxx^o. [p. 114]
- How eneas toke y^e see for to seke y^e regyon of ytalye.
ca. xxx[j] [p. 115]
- How kynge Egeus lete falle hym selfe in-to the see for
the deth of his sone Theseus. cap^o. xxxij [p. 119]
- How Eneas aryued in ytalye / ca. xxxiiij [p. 120]
- Here it is shewed how many kynges had ben in
ytalye, to-fore that Eneas came thyder fyrste. ca^o.
xxxiiiij [p. 121]
- How Eneas byganne to bylde his fortresse vpon
the ryuer¹ of tonyre. *capitulo* xxxv [p. 122]
- How Eneas sente his messagers towarde kynge latyne.
capitulo xxxvj [p. 123]
- How kyng latynus made grete Ioye and good chere to
the messagers of Eneas. *capitulo* xxxvij [p. 125]
- how kyng latyn sent certayn *presentis* to eneas. ca.
xxxviii [p. 126]

¹ *orig.* thyre-uer

- How Turnus sente for his folke, for to chace and dryue
Eneas oute of his lande. cap^o xxxix^o. [p. 129]
- How Eneas wente to seke socours of the kynge
Euander / cap^o. xli^o. [p. 130]
- How grete a sorowe was made whan Eneas and Palas
departed from palence. cap^o. xli^o. [p. 131]
- How Turnus com tofore the casteH of Eneas for to
assaulte hym / cap^o. xliij^o. [p. 132]
- How Vysus and Eryalus made theym redy to entre
vpon the hoost of Turnus / cap^o. xliij^o. [p. 133]
- [* leaf A 4, back] How Vysus and Eryalus entred into the tentis of
Turⁿus hooste, and made grete slaughter and de-
struceyon : capitulo xliij^o. [p. 134]
- How the two felawes loste eche other in the forest /
whan the knyghtes of laurence chased theym /
cap^o. xlv^o. [p. 135]
- How bolcus slewe Eryalus / & how Vysus his felaw
slewe boleus. Of the deth of the sayd Visus / And
how the hedes of the sayd two felawys, Eryalus and
Vysus, were broughte vpon two speres a-fore the
fortresse of Eneas : capitulo. xlvj^o. [p. 136]
- How thassaulte was grete atte gate of the castel. ca^o.
xlviij^o. [p. 138]
- How Eneas cam ayen from palence wyth moche folke
for to socoure his sone & his peple ayenst Turnus.
ca. xlvij [p. 139]
- How Eneas fought Turnus aHe aboute the batayHe, for
to slee hym for the deth of palas. cap^o. xlix^o. [p. 140]
- How Eneas smote Merencyus wyth his spere in his thie
a grete strooke. cap^o. L^o. [p. 142]
- How Merencyus made grete sorowe whan he sawe his
sone deed. cap^o. lij^o. [p. 143]
- How Eneas sente the body of Palas in-to the shippe,
and sente it to his fader. cap^o. lij^o. [p. 145]
- Of the messagers that Turnus had sent to diomedes.
ca. liij [p. 146]

How kyng latyn counseled for to make peas wyth Eneas. cap ^o .	liij [p. 148]
How Eneas cam to-fore the cyte of laurence. ca	lv ^o . [p. 150]
How the quene Camula was slayn in y ^e bataylle. ca.	lvj [p. 152]
How Turnus cam to y ^e felde, & his folke wyth hym. ca.	lvij ^o . [p. 153]
How the Conenaunt of the batayll was made bytwene Eneas & Turnus. cap ^o .	lvij ^o . [p. 155]
How Tholomeus made the bataylle to bygynne ayen, grete & horryble. cap ^o .	lix ^o . [p. 157]
How Turnus dyd grete damage to enecas folke. ca.	lx ^o . [p. 158]
* How the quene Amatha hanged her selfe by despera- cion. capitulo	lxj ^o . [p. 160]
How Eneas and Turnus fought, body ayenste body, in a felde, one ayenste that other. capitulo	lxij ^o . [p. 161]
How Eneas wedded Lauyne / And hadde the royalme of ytalye. capitulo	lxij ^o . [p. 162]
How kyng Latyne deceassed / And Eneas soone after hym / And how Ascanius was callyd Iulyus: capitulo	lxiiij ^o . [p. 163]
How Ascaunis helde the royalme of ytalye after the deth of Eneas his fader. capitulo	lxv ^o . [p. 164]

[* sign. A iij.]

Explicit

[FRENCH TRANSLATOR'S PROLOGUE.]

[* sign. B.ij]

TO the honour of god almyghty / and to the
 glorious vyrgyne Marye, moder of aHe grace /
 and to the vtylyte & prouffyt of aH the
 policye mondayne, this present booke, com- 4
 pyled by virgyle, ryght subtyl and Ingenyous oratour
 & poete / Intytuled Eneydos, hath be translated oute
 of latyn in-to comyn langage / In whiche may aHe
 valyaunt prynces and other nobles see many valorous 8
 fayttes of armes. And also this present boke is neces-
 sarye to aHe cytezens & habytaunts in townes and
 casteHis / for they shal see, How somtyme troye the
 graunte / and many other places stronge and inex- 12
 pugnable,¹ haue ben be-sieged sharpely & assayled,
 And also coragyously and valyauntly defended / and
 the sayd boke is atte this present tyme moche neces-
 sarye / for to enstructe smale and grete, for euerych 16
 in his ryght / to kepe & defende / For a thyng more
 noble is to dye / than vylanously to be subdued /

Prologue of
the French
Translator.

¶ How the ryght puyssant kynge pryamus
 edyfied the grete cyte of Troye 20

Capitulum primum.

FOr to here / opene / and declare the matere of
 whiche here-after shaH-be made mencyon / It
 behoueth to presuppose that Troye, the grete 24
 capytaH cyte / and thexcellentest of aHe the cytees of
 the counre & regyon of Asye, was constructe and

Troy, the finest
city of Asia.¹ orig. inexpugnable

edefyed by the ryght puyssaunt & renommed kyng Pryamus, sone of laomedon, descended of thanneyen stocke of Dardanns¹ by many degrees / whiche was
 4 sone of Iubyter & of Electra his wyf, after the fycions² poetyque / And the fyrste orygynaH begynnynge of the genealogye of kynges. And the sayd Troye was enuyronned³ in fourme of siege / and of excidyon, by
 8 Agamenon, kyng in grece, brother of menelaus / whiche was husbonde to helayne. *The whiche agamenon, assembled and accompanied wyth many kynges, dukes / erles / and grete quantyte of other princes & grekes
 12 innumerable, hadde the magystracyon and vnyuersaH governaunce of aHe thexcersite and hoost to-fore Troye :

16 **D**Vryng the sayd siege / Pryame habounded in lygnage of one & other sexe so renommed of beaulte, wysedome, and prudomnye / seyence, prowesse, valyaunce, propheeye / and other vertuous propriytes / that aHe the worlde coude not nough
 20 meruayHe / How god and fortune hadde emprysed to endowe a mortal man wyth dowayres so hye & vertuous / But the prudence of pryame, knowyng to-fore / that the aduenements and aduersitees of warre be
 24 doubtfuls, and vnder the honde of fortune / the whiche, after his mutabylite, gyueth victorye / To that one increacynge honour, glorye / tryumphe / and gladnesse / And to that other she gyueth to be subgette to the
 28 face of the ryght blody swerde, in grete effusion of blood & dymunycion of prowesse and of theyr genealogye the mutable captyunte of theyr prosperyte & aduersite or euyl fortune :

32 **P**Ryame thenne wyH teshewe & helpe for thynges doubtfuls for to come, to that ende that his Royalme shaft not departe oute of his honde ne fro his blood / Yf it so happened that he and his

CAP. I.
 Descent of Priam from Jupiter.
 Troy, the chief city of Asia, was founded by Priam, and besieged by the Greeks under Agamemnon.

[* B j, back]

Priam's large family.

Priam's prudence.

¹ ? for Dardanus ² orig. fycious ³ orig. enuyronned

CAP. I.

Priam's son
Polydore sent
away, during the
siege.

Departure of
Polydore.

chylidren were ouerthrowen fro his name by force of swerde or of the siege, Firste he dyd do departe one of his sones named polydorus, the xiiij sone, & fyrste of his name, In hopynge that to hym / his name & 4 vengeance, yf it were nede, sholde be kept.

Polidorus thenne was sente wyth a grete multytude of noble companye, full of yougthe & of stronge corage, wyth rychesse ynough of golde and of syluer / 8 money / tresour *and Iewellis / vnto a kynge named plasmator, kynge of tarce / whiche, enduring the good fortune, shewed hym right socourable to the sayd kynge pryame / In offerynge hym selfe to socoure hym 12 yf he had nede in aHe poyntes, in whiche the sayd pryame wolde require hym. But the prosperous fortune of the kynge pryam tord in-to aduerse. The sayd plasmator chaungyng his wyHe / and aHe thamyte 16 whiche longe tyme hadde endured, & promysed to holde to the sayd kynge Pryame, as ye shaH here after.

Now thenne plasmator receyued Polidorus so magnyfycatly, & wyth soo grete honoure, that by 20 wrytyng it maye not be recyted, ne the thyng descryued / And after whan Pryam was subdued, and putte vnder the sharpe domynacyon of the grekes, In somoche that they had slayne thenne some of the sones 24 of the sayd pryame, and many kynes to hym alyed / And that into the cyte many were wyth-drawen for to gyue to the sayd pryam ayde & comforte, and the sayd troians myserable semed better to lose, and indygent 28 of force, than to haue apparence of vycoryus glorie. And thys comen to the knowleche of plasmator, thoughte in his mynde, and conspyred the deth of the sayd polydorus / And in fayte, the sayd plasmator 32 broughte the sayd polydorus vpon the Rynage of the see, which was sondy / and a place secrete ynough fro the syghte of men / in whiche place the sayd plasmator slewe polydorus wyth a darte whiche he bare. The 36

[* sign. B ij]

He goes to King
Plasmator of
Tarce.

On the decline of
the affairs of
Troy, Plasmator
murders Poly-
dore, and buries
him in the sand
by the seashore.

whiche, so traytoursly slayn, was by the sayd plasmator
 buryed in the same place wythin the sonde. ¶ Vpon
 whom was so moche sonde layde / that vpon poly-
 4 dorus semed to be a lityl hiHe or montyele / And
 aHe this was doon by the sayd plasmator, to thende
 that his rychesse, whiche was brought to hym for the
 gouernaunce of y^e said polydorus / sholde *abyde wyth
 8 hym for to accomplyshe his auaryee Insacyable. And
 syth he sawe that the force and strengthe of the
 troyians was thenne soo perturbed by the pryckynge
 of fortune, that it semed to hym / that for the cause of
 12 this excessyue occysion / lityl damage and hurte myght
 come to hym :

But thenne, whan the noble cyte of Asye was
 broyHed and brente by the subtyl accyon of the
 16 fyre putte in-to it by the grekes, In so grete largenesse,
 that for the thicke tenebrosite of the blacke smoke
 whych the place hadde embraced and yssued oute, The
 sterres of the heuen hadde wythholden theyr clere
 20 illustracyons, And had no faculte ne power by theyr
 naturel lyghte to enlumyne the sayd place / And
 that none eye of ony persone coude perceyue ony
 thyng / but aHe onely by the *domageous* clereness
 24 of the fyre deuourynge the pompe of Troye. ¶ Now
 was that pyetous cyte / sontyme example in aHe
 goode vertues aboute aHe other cytees of the worlde,
 aHe brent, and putte in desolacyon suffretous / Abydyng
 28 onely one of the yates of the same town, named in theyr
 langage the yate stex, whiche was made soe maysterly /
 that the Ingenyous subtylte of maistres of masonrye
 carpentrye / that of all y^e countreye of Asie it passed
 32 aHe other in efforte and strengthe ¶ It was made of
 soo hye and exceHente ourage :

CAP. I.

Plasmator takes
Polydore's gold.

[* B ij, back]

Troy burnt by
the Greeks.One gate alone
remains un-
destroyed.

CAP. II.

¶ How the cyte was crueHy sette a fyre,
and on a flamm ; And how Eneas, armed,
bare his fader oute of the same cyte.

¶ capitulo. ij.º 4

BY the same yate stex, thenne sette in fyre and
flamme, And smokyng the totaH desolacyon
of the sayd plase of Troye, lyke as the goddes
and fortune hadde enterprysed to destroye soo arty- 8
fyeyaH a werke vnto the laste stone and foundemente
of so hye a place / * And by horryble and cruel
indygnacyon to throwe down / destroye, and confounde
the pompeuse and proude noblenes of thynhabytants 12
of Troye / and also theyr possessyons and hauoyr,
cyuyles and other / And vnder the tenebres and
derkenes, departed Eneas, armed clerly at aH pieces
in the faeyon of a cote armour vpon his harnoys / 16
The despoyle of a ryght horryble and moche cruel
lyon, Whiche the said Eneas hadde kyHed and slayne.
And the sayd eneas bare vpon his sholdres his fader
Anchises / the whiche thenne, by olde age and lyuyng 20
many yeres, his bloode was wexen colde soo moche,
that he myghte not walke ne helpe him selfe by
moeuyng / And thus Anchises, trussed vpon the
sholdres of his sone eneas, helde a coffre weH rychely 24
adournd wyth many precyous stones in faeyon and
manere of a shryne, In the whiche were the goddes of
Troye, and grete and dinerce relykes / whiche were the
thynges / In whiche the fanylye of Troye / the people 28
and comynalte of Asie, hadde fixed theyr socoures /
and thalegement of theyr angnysshous heynnesses.
¶ And Eneas, thus charged wyth his fader whome he
bare wyth magnanymyte of courage, as sayd is / 32
broughte his sone yolus by the ryght honde / beyng
of the age of xij yere, soo fayr and so weHe com-
posed, that it maye leefully be sayd that nature

[* sign. B iij]

Flight of Aeneas,
his wife Creusa,
his son Yolus,
and others, from
Troy ;

Aeneas carrying
his father,
Anchises, who

bore the gods of
Troy.

The beauty of
Yolus.

hadde doon her deuoyr, and helpen to the procreacyon
of such a fygure for a patrone of mankynde. CAP. II.

¶ What shaH I saye more of Anchises and yolus, lyke
4 as sayd is / ensiewed creusa his wyf, vneuryously
aourned / Nothyng appertenaunt to thestate Royah / Distress of
Creusa.
hir vysage mate by frequente sources of grete teeris /
And hir heyr, whiche by manuel artyfyees hadde
8 dyligently be enryched, lete theym hangynge in-
dyfferently and aHe rufflyd on aHe partyes, wythout ony
hope of amedemente / It sholde be an *harde thyng [* B ij, back]
to many one, to putte in forgetyng her swete firste
12 lyf, and now her deploracyon / It is a grenous thyng
to me to passe ouer so lyghtly the lamentable circum-
staunces of her sorowful heynesses in soo fewe
wordis / Now here after we shaH saye consequently
16 that / that comynalte, and confusion of people aHe
bywepte / noble / vnnoble people, men, wynnen and
children fleeynge, ensiwed Eneas, soo berynge his fader
as sayd ys. It were a thyng inhumayne to beholde
20 theym wythoute pyte / but yet more pyetous to teHe it
lyke as it was doon in dede / This companye vnhappy
yssued oute of a ryght goode and habundaunte place
of aH thynges concupyssible to thappetyte of theyr
24 desire / And so moche incertayne, after this dolourous
exeyle, in what regyon myghte happen the ende of
theyr maleurouse and vnhappy destynces.

THis noble companye troian, somtyme in reste / and
28 now vacabonde and fugytyf by the feeldes dar-
danike, came and aryued in a porte of the see named
simois / and there, ryght penyf, entred into the see,
and by troblous reuolucyons of the vnades or waves
32 were broughte into the Ile of Anchandron, and passed
thorough the foreste of yde, whiche is in the sayd countrey
of troye / And here we shaH finysshie to speke of the
sorowful and telyous fleynge of the poure meschaunte
36 and myserable troians / whiche hyder-to hadde folowed

A crowd of
wretched Trojans
follows Aeneas.

Reflections on
their ill-fortune.

Aeneas and his
company sail
from the Simois.

CAP. II.

They arrive in
Thrace, at the

Eneas / Eneas, by force of oores, and of the wavcs of
the see / arryued in the Royalme and countrey of
Trace / lyke as the power of wynde, after the dysposi-
eyon of his destenye, In-to the said place hadde broughte 4
hym.

place where
Polydore had
been murdered,

[* sign. B iij]

and begin to
build a city.

In the whiche place of Trace, Polydorus hadde be
vylaynously slayn by Plasmator, kynge of the same
Regyon of Trace. ¶ In this countrey of Trace, Eneas, 8
whiche hadde *grete tresours of the rychesse of Troye /
beganne to edyfy a cyte named Eneade, takynge it of
his name. Neuertheles, by cause that Eneas sawe the
cyte by him bygonne, come not by the dyligence and 12
operacyon of the werkemen to his perfeccyon / And
that the sayd operacyon and dyffycyle werke myghte
not in so shorte space of tyme to come to suche auause-
mente and perfectyon / wythoute the dyligence, fauour / 16
and goode wyHe of his goddys / the whiche, though
they hadde ben horryble and cruel, and wythoute pyte
to the troians to-fore the confusion and vter dystruc-
tyon of theyr noble and honorable cyte / Neverthelesse, 20
in this caas partyculer, they shewde theym selfe fauour-
able ynough / And entendynge to gyue comforte, ayde
and counseyl, to thendementes and engynes of the
werkmen, whiche the cyte Eneyde bylded and edifyed, 24
And therfor wolde and dysposed Eneas to halowe a
daye prefxed in makynge sacrifices to his goddis /
after the solempnyte in suche a caas by the troians
accustumed. And he hym selfe, as prynee and example 28
of his people slewe a white buHe as crystall, to-fore the
face of his goddys / And of the bloode that yssued
of the same, wyth herte deuoute bysprange¹ ryghte
humbly, and by grete loue and ardour of dylection, the 32
hostel vpon the whiche the goddis were sette :

It progresses
slowly,so they hold a
feast and sacri-
flee.¹ orig. besprinkled

¶ How Eneas sacryfied to his goddis in the place where Polydorus had be slayn :

CAP. III.

Capitulo. iij^o.

4 **N**Ow, peraventure, it happened that Eneas made the celebracyon of the sacrifice to-fore sayd, in the selfe place / where as Polydorus hadde be slayne and buryed in the sande / by the see syde, By the in-
 8 humanyte and wyckednesse of Plasmator / In whiche place there hadde be accumyled, or heped, of sonde a lytyl hyHe or mountyele / vpon whiche * by the space of tyme / aboute eyghte or ix. yere, were yssued oute of
 12 the erthe smaHe busshes or lytyH trees, by humyditie and hete, depely enroted in the erthe, and vpon the lytyl hylle growen on heyghte, the whiche trees were named in frenshe murtyHers cornyHers. And on the
 16 side of the hiHe was an hye plotte, so nyghe that it shadowed by grete space the place where as was made the sayd sacryfye : Thoo trees apperceyued by Eneas came thider in entencyon to cutte and hewe down some
 20 of the bowes and braunches, for to apparayHe / and make fayr the place of his sacrefyee / Lyke as we englysshe men doo whan we halowe ony solempnyte in the tyme of somer / In strowynge wyth herbes, and settinge vp
 24 of grene trees and bowes, in the chirches and chappeHis for to refresshe the people there assembled, by cause of the fest & solempnyte there to be halowed

The sacrifice was held on the spot where Polydore was buried.

[* B iij, back]

Aeneas goes to cut boughs to ornament his altar.

Part Caxton : see p. 189, col. 2.

The English custom of setting up trees and boughs in churches in summer.

¶ How Eneas, in makynge the forsayd sacrifice, hewe the troncke of a tree / oute of the whiche yssued bloode : And how Polidorus declared the sygnifycaeyon and the maner of the sayd myracle, and the wythe of the goddys. Capitulom iij

CAP. IV.

ENecas thenne, by ardeur of grete deuocyon, and for affection that he hadde humbly to halowe this festynyte, as sayd is / toke an axe cuttyng on bothe sides, And as I suppose, it was after the facion of a 4
 glayue or guysarme / wyth whiche he hewe and smote down wyth grete myghte those trees, for to arraye and make fayr the sayd aulter. The whiche trees, soo cutte and entamed by the sayd Eneas, yssued oute in an 8
 habondaunte cours a source of blacke bloode droppynge down to the erthe / And on the same axe, in manere of grete droppes of bloode ; by whiche * shewynge, Eneas was gretly abasshed and dredefull, merueyHyng what 12
 thyng that myghte sygnifye. And for to haue knowleche of this myracle and of alle the faytte therof, The sayd Eneas knelyd down on bothe his knees, bi grete humylyacyon of herte and¹ deuoute affectyon, his 16
 hondes Ioyned, to-fore the sayd aulter, in makynge requeste vnto the troian goddys and to the goddys of the forestes, that they, by theyr diuine and ineffable inspyracyon, wolde gyue to hym knowleche of this 20
 materyaHe vysion / The whiche prayer ended, and wythoute hauynge ansuer of the goddys troians by hym adoured and eadid on / After, by courage more haultayn, wythoute ony proude thoughte / purposed in 24
 hym selfe to arache or plucke vp a gretter tree whiche was there, whiche empesshed and letted hym / by force, vygour / and naturaHe myghte, wythoute socoure of ony instrumente artificyaHe. And for to demeauue this to 28
 effecte / Eneas sette thenne one knee vpon the sonde, and that other ayenste the branche growen and comen oute of the lytyH hylle where as was buryed Polydorus / And on that other side he toke the braunches of the 32
 sayd tree, and by grete myghte and bodyli strengthe / enforced his pyssaunce for to arache and plucke vp the same tree. Duryng the whiche efforte, was heide

Blood issuing from trees as he cuts them

[* leaf B 5] alarms Aeneas.

He prays for explanation, but receives no answer,

so endeavours to pull one tree up by the roots.

¹ orig. aud

a voys feble, as of a persone aHe sorowfuHe and by-
 wepte / and nyghe aHe fayHed and deed. The whiche
 sayd, "alas, Eneecas ! this is but lytyll prowesse to the,
 4 to prone and excersice thy robuste puyssaunce ayenste
 a body pryued frome his lyf / or vpon a deed corps to
 take vengeaunce soo Inntyle / And by cause, my ryghte
 dere brother and my goode frende, I, very sorowfuH
 8 whiche so moche haue loued the whan the lyf was in
 me, and that the naturel hete of blood humayn com-
 forte my membris, & made *theym vegytalle wyth
 12 whom thou seruest / & whom thou now in *profoude*
 deuocyon hast requyred, that thou cease to trauayHe
 and pursiwe me deed : For herof I make the certayn /
 that I am Polydorus, sone of Pryame, kyng of Troye,
 16 he lyuinge / whiche haue ben by cruel deth and trayson,
 hidde & couerde vnder holy amyte, putte oute of this
 worlde by plasmator, kyng of this countree and
 Regyon / For the aueryce Insacyable whiche was in
 20 hym, And that had hardynesse to commyse and doo
 this cryme soo moche deffamed, and fuH of so exceccrable
 cruelte arrettyd / O cursid and false deceyuable auaryce /
 whiche blyndeth the voluntees humayn / and maketh
 24 by his subtyl arte the ryche men suffretous and poure ;
 and fether for to gete rychesse, to commyse cryme and
 homyside by dampnable treason / And I, Polydorus,¹
 fethermore shewe and manyfeste to the / that the
 28 haboundaunce of bloode whiche thou haste seen yssue
 oute of the trees / which woldeste haue entte and
 plucked vp / is not orygynally of thyse trees / but the
 sayd trees haue taken theyr foundemente and firste
 32 begynnynge of theyr rote in my body ; and by that
 moyen is the sayd bloode largely comen, and hath
 aroused the erthe, and yssued oute of my body, and
 nowher eHis / And for this cause I the exhorte and

CAP. IV.

Polydorus then
 speaks from his
 grave.

[* B 5, back]

Tells them who
 he is,

and that the
 blood from the
 trees is his.

¹ orig. Polydorus

CAP. IV.

Polydore
reminds Aeneas
of his marriage
with his sister,

counceyHe / that thou ne defoyHe nomore thyn hondes
wyth my bloode. And holde it by cause of my suster
crusa, the whiche was gyuen to the for wyf, of my
parentis and frendes, in maryage / 4

[* leaf B 6]

and tells him he
must not stay
there, but that
he was destined
by the gods to go
to Italy.

ANd by cause that thou, Eneas, haste bygonne to
edyfye and bylde a newe cytee in this Royalme
of Trace, in the perfection of the same thou procedyng,
hast now, vpon y^e grete materyaH foundements, made 8
basteHes of werke & ouerage maynyfyke : but y^e wyH
of the goddis haue ordeyned *and concluded by a
counseyl emonge theym selfe, that this lande shaH not
receyue ne socoure the / But shaHe be chased and 12
fugytyf fro Troye / but bi the sentence irreuocable of
theym / is destenyed to the / the swete cuntry of
ytalye, ful of fruytes / for there to be releued, And to
comforte myserable heuynesse whiche thou haste longe 16
suffred, by cause of thyne exyle / Soo departe thou
thenne fro this loude, maclate, and full of fylthe and
ordure, by the bloody faytte vpon me doon by the false
and cruel Plasmator, kynge of thys Regyon / And goo 20
thou in-to the cuntry whiche is ordeyned for the and
thyne, by the prouidence, benyuolence, and prouysion
of the goddis.”

Aeneas is struck
dumb with
astonishment.

SO moche Polydorus hadde opened and declared 24
to Eneas the secrete of his vysions / that eneas
was surprysed wyth drede Inestymable, aHe in a
traunce, And soo abode a longe tyme ynough, lyke a
corps wythoute entendement / And wythoute party- 28
cypacyon of sensityf moenyng. And for tymorsite,
and thyng not acustumed, merneyllous & Insolute,
as sayd is, his tonge abode & clyued to the palate
of his mouth in suche manere / that duryng the 32
langorous tyme that polidorus tolde this vysion
myserable, It was inpossyble to hym to excereyse
thoffyce of his tongue to hym destynat by nature /
neuertheles, after that nature hadde stablysshed his 36

wytte and spyritte, and giuen to eche of theym
 faculte & power to excersice theyr offyce and wordes /
 The sayd Eneas ordeyned that the cause¹ of Polydorus,
 4 yssued of his bloode and genealogye, sholde be restored
 and halowed honours funeraHe / And to his goddis
 make sacryfyces apperteynyng for to gete the grace
 of them / that they might rendre theym selfe
 8 benygne, merciful / debonayr / and propyee vnto the
 helthe of polydorus

CAP. IV.

[¹ for corpse]On recovering
Aeneas resolves
to perform
funeral rites to
Polydore.

* ¶ Thobsequyes of Polidorus.

[* B 6, back]

Capitulum V.

12 **F**OR the obsiquyes funeraH of Polydorus to bryng
 to effecte, so was the aulter establysshed for to
 halowe the sacryfyce / And therupon putte & sette
 the goddes of troye / which were of colour sangueyn
 16 & reed; and eneas, & his felaushyppe chosen by hym
 for to make and exhibete the sayd sacrefyee, weren
 aHe generallly symple, & enuyronned wyth bendes
 of his whiche enuyronned vnder the throte, mountyng
 20 vppe to the temples bytwene their frontes & eres, vnto
 the toppe of the heed / And vpon theyr hedes they
 had chapelettis of braunches of cypresse, whiche grewe
 nygh the montycle or lityl hyHe where as Polydorus
 24 was buryed / whiche is a tree sacred and ordeyned
 to the ende that, by the vehemente odour and swete
 smette of the same tree, maye surmounte the infecte
 odour of the caroynes of the dede bodyes / And the
 28 wymmen of Troye whiche had folowed Eneas whan
 he departed fro troye, were tofore the sayd aulter with
 oute apparayH, ne wythoute retchyng ought by them
 selfe in ony wyse. For the sayd wymmen were aHe
 32 dyssheuelled, or bare the heed, makyng meruelogus
 synacles, as theyr custume was in that tyme in that
 countre also, and semed better, wymmen oute of theyr
 wyttes, than porueyd of countenaunce or constauce.

CAP. V.

Aeneas sacrifices
in honour of
Polydore.Costume of the
sacrificers.

CAP. V.

The cymphs or
buckets used in
sacrifice.

For y^e *consommacion* of the said sacrifice, eneaſ ordeyned to take many cymphes, *that* ben vessels ordeyned for to make ſuche sacrifice, & ben in maner of lityl bokettis, or lytyl ſhippes, of a ſtrange ſtone, & 4 of dyuerſe colours / as iaſpre, porphire / of whiche ſome were full of blood of beſtis ſacrefyed, & other full of mylke clere & clene / the whiche veſſellis, in habundaunce of deuocion, they cam about y^e ſayd 8 montyele or lityl hiſſ of polidorus / in recomendyng y^e ſayd polidorus to * the debonnayr clemence and mercyful iuſtyce of the goddis.

[* leaf B 7]

Thenne Eneas and aſſ his ſequele made theym 12 reſy for to accompliſſhe & leue the ſayd countrey of Traſe, by the admonement of the ſayd Polydorus, ſone of pryame, kynge of Troye / mounted vpon the ſee. And was there long and many¹ dayes / 16 Soo thenne we ſhaſſ leue to ſpeke of Eneas / And ſhaſſe retorne to ſpeke of dydo / And fiſte to ſhewe the dyfference of Iohn bochace and of vyrgyle, to putte in bryef the faſſe of the ſayd dydo recounted 20 by bochace / and after by the ſayd virgyle.

Aeneas and his
companions go to
ſea.

Dido.

Difference between
Virgil's
and Boecaccio's
account of her.

¶ Here bigynneth thiſtorye, how dydo departed from y^e countrey. ¶ ca . . vj^o

CAP. VI.

That other daye, in paſſyng tyme, I redde the faſſ 24 of noblys / of who m^lhoñ bochace hath ſpoken, & in bryef, y^e aduentures of fortune harde & dyuerſly execrable / & in aſſ deſtructyue of theyr perſonis / honoures / goodes / and chyuaunches; of whom the 28 ſomme haue ben cauſe of ther harme & euyl, & of the deſtruccion of whiche ſome be yet. and how be it that thei ben pourneyed moche more *that* it apperteyneth to theym, ſeen theyr ſcyence, prowesſe, vaiHyantye or 32 ſeruyce after theſtate & their vocacion, in the whiche eche ought to holde and be content / like as ſaith

Boecaccio's
Fall of Noblys.

¹ orig. mauy

thapostle, wythout doying grief or ony nuyssaunce /
 ne to bere *dommage*, ne myssaye ony other / this not-
 wystondyng, alwaye they be in awayte / & delite
 4 themselfe to seehe often tymes meanes for to griene,
 & to saye wordes detractiues / wherof foloweth y^e
 perdyccion of moche peple, & of them selfe in the
 ende / whiche therin haue medeled ¶ And after
 8 certayne space I hadde been in beholdyng the
 peryHous aduentures / and fortunes ryghte sorowfulle /
 of many kynges, prynces, or knyghtes, and many
 other / I fonde the faHe of dydo, somtyme quene and
 12 foundresse of the noble cyte * of cartage; the whiche
 in redyng, I was abasshed, and had grete merueylle /
 how bochace, whiche is an auctour so gretly renommed,
 hath transposed, or atte leste dyuersified, the faHe
 16 and caas otherwyse than vrygyle hath in his fourth
 booke of Eneydos / In whiche he hath not rendred
 the reason / or made ony decysion, to approue better
 the his than that other. And yf ony wolde excuse
 20 hym, and saye that he hadde doon hit for better to
 kepe thonour of wymmen, And wolde not treatre ne
 saye thyng of theym dyshoneste, but that myghte
 be to theyr anauncement, ¶ This reason hath noo
 24 place: For he hath putte in many places other grete
 faHes, ouermoche infamous, of some quenens and ladyes /
 and hath not suffeyced to hym to speke atte in
 generall, but hath made expresse chapytres / In
 28 blamyng the complexions of theym; By the whiche
 partyculerly he sheweth the dyssoluecyons and peruerse
 condycyons that ben in the sexe femynyne / And for
 to shewe euydently vpon the sayd caas and falle, the
 32 dyfference whiche is of vrygyle and of boeace, I haue
 enterprysed to shewe atte a longe the texte of vrygyle /
 The causes and occasions of the laste extynctyon, and
 dolourous deth and despyte of the recommee of dydo,
 36 otherwyse callyd or named Elysse or Fenyce ¶ But

CAP. VI.

Boccaccio's Fall
of Noblys.

[* B 7, back]

His account of
Dido.The French
writer wonders
why Boccaccio
differs from
Virgil's story in
the Aeneid.Boccaccio often
shows the per-
verse conditions
of the sex femi-
nine.Dido also called
Elysse or
Fenyce.

CAP. VI.

fyrste and to-fore, for better, and to vnderstande the mater, I haue purposed to reeyte here the caas / and falle, after the oppynyon of Iohn boeace, whiche sayth as here after shaH ensiewe and folowe :— 4

YF In ony maner fayth oughte to be adiousted vnto the wrytynges and dyctes of olde and auneyente cronycles or historyers / Or to theyr letters, cronykes and historyes / Vnneth maye men fynde ony 8 of soo grete langage ¶ And dygne to yeue magnyfyce[n]ce / *and somoche deuyne renomnee / as to the hye name of Fenyce / whereof the rayson maye be this / how be it that thauctour putte not precysely 12 dedycte wythoute texte / by cause that the Fenyces were the fyrst Inuentours of carecteris dyfferencyng that one fro that other, of whiche were founned lettres for to write & redyng in remembarunce perpetual, y^e 16 thynges that they desireden to late be knowen to theyr frendis / or otherwyse for the conseruacyon of theyr dedes / fayttes, & scyences / to thende that they myghte reduyce in souuenaunce or remembraunce, by 20 thynspection and lecture of theyr wrytyngys, that whiche by lengthe of tyme, & debylte of entendement, sholde be wythdrawen / Or otherwyse sholde haue be forgotten it, and put in oublyau[n]ce, that the fenyces 24 fonde to note wyth rede colour or ynke fyrste the sayd lettres / of whiche our bokes ben gretely decorate, socoured & made fayr. We wryte the grete and fyrste capytaH lettres of our volumes, bookes and chapytres, 28 wyth the taynture of reed colour :

THe name thenne, and Royalme of Fenyce, hath be moche hiely decored by merueyHous artes / and myrifyke / In ioyouse preysynge and laude wherof, 32 the clerenes and fame of his ourages hath ben dyuulged & shewed vnto the laste clymate of londes habited wyth lygnage royaHe ¶ Oute of the whiche Fenyce and prosapye auneyenne / as it is to byleue by 36

[* leaf B 8]

The name of Fenyce.

Letters invented by the Phoenicians,

who first made red initials for decoration of books.

Dido, daughter of Belus, King of Phoenicia, and sister of his

- theyr wrytyngys / yssued a kyng named Belus / After
 the dethe of whome / one his sone, named pygmaleon,
 succeeded hym / And obteyned the Royalme of the
 4 Fenyces ¶ He hadde also a daughter named Elysse,
 whiche afterwarde was named dydo, & was maryed to
 one named Acerbe / otherwyse called Sychee (his vncle
 was preest of hereules), honoured wel in the royaume of
 8 thy*re, and the gretest of aHe the countreye after
 the kyng of the same / This gentylman was moche
 fayr to byholde / yonge / & playsaunt, of grete reuer-
 ence / ryght honorable emonge them of the countre / of
 12 grete audacyte / and of name magnyfyque, ryght moche
 byloued of Elysse / Themme his wyf, whiche thenne
 he loued also moche of fyne loue wythout fayntasie,
 whiche sone after fayled by his deth anguysshou,
 16 wherof thenne it happed after the Iugemente that to
 hym was fortunat / that he was so bienewrous that he
 was emonge aH other esteemed to be most in Ioye &
 gladnes, considering the beaute and bounte of dydo
 20 his wyf, And also of grete rycheesses / of whiche
 Acerbe, otherwyse callyd Sychee, was moche endowed,
 & hadde preemyence in ryght grete habundaunce :
- 24 **B**y the couetyse of whiche goodes & rycheesses /
 pygmalyon, brother of Elysse, and kyng of the
 countrey, was sore esprysed / For whiche cause the
 deth was conspyred of the fayr Sychee, the sayd
 pygmalyon thynkyng in hymselfe to doo slee hym,
 28 And by this moyen he sholde attayne to thende of his
 desire & wyH insacyable and fuH of couetyse, And
 soo to hym selfe he sholde aHe vsurpe his grete &
 Innumerable rycheesses / and lyke as he thought / he
 32 dyd / and dyd do slee Acerbe or Sychee / Themme
 dydo, his swete & amyable spouse & wyf, bare
 it moche inpacyentli and sorowfuH / & in suche
 anguysshe of herte / that she swowned, syncopysed,
 36 & syghed / And oute of her fayr swete eyen / &

CAP. VI.

successor Pyg-
malion, is
married to
Sychæus or
Acerbas of Tyre,

[* B 8, back]

to whom she
is tenderly
attached.

Wealth of
Sychæus.

Pygmalion

murders
Sychæus for his
riches.

CAP. VI.

Dido mourns
grievously for
Sycheus,

tendre, flowed teeris assyduatly and contynueHy, that
they better seemed two grete sources wellynge vp
grete affluence of teerys, whiche ranne down by hir
fayr & freshe vysage / And thus the sayd dydo suffred 4
grete payne for the grete and harde syghynges & heuy-
nesses, by cause of y^e grete, horri[b]yle / nephande /
& *detestable cryme, perpetred and commysed in the
persone of sychee, her swete and late amyable husbonde / 8
longe tyme demeaned she suche clamours wythoute
ony hope euer otherwyse to lyue; And alwaye she
considerynge the causes of the sayd cryme / and the
couetyse of her sayd brother pygmalyon / And that 12
many tymes by dremes and other admonestements was
ofte tymes incyted and counseyhed to seche some
place sure and secrete / And themme of thobeyssaunce
of the sayd pygmalyon / for the surete of hir persone, 16
she comened wyth the prynces of the same contrey, &
specyally wyth the pryncipaH whiche hadde be frendes
of Sychee, late hir husbonde / and shewed to theym
the causes by the whiche she hadde conceyued this 20
grete hate ayenste her brother pygmalyon / whom she
drew to her part and side, and were content to doo
aHe that / whiche by hir sholde be aduysed / for to
wythstande the cursed enterpryse of hir sayd broder, 24
whiche had concluded in him selfe, and to-fore thought /
Themme sone after a wyke, Elysse faynyng that she
ne myghte no lenger dueHe in the hous of Acerbe, late
her husbonde, by cause that she was ouermoeche moleste 28
and greued by recordyng contynuel in remembarunce
pictous of the swete mayntene and semblance of the
sayd Sychee, her preteryte husbonde, But she incyted,
frequented ofte the places in whiche she had firste seen 32
her true frende and loue sichee / And therefore wyth
aHe the hanoyr and other goodis of the sayd Acerbe
that he possessed in his lyfe, ryght gladly she wolde
dispose hir self to goo vnto the Royame of fenyce, the 36

[* sign. C j]

and thinks of
leaving Tyre on
account of the
covetousness of
Pygmalion.

countrey of her nayssaunce and byrthe, vnto pygmalion
 hir brother / whiche, when he herde of it, was moche
 Ioyous / supposynge¹ by that moyeu to come to his
 4 insacyable and cursyd auaryce / for to haue all the
 rycheesses & other goodes² to-fore sayd. Forthwyth
 * the sayd pygmalyon sente vnto his suster dydo a flote
 of shyppes, weH manned and garnysshed, for to brynge
 8 wyth her the goodes and rycheesses of the sayd Royame
 of Thir, in-to fenyece vnto hym / But dydo / by other
 barate, as she then hadde ordeyned / and that alwaye
 thoughte to eschewe and gaynstonde the fraude of hir
 12 sayd broder, toke and hydde priuely in a certeyn
 place of hir shippe aH the grete tresours & hauoyrs
 of hir sayd somtyme husbonde sichec. And in the
 place where they were, she sette many sakes fuH of
 16 brasse & coper, the whiche, aH manifestely or openly
 in the presence of aH hir people, whiche supposed
 thenne / that it hadde ben the tresour of her late
 husbonde / And dyd it to be taken from thens, and to
 20 carye and bere hit to the shippe at euyn, wyth thoo
 people whiche to-fore is made meneyon / And the
 messagers of the sayd kynge pygmalyon, whiche were
 comen to fetche hir / mounted vpon the sayd shyppe
 24 for to goo in-to fenyece. And whan they were weH on
 the waye oute of the lande, in the hye see, she com-
 maunded to caste oute the sakes of brasse and coper /
 where they in the ship hadde supposed that it hadde
 28 ben the tresours that she broughte wyth her; And
 that doon, she sayd to theym, wepynge, these incitayf
 wordes :

“Dere felawes and frendes of our nauye / I doubte
 32 nothyng but that ye haue the wyH for taccomplysshe
 that whiche I commaunde you / wythoute to aske or
 wyH to knowe ony wyse this whiche ye haue doon /
 But for to saye & teH to you the cause whiche haue

CAP. VI.

Dido proposes to
 go to Phoenicia
 to her brother,

[* Cj, back]
 who sends her a
 fleet.

She puts on
 board many bags
 of sham money,
 and sails, and

then throws
 overboard the
 bags.

She addresses
 her men.

¹ orig. supposyuge.

² orig. godes.

CAP. VI.

moeuēd me thus to doo, I haue moche lieuer to haue
 loste aHe the riches of Acerbe, late my frende &
 husbond, the whiche ye haue now drowned wythin the
 bely of the see / than I sholde delyuer theym in-to 4
 the handes of the ryght cruel kynge Pygmalion, my
 brother; for the whiche rychesses to haue¹ of me /
 after that he *hath taken the lyf awaye fro my swete
 and true husbonde, he hath sente you hider for to 8
 brynge me to hym wyth his shippes / And therefore
 thynke veryli that it behoueth you presently to doo
 and holde me companye, or eHs deye / or flee from
 hym / ye haue² knowen ynoughe his grete and cursid 12
 auaryce, And how he hath doo slee Acerbe or Syche,
 my late husbonde, for to haue of him his tresours.
 Wherfor I doubte not that now, after the rychesses
 loste, yf we goo to hym / he shaH be soo surprysed 16
 wyth angre and furyouse woodnes / whan he shaH
 see hym selfe soo deceyued & put fro his entente, that
 he shaH moche sore tormente vs / and at thende put
 vs to dethe; the whiche, sith that he hath wythdrawen 20
 & taken awaye hym / whiche was aHe my wele / I
 shaH take it in gree & gladly. But I haue compassyon
 of you, whiche in this caas haue no culpe ne blame /
 of the greuous paynes & myserable tormentes of 24
 whiche he shaH make you to haue by aflyetyon / And
 therefore late vs treate by one acorde / yf ye wyHe
 flee from the countrey of my brother wyth me / and
 eschewe his gret furour / I shaH abandoune my lyf 28
 wyth you, my good cyteceyns, whiche be here in
 dangcour of myserable deth / And offre my selfe to
 brynge & conducte you in-to some other place of
 surete, where as we shaH lyue more at our ease, in 32
 places of Ioyous dweHynge, wythoute to haue more
 drede of hym / ne of the grete doubte & fere of his
 cruel tyrannye" / thus were moeuēd & attyred by thex-

(* sign. C ij)

Dido advises her
 men to seek a
 refuge elsewhere
 with her,

to avoid Pygma-
 lion's anger if
 they go empty-
 handed to him.

She offers to
 guide them to
 some other
 place.

¹ orig. hane.² orig. hane.

hortacyon of dydo, & her swete monieyons and pyetous
 prayers / aHe the maronners, of one accorde wyth aHe
 the other, in the shippe How wel it was to theym
 4 moche harde a thyng to habandoune & leue the swete
 countrey of theyr natiuyte / AHe that notwyth-
 standyng, they accorded & greed to doo aH hir wyH /
 & the prores or forship whiche lay toward the countre
 8 of thir, *toured anone towarde the Royame of Cypre,
 for to goo in-to that countrey / There fonde they
 the preste of Iubyter, wyth his wyf and aHe his
 meyne, vaticynauite or prophecyeng thynges moche
 12 merueyllous, in pronostycaeyon righte happy of their
 fleeynge and voyage; the whiche, wyth his wyf and
 meynage, wente anone wyth theym, and not knowyng
 in-to what countrey, for to sojourne and passe forthe
 16 theyr yongthe, in some place of peas and of surete for
 to abide. Also to thende that their name perysshe not
 wythoute remembrance for faulte of lygnee / And a
 while they abode in the countree / whiche were well
 20 pleased wyth theyr conuersacyon, and maryages of
 theyr doughters to theym, in eschewyng to faHe in-to
 olde age, not socoured wyth children & maynage /
 whiche sholde yssue of theyr lygnage for tenhabyte
 24 the countrey, and maintene theyr name and remem-
 brance perpetuel / And in conclusion, they decended
 from their shippes to the lande, and at the ryuage of
 the same they toke indede lxx maydens, and anone
 28 putte theym in-to their shippes, the whiche, after the
 custome auneyen of the cypriens thider comen, receyued
 for to wynne y^e duete of maryage wyth men of aHe
 countreys and nacyns that thider came fro aHe
 32 partyes / And syth after, made festes and saeryfices to
 venus the goddessse. For after duryng their maryage /
 to be obserued, holden and kepte chaste aHe the tyme
 of theyr lyf, as yf they offred to the sayd venus theyr
 36 laste saeryfices & obsequyes for to goo oute fro hir

CAP. VI.

Dido's men all
 agree to go with
 her.

[* C ij, back]
 They land in
 Cyprus,

take on board
 70 maidens,

and sacrifice to
 Venus.

CAP. VI. subiectyon, and to be from her exempte from themne
forthon :

CAP. VII. ¶ How dydo arryued in Lybye, a straunge
countray, and boughte as moche londe or 4
grounde / as she myghte conteyne wythin
the space of the hide of an oxe. in whiche
she buylded and edyfyed the cyte of
Cartage / Capitulum vij. 8

[* sign. C iij]

* **A**Nd from thens departed dydo, wyth aHe hir
nauye, in passynge the see ; and alwaye wyth-
drawynge fro the sayd londe of fenycce, arryued vpon
the Ryuage of affryque for to repayre hir shyppes / 12
And there boughte of thynhabitauntis of the same
countray, as moche lande or grounde / as she myghte
enuyronne wyth the hide of an oxe / whiche dyd doo
corroye weH, and after dyd doo cutte hit soo in a 16
thonge so smaHe and longe, that she enuyronned moche
more quantyce of the grounde of the sayd countray than
the Inhabytantes seHars supposed sholde euer haue ben.
In the sayd place, durynge the tyme that dydo and her 20
felawshyppe, whiche by longe tyme hadde ben in grete
trauayHe vpon the see / whyche moche hadde greued
theym, and throwen theym in mani dyuerse countreys,
were themne vnder the proteccyon and swete reconsily- 24
acyon & rest / they dyd doo repayre theyr nauyre / &
sette it wyth / grete payne, aHe in poynte, wyth aHe
thynges to theym necessarye. Themne thenhabytanzs
and theyr neyghbours by / began to treatte wyth theym 28
curtoysly, and ofte vysited theym, wythoute to doo
to theym ony grief / moleste, or thyng that oughte to
dyspleasethem / but wyth aH gre and frendlynnes,
wythoute puttynge on theym lothlynnes as straungers. 32
They of the countree byganne to holde parlyamente
wyth theym, and toke amytyes & alyauzee wyth theym /

Dido arrives
in Africa, and
buys as much
land as can be
contained by an
ox hide.

Her people and
the natives be-
come friendly.

& admynystred to theym marchau^dyses, and dyd aHe
 other thynges whiche is acustumed to be doon bytwene
 neyghbours and good frendes: Thenne dydo & hir
 4 barons, seeyng the fruytful dysposicyon and bounte of
 the sayd place, semed to theym that they oughte to
 make an ende of their fuyte or fleeynge / and anone
 elysse or dydo, to theym dyscouerde the fraude that she
 8 had don / & shewed wherfore she had throwen in-to
 the see the sackes a-forsayd, ful of brasse & coper / se-
 * mynge that hit had ben the tresour of Sychee, her late
 husbonde / whiche themne she shewed to theym, wherof
 12 then they were moche Ioyous, & gretly encoraged wyth
 goode hope / & concluded anone to buylde & edefye
 a newe eyte there / And caste & toke the foundement
 for to make a eyte there / and there they abode aH to
 16 gyder / And in soo makyng, they fonde wythin the
 grounde, in diggyng to make the foundementes, the hed
 of an horse, whiche gaaf to theym hardynes / courage
 & destyne to preysinge of the place to be propyee and
 20 acceptable, the whiche was themne purposed to be closed
 & enuyronned wyth wallis autentyke / And the eyte
 was named, as some saye, Cartage, by cause that the
 cyreuyte of the place was enuyronned wyth the thonge
 24 of a skynne or hyde, as to-fore is sayd. And the
 easteH of the toune was named biose, takyng his name
 of the hide of an oxe / whiche they hof Tir called
 burse :

28 **T**His eyte in shorte espace, for the commodytees of
 the same, and situaeyon plentyuous, was strongly
 enhabited wyth moche folke & peple / Of whom dydo
 was lady & quene, and gaaf to theym lawes & manere
 32 of lynyng, and gouernaunce of goode maners / &
 admynystred entiere iustyce to hir subgettis / in hir
 housholde & menaige / she mayntened her ryght
 honestly / And the purpose of hir holy chastite, she
 36 enterteined & keppe wythoute to breke it / thus themne

CAP. VII.

Dido shows her
 people that she
 had deceived
 them, and still
 has her hus-
 band's treasure.
 [* C ij, back]

They found a
 city,

called Carthage,
 and its castle is
 called Biose.

Derivation of the
 names.

Dido is Queen of
 Carthage.

CAP. VII.

elysse, presidente as quene ouer aH the people / cam to
 hir entente desired / & in stede of wepynges, vnmesur-
 able sorowe whiche she had suffrid, & had ben in gret
 afflyction in Thir, for the nephande deth of hir sayd 4
 somtyme husbond / she was in *that* place, cartage, wel
 adourned of vertues / wherof thenne hir good fame &
 renomee florysshyng, shone & resplendysshed merueyl-
 lously in the countreys circumiacent & neyghbours, in 8
 suche wy*se that they whiche had lyued after the
 maner of that countree, whiche was all dissonant &
 dishoneste in regarde of *that* of dydo, toke the guyse /
 the facons / & the industries of the cartagyons, in 12
 leuyng their auneyent customes / whiche anon after
 vanysshed awaye as thei neuer had be vsed / But this
 notwythstandyng, fortune inpaceyente, whiche maye
 not suffre the pe[r]sone longe to dweHe prosperous / ne 16
 good werkes wythout enuye / sette & imposed vnder
 the feet of the righte chaste quene, thyng slypper &
 lubrik, for to make hir to ouerthrowe, & to brynge hir
 in-to exyle laerymable fro the place where hir glorye & 20
 exaltacion ought to be replenysshed, encreased, &
 manifested. for lyke as euery daye the beaulte, chastyte
 & prudence augmented vnto all nacions straungers ferre
 & nyghe / and the delectable name of hir cyte grewe 24
 & reysed in praysing / A certayn kyng of the musi-
 taynes or momydes, neyghbour to that countrey, was
 right feruently esprised in y^e loue of this quene, thenne
 beyng wydowe / as sayd is, of hir firste husbonde sychee / 28
 and sente to some prynces of that cyte, whom he
 requyred to haue this quene dydo in maryage / sayenge
 by grete menaces, yf he had her not / that he sholde
 reduce that cyte into ruyne, & sholde put aH the people 32
 therof in-to exyle / This thyng, seenge the sayd prynces,
 & knowyng the ferme purpos permanable, whiche y^e
 quene had to enterteyne hir pudevye chastyte in
 perpetuaH wydowed / durst not at y^e firste manifeste 36

Carthage
 flourishes
 greatly.

[*sign. C iiij]

Fortune never
 allows pros-
 perity to con-
 tinue long.

The King of the
 Musitaynes or
 Momydes desires
 her in marriage
 with threats.

the petycion & desire of the sayd kyng, but by subtyl
 meanes *entendynge* to drawe from hir som wordes
 seruyng to theyr intencion / & vpon the whiche they
 4 myghte fynde foundement & rayson indycatyf for to
 moeue therto the sayd dydo / they reported to hir *that*
 the kyng, for to lede a lyfe more honeste / demaunded
 them for to haue some prynee of thyre or thyrayn / for
 8 tenstruckte hym in doctrynes & good ma^sners & con-
 dyeyons, to lyue after the manere of theyr countre,
 whiche to hym semed more honest & aggreable than
 his owne / whiche for to doo they knew no man *cou-*
 12 *uenyent* & *pr^opyce*, for so moche that none of the
 countrey, but yf he were *constreyned*, wolde leue his
 owne londe for to goo vnto suche a kyng, that vsed
 so vyle / terryble & straunge lyf; And alwaye, yf ther
 16 wente none to hym / he menaced and thretenyd to make
 warre & fyght wyth theym, wherof myght falle other
anger & grete peryl to their newe cyte. The whiche
 prynces, the quene repreued / shewynge to theym that,
 20 for one man onely, ought not be cause to lose aH thother,
 & to habandoune theyr countrey & lyf accustomed, and
 to vse suche as beestes sauage doo / as werkes synystres
 & barbares / “O right good cytezeyns, yf it happened
 24 that one muste deye for the salute & wele of your
 countrey, be ye not *concluded* so to doo & suffre / For
 he is right vnhappy, that for his partyculer wele wyH
 leue y^e publike & comyn wele / & contrary wyse, he is
 28 blessyd that Ieopardeth hym to the deth for y^e comen
 wele of his countrey :”

CAP. VII.

Dido's nobles
misrepresent the
King of the
Musiaynes to
her.

[* C iij, back]

Dido reproves
them, and

answers that
the man who
gives his life for
the public good
is blest.

¶ How a kyng, neyghbour to cartage, dyde
 demaunde to wyfe the fayr dydo, quene
 32 of¹ Cartage, the whiche, for the loue of hir

¹ orig. yf;

CAP. VIII.

late husband, had lieuere to slee her selfe,
than to take the sayd kynge.

Capitulo. viij

Dido's nobles
then tell her
she is sought in
marriage by a
neighbouring
king, and they
desire her
consent.

Her grief.

[* leaf C 5]

She demands 3
months' delay,

and fortifies
Carthage.

She curses her
beauty.

And thenne seeyng the sayd wordes seruyng right 4
wel to theyr purpoos, & to hir preiudyc /
Notefyden vnto the quene / how the sayd kyng had
rekyred her in maryage / and had made to theym the
sayd menaces / in caas *that* they wolde not soo accorde 8
to hym. The whiche knowleche to be achieued in the
sentence by her pronouced, And that she her selfe
was cause of her perdicyon, byganne moche strongly
in flegyble lamentacyon to caſte longe by dolour and 12
* excessyue sorowe, the swete name of Acerbe hir
preterit husband / But in the ende they hadde deter-
mynd, consydeyng that hit myghte be none other
wyse, but she muste promyse to make this maryage / 16
the whiche she accorded to theym, and helde for
greable / And demaunded Induces and space of thre
monethes, In whiche tyme she sholde doo her
dyligence for to accomplysse aſſe theyr wyſhes / In 20
this tyme duryng, as it maye be presupposed, yf ony
deffence was in the eyte whiche was not sette and
ordeyned in couenable fortyfycacyon / She dyde it
incontynente to be sette in poynt. And after this, she 24
blamed longe her beaulte, in cursyng it by grete
execraeyon, wyth the grete enuye that fortune hadde
vpon her, and the Ioyous aduentures, and prosperous,
whiche were in late tyme comen to her / So that the 28
grete playsaunce whiche she hadde taken with the
swete reste of her thoughte / in whiche that she had
repelled thanaryce of hir brother, by her weſſ happy
fleyng,¹ and her noble eyte edyfied newly / whiche 32
thenne was accomplysshid, & wyth grete people eu-
habyted, aſſe subgette and obeyssaunt vnto the lawes

¹ orig. fleeyng

of her seynorye / thenne conuerted and chaunged in-
to grete anguysshe myserable. After whan the terme
of thre monethis approached, the lady whiche was faHe
4 ayen in lacrymous and playnyng sorowes whiche she
had hadde in tyme passed for the deth of Sychee, her
somtyme husbonde, Dyde doo hewe down and gader
to gyder a ryght grete multytude of busshes and woode /
8 for to make a cruel fyre terryble and merueyllous in
the hieste place of the eyte / and faynyng to mak
sacryfyce in the pyetous commemoracyon playsaunte to
the pryue goddys for the laste obsequyes of the funeraHe
12 seruyce of Acerbe or Sychee, her sayd husbonde, In
payenge the extreme tribute *of remembraunce ytera-
tyue / ne other wyse in ony maner the fagottis or
woode clouen and broken / toke the swerde in hir
16 honde, & mounted vp aHe on hie vpon the woode redy
for to sette on fire, in the presence of aH the peple.
byholding by grete admyracyon what she wold doo,
bigan to say: "my ryght good citezeyns, after your
20 ordynauce I goo to the man;" that is to saye, that she
was disposed to goo and marye her to the kyng for-
named / & sodaynly aH attones she lete her selfe faHe
vpon the poynt of the swerde / whiche termyned &
24 ended in that hour hir lyf. Thenne for the deth, & hir
innocente blood whiche maculate & bysprange aH
theym that stode by, she extyred aH thynges sinystre
whiche had mowe torne in *preiudyce* of the eyte &
28 peple of cartage, for the reffuse of y^e same maryage /
yf any wolde haue gaynsayd it / The whiche thyng
seenge, they of cartage *consideryng* the charge soo cruel
whiche the sayd sorowful lady had suffred for to kepe
32 hir eyte & the citezeyns vnhurt & exempt from
oppressyons of y^e peple barbaryke / in whom they
were subcombed by cause of the sayd mariage, yf ony
had be made / maden grete wepynges & right long
36 lamentacions in lacrymous playntis, syghynges, by-

CAP. VIII.

She is in great
sorrow, and
makes a large
funeral pile,

[* leaf C 5, back]

on which
she commits
suicide,

to avoid marriage
and save her
people.

CAP. VIII.

Dido is greatly lamented, and afterwards worshipped as a goddess.

waylleges, & other sorowfuH wordes. Thennē all the
 peple were concludēd & brought to, by cause of the
 deth of theyr quene dydo / bywayHyng & halowyng
 funeraH exequyes contynuel by many dayes / longe 4
 tyme after bi grete waiHynges, in pyetous remembraunce
 of theyr ryght goode quene / whom they caHyd from
 thenne forth on moder of theyr countrey / & enforced
 theym to attribute aH honours humaynes & deynes 8
 by manere of the eruelte of hir deth / whiche hath
 broughte thynges weHe fortunēd to the prosperous lyf
 of hir cytezyns, was by theym in pyetous commemo-
 racyon recompensēd / And after that they hadde ryght 12
 affectuously *recommāded her vnto the souerayn
 goddis, and inferyours / that she myghte be blessyd as
 longe as cartage sholde abyde inuynceyble / And they
 shold make temples & aultres dedyed & halowed in hir 16
 name / In whiche she sholde be embraced & honowred
 as a goddesse.

[* leaf C 6]

Thus says
 Boccaccio.

¶ A comendacyon to dydo : *Capitulum ix*

Praise or
 eulogium on
 Dido dying to
 save her country.

O the fortytude viryle of wymmen, or loos & pryce 20
 of chastyte femynyne, digne & worthi of honour,
 celebreed & magnyfyed in grete loange & preysynge,
 wythoute ende perpetuel. thou louest, & haste liener to
 submyse to fortune aduenturous of deth cruel, for to 24
 kepe thy pudyke chastyte vnhurte, wythoute ony
 spotte / than to rendre or yelde thy selfe in applycacion
 of lyf perysshable to dyshonoure, ne to make foul the
 holy purpose of thy castymonye / by thuntrue note of 28
 lubryke & slypper luxurye / O quene / ryght venerable,
 wyth one onely stroke / thou haste wyHed to teryne
 and fynysse thy labours mortaH / By whiche thou
 hast gotten fame & renomnee eternal of the grete kyng 32
 barbaryn / by whom he is repressed fro his lybidynous
 de-ire / the countrey is in surety, delyuerd from
 batayHe by thy ryght dolorouse deth, whiche hathe

quenched the playsaunt figure of thy grete beaulte. by
 thy fruytful deth, & placable to thenhabytants of thy
 noble eyte, hast destyHed the blood resplendysshant
 4 yssuynge aHe oute of thy breste chast & not corrupte,
 in tytle flourysshynge of thy loange / preysynge / &
 good renomme / of whom the spyrite, by thy lyf
 fynysshed so moche made fair wyth sorow myrifyke,
 8 was translated to the sieges & contrees therto ordeyned
 after thi demerites / To the, thenne, in aH affection
 crayntyue, I addresse my thoughte deprecatyue / Yf in
 ony wyse that haste strengthe or payssaunce towarde
 12 the goddys of hyghe magestye in theyr pryue mansyon,
 whyche for *the, wylle some thyng doo / that it maye
 playse the to entende to the correction of the maners
 lubryke / Inconstaunte and euyl, of our matrones
 16 impudike and folyshe / and to rendre theym from
 theyr lacyuyte, in-to pudike / mystike, and shanefaste
 chastyte / and in-to benygne & uery obedyence, so
 moche that they abyde wyth the / in thy name and
 20 fame venerable / The whiche, wythoute ende knowyng
 eterneHy, we maye see by thy merytes thoneste of
 chaste clenness maternaHe to be augmented & growe
 in honour.

24 **T**He whiche caas here presupposed, is in accordaunce
 ynoughe, whiche speketh of the lygnage and
 maryage of dydo / Of the deth also perpetred by
 pygmalyon, kyng of Thir, in the persone of Sychee,
 28 firste husbonde of the sayd Elysse or dydo. And after,
 of her departynge / of the maner of doynge. How after
 she bare away the tresours of her somtyme husbonde
 Acerbe. and of her comynge in-to Lybye, vpon the
 32 rynaage of the see in the place where she bygamme firste
 to edyfy Cartage, And of the fortunes aduenturouse
 whiche happened in that soo makyng, that byfelle to
 her and to theym of theyr company ¶ But for to
 36 shewe the difference that I fynde of the deth of the

CAP. IX.

Eulogium on
Dido.Prayer to Dido
in heaven

[* leaf C 6, back]

to reform the
evil manners of
modern matronsBoccaccio's and
Virgil's stories
are the same up
to the founding
of Carthage.

CAP. IX.

Virgil's version
of Dido's story.Persecution of
Aeneas on his
voyage by Juno,on account of
Paris's judg-
ment.

[* leaf C 7]

She engages
Aeolus and Nep-
tune to raise astorm to hinder
Aeneas's voyage,promising them
rewards.

sayd dydo / I shaH reherce here after now in a nother
 maner, whiche is to be presupposed was moeued of the
 grete hate & euil wyH that Iuno the goddesse conceyued
 ayenst parys / his frendis, parents / & alyes. and by 4
 cause of ouer sodayn iugement *that* he made / whan he
 gaaf thapple to *venus*, as the moste fayrest of theym
 aH / & to him holden & moost dere. bycause of whiche
 hate / whan *eneas*, sone of *venus*, & nygh kynnesman 8
 of paris wold departe from troye / after the siege of
 y^e same, for to goo into the conquest of the prouynce of
 ytaly, to hym *promysed* by the goddis at request of his
 moder; & Iuno, y^e ryght noble *goddesse, wyHyng 12.
 tempessehe and lette his gooyng / dyd doo caHe and
 assemble yolus and Neptunus, goddis of the wyndes
 and of the see, prayenge & exhertyng theym moeche
 swetely, that it myghte playse eche of theym to putte 16
 theym in payne, & doo theyr deuoyr, to empessehe the
 goynge of the sayd enterpryse, and makynge to breke
 and destroye aHe the nauye, in plonyng vnder the
 water and pareHys ayenst the roches, for hastely to 20
 drowne and destroye aHe the hooste of Enee, the sone
 of *venus*, whiche enforced hym to make werre in the
 goode Royalme of ytalye, whiche was in his desire
 pryncypally aboue aHe other. In whiche thyng soe 24
 doynge, she wolde rewarde theym wyth suche guerdons
 as apperteyneth to grete and hie goddys to be sty-
 pended / and shaH doo honoure to theyr frendes / and
 treathe theyr lynnage and veray alyes / and socoure 28
 theym wyth aHe hir myghte / whiche that the goddys
 hadde graunted to hir right gladly. And they made
 theyr preperacyon, eueryche in his regyon / for to warre
 vpon Eneas :

¶ How Iuno, for tempeſſhe thooste of Eneas
 whiche wolde haue goon in to ytalye /
 prayd the goddys of wyndes / that
 4 eueryche by hym selfe ſholde make con-
 cuſſyon and tormente in the ayer.

Capitulo xº

ENeas themne ſailynge bi the ſee, was recounted
 8 by yolus, whiche ſmote wythin the ſayhes grete
 aſſaultes, eſſortes & batayhes in many maners / And
 made to come the foure windes to gyder / one ayenſt
 another, wyth aH their ſequle / Of whom was ſur-
 12 pryſed aH the nauye, and terryble troubled ¶ There
 myghte ye ſee ſayles rente, Cordes and ropes broken,
 And crampons of yron wrythen a ſondre and plucked
 oute. the ſhyppes * & vaſſayhes lyfte vppē hīghe in the
 16 ayer / and after plunged in the ſee in ſuch wyſe that
 neuer was ſeen ſuche a merueyhe / On that other ſyde
 cam vpon theym Neptunus wyth aH his vorages, &
 wawes aHe fuH of ſeume / as a wulfe enraged brayeng
 20 in the botome of the ſee, his grete gulle or throte wyde
 opene / redy to ſwolowe & to deuoure aHe thooste,
 cryenge & brayenge vnder the ſhippes, tempeſtes
 horrible of the woode ſee / oute of whome yſſued in-to
 24 thayer on hie a clowde, and after decended impetuoſly
 vpon the flote, whiche ſemed ſomtyme aHe to be
 drowned & couerle wyth water / And anone after, they
 were lyfte vp on hie wyth the wawes / whiche ſodaynly
 28 braken & departed / that aHe the nauye decended
 nyghe to the bottom of the ſee / whiche were anone
 recueyhed by other wawes, & remyſed in a momente vp
 on hīghe / and ſepared & transported in-to dyuerſe
 32 places, And in dyuerſe wyſes were tormented wyth-
 oute hope of ſocours / Longe tyme dured this

Aeneas's fleet is overtaken by a dreadful tempest

[* leaf C 7, back]

raised by Yolus and Neptune.

Violence of the storm described.

CAP. X. troublous tormente / whiche caused grete fere &
 drede vnto the countreys nygh neyghbours, & also
 ferre of. This assemblee, the whiche after grete losse
 & perdicyon, as weH of Anchises, fader of Eneas, as 4
 other dyuerse / and also fortunes whiche longe be to
 reeyte, passed / The nauye arryued almoste aHe to-
 broken vpon the coste of the see of lybye, nygh the sayd
 place of Cartage / whiche Elysse dyd doo edyfic / by 8
 grete and subtyH moyens, of the whiche I passe ouer /
 And in descendynge and comynge a lande in to that
 countrey, was reculed and receyued by dydo, And
 opteyned her grace for to soiourne for to refresshe alle 12
 his people and his nauie ¶ In whiche doynge, he toke
 grete acqueyntaunce / and ofte repayred vnto the
 palays / and wyth the ladyes byhaued him soo queyntli
 swete and curtoys / plesaunte and amyable, *fayr and 16
 well byspoken / merueyllous hardy in fayttes / a grete
 enterpryser, loued of aHe men, & preysed of his
 people / he was moche noble / and a ryght fayr persone.
 by cause wherof, dydo toke grete playsir in his con- 20
 uersacyon / and deuysed wyth him moche gladely /
 wherof folowed that she was greuously hurte wyth the
 darte of loue / And the wounde nourysshed by longe
 tyme embraced wyth the swete assemble inuyncible in 24
 hyr stomacke, considerynge the grete vertues of whiche
 his persone was decorate / his noblenes & honour of
 the peple of Troye / his grete beaulte & swete
 langage / whiche she empynted in her remembraunce / 28
 that her membres refuseden the swete reste of slepe /
 And kepte this thoughte in her selfe by ryght longe
 tyme, in suche a wyse / that in a mornynge / after that
 the lyghte of the daye rebouted & putte a backe the 32
 shadowe of the nyghte aboute the lampe / and the sonne
 rysen for to shyne on the erthe,

Anchises is lost
in the storm.

Aeneas's fleet,
sally shattered,
arrives on the
coast of Lybia.

[* leaf C S]

The strangers are
kindly received
by Dido, who
becomes enam-
oured of Aeneas.

His beauty and
noble qualities
are here
described.

¶ How dydo counseyfid wyth hir suster
anne :

CAP. XI.

Capitulum xj

4 **T**His lady bythoughte herselfe, and purposed to dys-
coure and manyfeste her faytte vnto one hir suster,
whiche was named in that tyme Anne, sayenge to hir
in this manere / “ Anne, my suster and frenle, I am in
ryght gret thoughte strongly troubled and ineyted /
8 by dremes admonested, whiche exeyte my courage
tenquire the maners & lygnage of this man thus
valyaunt / strong / & puyssaunt / whiche deliteth hym
strongly to speke / in deuysing the hie fayttes of
12 armes & perillys daungerous whiche he sayth to haue
passed / ne-weli hither comyn to sojourne in our
countreys. I am so persuaded of grete admonestments
that aH my entendement is obfusked / enduHyd and
16 rauysshed / I byleue certaynly that the man of whome
I speke to you ys nyghe kynne and parent of y^e
goddis / or that verytable by one comyn assentment
*they haue assembled theym selfe to destyne his berth
20 in delyuerynge and gyyng to hym affone aHe the
highe vertuose yeftes, whiche nature hath of eustume
partyculerly to yeue to dyuerse creatures / and maye
be supposed that she hathe produced hym in excellent
24 dygnyte, for to make one fayer chief werke / to
thexemployre of aHe other / For they whiche ben
borne of basse parentage, ben ouer moche ferdeful &
couerte in theyr fayttes / and drede theym fleynge,
28 and kepe theym oute of the palayces & courtes of grete
lordes / And yf it happen theym to entre, anone they
retourne or hide theym in corners vnder the tapytes, or
byhinde the grete fote of the yate, for to yssue and goo
32 oute first wythoute makyng any bruyt or medlynge, ne
seche nothyng but thysse for to flee, yf there were
ony medlee / ne neuer by theym was there ony
valyanze proued, as it is sayd / But god forbede that

Dido confesses
her love to her
sister Anna.

She thinks that
Aeneas must be
of diuine birth.

[* leaf C 8, back]

She describes
those of base
lineage.

CAP. XI. it may be sayd of Eneas, that fortune, vaynquysshur of grete batayHes, comynge to the chief of aHe enterpryses, to haue reproche by ony of our sayd wordes / For yf it that¹ ne were that I haue purposed fermely in my 4
 [1 for if that it] courage to abyde and be in wydowhede aHe the tyme
 No one since Sycheus's death of my lyf / after the deth dolourouse & cursid of my somtyme husbende Sychee, whiche bare away my firste loue wyth hym / whan he was leyde vnder 8
 therthe, by thenuyous remors & greuous remembraunce of my passed maryage, wherin I haue had so many goodes of honour and curtosie, of whome the remembraunce sleeth me & scourgeth me alway / I sholde 12
 lyghtly haue consented to thallyaunce of this man. Anne, I confesse for trouth that, sith the myserable deth of Sycheus, & wycked to saye, commysed in the hous of my broder / of whiche the goddys be aHe 16
 maculate / This man onely hath molyfyed my wyttes, and perturbed the corage of myn opynyon firste, and
 has moved her heart but Aeneas, hathe *reduced to remembraunce the delycyouse traces of myn auneyent loue. But not for that / I desire and 20
 [* sign. D j] wyssheth that erste thabysme of thobscure erthe swolowe me / or the grete fader almyghity to plunge and submerge me vnder the botomes of the depe palusshe infernaHe, rather than to my pudyque chastyte sholde 24
 be doon by me ony wronge ne vyolence / nor that thy ryght I sholde contrarye nor breke, for no thyng that euer can happe to me by no maner wyse in thys worlde /
 but she will still be faithful to her old love. Alas, he that me spoused firste / hath my loue entierly 28
 wyth hym / wherof inreuoicable a yefte I doo make to hym ; soo byseche I hym to kepe hit wele wythin his graue vnder the colde marbyl stone, and not to be separed from his soule." This requeste, sighynge, made 32
 she to hym / and tendrely wepyng, called ayen the olde sorowe, whiche smote and wounded her to the herte, so moche that the bosome of that sorrowful lady was enterly Replenysshed aHe wyth teeres : 36

¶ Thansuer of Anne to hir suster dydo CAP. XII.*Capitulum xij*

THan Anne, her benygne suster / hauynge pyte of
 4 her sorowe, consideringe the waye salutary to
 reuerte soone her sorow in-to gladnesse / sayd to hir in
 this manere. “O suster, more loued of me than the
 lyghte iHumyned wyth grete bryghtnes / How haste
 8 thou deternyed to lyue alone, consumyng thyn
 yongthe in perpetuaH heuynesse? Remembre the of
 the swete dysportynges. the grete consolacions and
 IoyfuH playsures wherby the children reioysshen their
 12 moders / the swete kysshynge and the fayr pase-tyme
 that they take therat / Also the ioye and consolacyon
 that the men do on-to theyr swete spouses. putte awaye
 this sorowe / thees lamentacyons, thees grete sighynges
 16 and sorrowful teeres; take ayen corage, and make thy
 selfe ferme wyth hope / Troweste thou that the bones
 of Sycheus, or his tombe / the *shadowe of his soule.
 take peyne, or care, to kepe thy loue / thynke it not no-
 20 more than the sperkeH yssuyng oute of the fyre wyth
 the smoke / whiche is soone reduced and broughte to
 nough'e, wythout to haue any vygoure more, ne other
 puyssaunte, to make fyre, lyghte, nor flamme / Lyke
 24 wyse whan the soule of Sycheus was oute of the body,
 and from hym separated / aHe his werkes and wordly
 voluptees were extyneted and broughte to nought / Nor
 wyth hym remayneth nother free arbytre or wyHe of
 28 goode or euyH / care ne solycytude of thy loue / And
 yf thou wylte lyue in sorowe & heuynesse, or that
 otherwyse were / that thou dydeste marye / and
 woldeste vse thy dayes in maryage, aHe is to hym as
 32 ryght noughte / and no thyng there nys that coude
 lette hym, or doo hym ony socours / but onely the

Anna encourages
 Dido's love for
 Aeneas, and

[* sign. D j back]

assures her that
 her present
 action can be of
 no concern to
 Sycheus now.

CAP. XII. meryttes of the werkes by hym made, conuersynge in
 this worlde / Nor noughte for somoche, that thou
 makest calynges, complayntes, shighynges / and lament-
 acyons full of reuthes noyous, vpon a dampnable mynde 4
 and folysshè remembraunce of thynges that ben impos-
 syble, thou canste not drawe nor brynge oute of the
 infernaHe mansions the soules of whome the shadowes,
 or otherwyse the asshes / ben wythin the tombes 8
 separated from the bones, for to reuyue and putte hem
 ayen in-to the bodyes longe syn destroyed & conuerted
 in-to poulder / Syth that it is so / and also of that
 other side, that neuer man, how grete a lorde that he 12
 were, kynge Yarbass, pygmalyon of thyre / they of
 libye / many other of Affryque, the ryche countrey that
 noryssheth soo many prynees / myghte neuer moeue thy
 courage to be byloued of the, And that to this man 16
 whiche is so moche renommed / preu and valyaunt,
 thy wytte is enclyned in swete loue, wythoute ony
 contraryete of free wyHe that ther vnto admonesteth
 the, wyH thou commytte & * vndresette thy lyberal 20
 arbytre to thynges Impossyble, Repulsynge ayenst the
 incitacyons moeued by natureH dylection, whiche
 comen of thy self, with out ony othre induction?
 Hast thou proposed to moeue werre ayenst thy persone / 24
 gaynsayng thyn owne wiHe / inclined to the loue
 desyred / In plaisaunt Remembraunce of suche a prince
 pyussaunt, dygne of this meryte / Haue in mynde and
 recordaunce the setuacyon of thy cyte, newly fowunded 28
 in this lande among the most crueH folke of the worlde.
 thou hast at the one syde the citees and the people
 getules / whiche ben folke insuperable, Ryght daunger-
 ouse in batayHes, and inuyncible in armes / atte the 32
 other syde ben the myrondes, that are folke without
 Rule and without mesure / And than the Cirte regyon
 and the deserte countrey, whiche is all inhabited by
 defawte of folkes flodes or ryuers that shulde tempore 36

No one can
 restore the dead
 to life.

If no other king
 or prince have
 ever moved her
 before, why
 should Dido
 resist this
 inclination?

[* sign. D ij]

Then her defence-
 less situation,

the erthe that is aH drye, and as ded for thurst / After,
 is the people of Barches, aH furiose and vagauzt In
 the countrees, Hauynge noo certaine mansyon to dweHe
 4 Inne / And more, there is the Region of thire, wherfrom
 we haue wythdrawen and brought furtynely aH this
 people that we haue / Whiche shaH mowe of lyght
 aryse, and make werre ayenst the, with the helpe of thy
 8 germayn Pygmalyon, whiche the wolde haue frusted
 of the grete tresours & Rycheesses that he awayteth to
 haue of thy soumtyme husbände Sychee / Thynke in
 thy self, who shaHe mowe the deffende, a woman aH
 12 alone / ayenst somoche folke, without eny other helpe
 of *somm* prynce puyssaunt? In certayne I byleue
 truly *that* the goddes in their destynaeyes haue fauour-
 ished the weH with Iuno, y^e grete goddesse, for to
 16 transporte in-to this regyon y^e ryche nauye of troye /
 thynke, my suster, what shalbe of thy cyte, & in what
 domynacion * puyssaunte shaHe thy Royame be, by
 the alyaunce of one soo grete a maryage / Consyderynge
 20 the glorye and honour of Cartage, whan she shaHe be
 Ioyned wyth the troians / and by theym defended /
 Where is he that shaHe be soo myghty for to vnder-
 take to make warre ayenste the, thus alyed / take
 24 agayne courage, ryght welbylond suster, & putte oute
 of thy remembraunce y^e fortunes passed / crye mercy
 vnto the goddis, yf by ony wyse afore this thou hast
 offended theym / prayng theym that it wolde playse
 28 theym to be vnto y^e ¹ faorable to the perfourmyng of
 this alyaunce / atyse & drawe theym by sacrificyes /
 Requestes & oblacions of herte contryte, & carefuH
 thoughte; & be desirous to serue theym, aH thynges
 32 layde a side, in that / whiche thou shalte mowe knowe
 vnto theym aggreable. Aduyse for to fynde the
 meanes to make Eneas to abyde / deuysynge vnto hym,
 that he oughte to doo soo / Seynge and considerynge

CAP. XII.

her dangerous
neighbours.What a defence
would the Trojan
alliance be!

[* sign. D ij back]

Let Dido try to
conciliate the
gods,and persuade
Aeneas to
stay.

CAP. XII.

Anna shows Dido how the stormy season is approaching.

the wynter that is aHe dystempred, the grete orages,
 the sygne of Oryon that rendreth the watres to be
 proude and crueHe / Also the shippes that ben aHe
 crased of the grete tornementes that haue hurte theym 4
 here byfore, saylyng in the see, The influences of the
 heuens so spytefuH / & dyuerse contraryed moeuable,
 one apposite ayenst another, causynge dyuersite per-
 turbatyffe in the lowe elementes / whiche myghte be 8
 cause of his destruction, yf he vnder toke ony vyage atte
 this tyme, passynge the see from one lande to a nother /
 By these Raysons, and other that by the desirous affec-
 tyon of thy wyHe shaHe be vnto the aduysed and 12
 shewed, to the perfectyon of thys thyng, thou shalt
 mowe peruerte the oppynyon of Eneas for to seiourne
 in this country, that byfore was aHe determyned for
 to goo." The whiche *thynges, & other persuasions 16
 seruynge to the mater whiche enflamed the corage of
 Elysse, esprysed wyth brennyng loue towarde Enee /
 gaue a stedfast hope to her sorowfuH thoughte, leuynge
 by dyspense abstractyue / her first vowes of chastyte 20
 promysed /

[* sign. D iij]

Dido thinks of abandoning her vow of cehacy.

¶ How Eneas, aftre grete fortunys of
 the see, arryued in cartage; And How
 dydo, for his swete behauoure and fayre 24
 spekyng, was esprised of his loue.

Capitulo / xiiij.

BOthe togidre of one assente, wente the two sustres¹
 fore named, to the synagoges and temples, where 28
 bifore the aulters thei offred sacrifices with grete sup-
 plycacyons and prayers / and slewe sheep weders for
 to doo sacrefyces destynated vnto the noble goddesse
 Ceres, to Appolyn, and to Bachus / and specyally vnto 32
 Juno, the goddesse of wedlocke / whiche is lady / mas-

The sisters, Dido and Anna, sacrifice to Ceres, Juno, &c.

¹ orig. sus-sustres

tresse, and wardeyne, of the connexes or bondes amini-
 cules / to whome they offred in pacifique Immolacion a
 white cowe, by-twix the hornes of the whiche / Dydo,
 4 by grete deuocyon, shedde the fyole fuffe of the holi
 libacion / makynge the consecracion ouer the saeryfyce,
 there dedied and doon in diuerse wise, by solemnyte
 merneyHouse, aftre the custome that was vsed at that
 8 tyme / Dydo wyth her suster Anne¹ went In to the
 temples and symulacres, knelynge before the awters,
 makynge Requestes and prayers, and aftre loked In to
 the entraylles Interiores of the bestes there slayne /
 12 For to fuldo the saeryfyce, In delyuerynge and
 sechyng / aftre the moeuyng of them / the comynge
 of the future maryage / But what ouerserche nedeth
 more to be enquered / wherof thys folysshe thoughte
 16 cometh to the woman thus a-tysed wyth *the swete
 flamme of loue esprised in-to the mary and synewes,
 whiche inseparably goeth thurgh the bones, as depe as
 the veray hertys roote / To goo sekyng wythyn the
 20 symulacres the consentynge of lyght whyche is alrede
 determyned for to be accomplysshed. Thys lady hathe
 norysshed pryuely in her thoughte the wounde of
 ambycouse desyre / whyche is so procured that she
 24 can not hyde it noo lenger / She is graffed and
 miserably sette wauynge and tournynge here and
 there wythin her eyte, embrassed and take wyth loue
 insacyable in contynueHe thoughte / As a personne
 28 furyouse, lyke as an hynde that is rought to the herte
 wyth an arowe / goeth rennyng by the forestes and
 mountaynes / Thynkyng vpon her sore onely / wyth-
 oute to conceyue ne comprehend the wele of her
 32 abydyng / Aftre, wyth Eneas / goeth thys lady
 deuysynge thurgh the towne, to shewe hym the grete
 rychesses that she hath broughte from the partyes of
 Thyre, asketh hym his aduyse of the cdyfyces of

CAP. XIII.

Dido pours the
 holy oil between
 the white cow's
 horns.

[* sign. D iij bk]

Her love for
 Aeneas has
 struck to her
 heart's root.

She shows him
 the treasures of
 her town.

¹ orig. Anne

CAP. XIII.

Dido strives to entertain Aeneas in every way she can think of.

Cartage, cheryssheth and enterteyneth hym to her power in aHe thynges that she thynketh to be playsaunt and agreable vnto hym / and atte last, she yet spekyng, her speche deffayHeth aHe sodeynly, and can not kepe 4 purpos ne countenaunce, as a persone transported from her vndrestandyng, and ouertake wyth oure grete loue inestymable / Of it that other parte, she doeth make grete appareyHes for to feeste Eneas ryghte highly in 8 dyuersities of metes entermedled wyth some Ioyous dysportes, playsaunte, and in syghte aggreable. After she taketh a delectacyon in his talkyng playsaunte / requyryng hym that, for her loue / he wyHe recounte 12 some grete *fayttes or other aduentures that he hath seen in hys tyme in the werre of Troye; And taketh her Ioye and consolacyon in his swete wordes and drawyng / that atysen and enterteine her in a con- 16 tynuaHe thoughte towarde hym / Soo that after theyr departyng from eche other, that tyme the mone obscure comyng in his ordre / supprymeth the lyghte of the sonne, and the sterres launchyng theyr bryghte spark- 20 cles, excyte the appetyte of slepe / The lady that alone entreth to her chaumbre / tryste and pencyfuHe, leuyng her bedde reste, syttyng vpon tapysserye werke / or other parte, aHe solitarie and desolate, as 24 a thyng habandouned / Desiryng the presence of Eneas by Imagynaeyon impraynted wyth-in the fauntasme of her entendemente, Her semeth that she seeth hym there presente, heringe after his wordes 28 playsaunte / And deuysyng wyth hym / and there she passeth ouer a parte of the nyghte in suche medytacyons and contynueH thoughts.

She is madly in love with him.

At intervals,

¶ And emonge, she taketh in her lappe Ascanyus, 32 the sone of Eneas, otherwyse callyd Iulus, and holdeth hym bytwyxe her armes / byholdeth / kysseth and colleth hym, Consideryng the beaultye and grete delectacyon of the fadre, In whiche she is rauysshed 36

she nurses Ascanius.

by the representynge of his sone : And no thyng
there ys soo gretely greuable, but that it is aHe ynoughe
facyHe vnto her to be experymented for the entre-
4 teyngnge of her loue, wherinne she myghte be deceeyued
for the grete serche that she doeth wythoute ceasse for
to eschew aHe thynges that in this caas myghte be
nocible and contrarye to her :

8 * **A** Nd for by cause of the whiche forsayd occupacyon [* sign. D iiij, back]
or contynueHe thoughte wherinne she is Inex-
plyceable occupied, as transported and rauysshed, AHe
the werkes and doynge of Dydo are taryed, and lefte
12 in the astate of Inperfection. The werkes of the grete
yates / toures, and othre edyfyces that were begonne
for the perfectyon of Cartage, be lefte wythout eny
more werkyng, aHe Imperfyt : the exereyse of armes is
16 dysecontynued ; the noble men were robuste and rude,
wythout exersice of fayttes of werre ; The brydges /
poortes and passages ben lefte wythoute warle / And
the defences ben voyde and¹ emptye wythoute entre-
20 teynynge / redy to receyue the enmyes wythoute ony
contradectyon : AHe werkes ceassen and appyeren
interrupte for defaulte of conductours / The stones
of the waHes that are bygonne, whiche appyeren aHe
24 awry sette, coked, bowed, and counterfette / by cause
thei be not fuHy made and polished. Shewynge theyr
teeth to threte and byte in to the other stonys redy to
be masonned / whiche oughte to haue be contynued and
28 Ioyned, to perourme the enterprise thus lefte as aHe to-
cutte and perysshed. The grasse groweth faste, and
roteth on theyr heddes / theyr teeth ben spredde wyth
mosse aH to-tourne / rusty and fuHe of lothlinesse.
32 The grete edyfyces are lefte vncouered in dyuerse
places / And shortely, alle falleth in-to ruyne, by cause
of her grete furoure.

and neglects
everything ;

the works are
stopped,

the city left
defenceless,

and grass grows
over the unfin-
ished buildings.

¶ But Iuno, the noble goddess, wedded wyff and

¹ orig. add

CAP. XIV.

spouse of Iubyter, seeynge that the goode renomme of Elysse myghte notte contryste ayenste her grete desire embrasid wyth the swete flamme of loue / Considerynge also that the *goodely and grete chere of Dydo myghte 4 be cause¹ to make Eneas to abyde in Cartage / wythoute to passe eny fether towarde ytalye / wolde speke to the goddesse Venus for to doo conuencyon of Eneas wyth the sayd Dydo / and thenne byganne to saye 8 vnto her, by a maner of derysion, the wordes herinne wrytten / “ Certes, Venus, thou and thy sone Cupydo are gretely to be praysed, and ye shaH doo a grete conqueste, whereof ye shaH be hadde in perpetueH 12 renommee / yf a woman myghte be by you two vaynquysshed, wherof the motyue that hath attysed you to that / & the cause whi ye haue ynoughe induced elysse to condescende to the loue of eneas, ys, 16 to my semyng, come for the drede that ye haue of the tyrauntes, and of theym of affryque / & also of theym of the highe waHes of our cytee of cartage For the wyhyche drede to pease, ye wyH doo alyaunee wyth 20 theym by meanes of the maryage of dydo wyth eneas, whiche thyng myght be broughte to effecte / so that ye wyH be faorable and gracyous towarde eneas, wythoute to bere hym fro hens forthe eny moleste or 24 lettynge / And for aHe debates to accorde and pease / and to brynge aHe noyes atte an ende, I gyue myn assente to a peas eternaHe, for the constructyoun and makynge of the sayd maryage as ye doo desire ; to the 28 whiche shaHe mowe dydo eassly acorde duryng this / that the grete furour enflammed wyth brennyng desire of loue esprysed wythin her sinewes / perse y^e bones of her presently ; & thenne, of one comyn assent, 32 we, Iuno and venus, goddesses, shaH haue aH the domynacyon & gouernente entierly of thise two peoples / that is to wytte, of the troians, in soo moche as toucheth

[* leaf D 5]

Juno, perceiuing Dido's love, and not wishing Aeneas to go to Italy,

proposes to Venus the marriage of Dido and Aeneas,

which will put a stop to all differences.

and give the two goddesses entire control over Carthage,

¹ orig. cause

theym of Eneas, that shalle be taken in dowayr to Dydo
for her maryage, and lyke wyse them of Thyre, that are
comyn *wyth Elysse, shaHe thenne be subgette vnto

CAP. XIV.

and the two
nations,

[* leaf D 5, back]

4 Enee, the whiche we shaHe Ioyne togydre; And of
theym two, we shaHe make aHe one people / Whereof
Cartage shaHe be peopled, and also the countrey :”

Trojan and
Tyrian, that
shall inhabit it.

8 **T**He whiche thynges thus sayd / Venus, that doubted
leest Iuno wolde accorde the forsayd maryage, to
the entente that Eneas shokde abyde in Cartage for this
cause, and sholde leue the enterpryse by hym made, to
goo and conquere the royalme of Ytalye / that Iuno
12 sayd that she hadde in her gouernance / was weH
gladde, feynunge to vnderstonde otherwyse the enten-
cyon of the sayd Iuno, wheronto she purueyd weHe
afterwarde; And aunsuerde vnto her, sayenge / “ he that
16 wolde gaynsaye this alyaunce / and wyth the, Iuno, to
stryue, for to lette thy deliberaeyon / sholde weH be
oute of his wytte. Yf thou woldeste accomplysse by
effecte, this that thou maynteneste be thy wordes / but

Venus's cautious
answer.

20 I am not weH certayne / yf Iubyter, the puyssante god /
that hath / the dysposicyons of aHe thynges in his
hande / shaHe be contente that the tyryns and the
troians shaHe people in comyn this eyte of Cartage
24 withoute some deuysion; And also yf our maryage and
alyaunce for to speke, shaHe be vnto hym aggreable /
And by cause thenne, that vnto the, Iuno, that arte
his wyffe and felawe, apperteyneth more better than to
28 any other to knowe of hym hys playsure, Thou shalte
vndertake this charge, yf hit playse the to goo without
taryeng, and I shaH folowe the aH of nyghe /” Whereof

She does not
express dis-
approval, but
thinks Jupiter
should be con-
sulted, which
she advises Juno
to do.

Juno undertakes

32 was wel content / & sayd in this manere: “ *syth that
I haue taken the charg of this werke, I wol teHe and
shewe clerly howe the thynges shaHe mowe be broughte
aboute. Eneas, and dydo sore taken wyth his loue, haue
36 purposed for to goo chasse and hunte the wilde bestes,

[* leaf D 6]

to manage the
matter.

CAP. XV.

Aeneas and Dido shall propose a hunt early next day.

Juno will raise a tempest and disperse the hunters,

so that Aeneas and Dido shall meet together in a cave,

unless Venus were unwilling, in which case Aeneas had better go at once.

incontynent that the sonne, makyng to morowe hys
 rysyng, shal haue transmused hys shynyng beemes for
 to IHustre clere aHe the erthe / And whan they shal be
 to the vttr-moost of the game, weHe chaffed afre the 4
 bestes, I shaHe sodaynly make the ayer to wexe obscure,
 and aHe blacke replenysshed with hayle / rayne, and
 horryble tempeste by the ayer, and by the erthe wyndes
 and grete orages / I shaH girde aHe the heuens wyth 8
 thondres, lyghtnynges choruscaeyous¹ and merueyHouse
 tourmentes that shaHe rayne the countrey ouer ryghte
 Impetuously, so that aHe the ayer shaHe seme to be
 couered wyth the nyght fuHe blak and obscure / Thenne 12
 shaHe aHe the hunters flee awaye, and othre, fro the
 sayde chasshe, wyth so grete haste that they shaHe not
 wene to fynde sone ynoughe a place for to be in saute /
 And by thys manere I shaHe doo that the duke Eneas 16
 and Dydo fleyng the wedryng, shaHe rendre himself
 bothe togydre aHe alone, as by veraye destynacye, and
 by rencountre of aduenture, vnder a grete hyHe, withyn
 a caue atte the ende of the forest / And there they 20
 shaHe fynde me, Iuno, that am lady of the maryages,
 and doo couple them two wyth my sone hyemen, whiche
 is named the god of weddyng / And / therfore, yf I
 wyst that thou, venus, were not of accorde fo[r] the 24
 maryag of eneas to dydo, I shulde make_hym fyrst to
 departe wythout eny respyte /”

¶ Of the grete tempest and storme² atte
 maryage of theym / 28

¶ Capitulo Decimoquinto

[* If D 6, back]

Venus does not contradict, but laughs at Juno's

* **V**ENUS was thenne weHe contente, wythoute ony
 contradyctyon / and byganne to laughe strongly
 of the perfytte begylyng that Iuno hade fonnde soo 32
 soone for to accomplysse this maryage / Wherof she

¹ (?) for choruscaeyons

² orig. storne

was syn after weHe deceyued, by cause that she made it
 to couertely and close, wythoute testymonage / and
 wythoute the knowleche of Iubyter : The whiche
 4 enterprise thus made / after that the sprynge of the
 daye and the poynte of the sonne hadde putte awaye
 the nyghte tenebrose, the brackener hadde dystournd
 the herte in to his busshe, and caste his trayne / The
 8 hunters wyHe that men spredde and sette the deffences,
 putte theym in grete appareyHe for to goo to the woode /
 where as sholde be the chasse / Assembled theyr ren-
 nyngne houndes, two and two togyder / and chose theym
 12 one from the other, for to assortte theym beste in the
 pathes ; Some wyth the brakkenere, for to be atte the
 reysynge of the becest, for to renne after ; The other
 for to be sette atte the relese ; and the other for to
 16 enternedde and redresse theyr brackes, retches, and
 bloode houndes, for to take the beste better wyth foree.
 Toke theyr staues, and theyr hornes, and other thynges
 necessarye for to fuH make and accomplysse the better
 20 a fayr dysporte in huntynge, behouynge to a chasse
 royale ¶ And after, of a nother parte, the barons, the
 knyghtes and esquyers of the noble quene Dydo, dyde
 putte theym in araye, and came there to the palayse
 24 aHe redy, waytynge that she sholde come oute for to
 mounte vpon her fayr palfrey, whiche, wyth other for
 her ladyes and gentyH women, was in the courte aHe
 preste, appareylled and couered wyth a grete cloth of
 28 purple, gnawynge his bytte garmysshed wyth botones of
 golde, *aHe charged wyth the scume of the horse. And
 soone yssued oute the lady, moche nobly accompanied,
 that hadde a grete maunteHe of veluet cramoysein, pour-
 32 fyHed rounde aboute wyth brawdrye, moche enryched
 wyth precyous stones, after the custome and manere of
 that tyme / Her herys bounden wyth thredes of golde /
 and her ryche gyrdleH, that appyered moche precyous,
 36 aHe a-boue her raymentes / She hadde also a fayr

CAP. XV.

design, which afterwards fails, because Juniper had not been consulted.

Preparations for the hunt :

arrangements those of a later mediæval character.

Assembling of the hunting party at the palace,

[* leaf D 7]

Dido and her horse both richly apparelled in similar fashion.

CAP. XV. tarcays, couered wyth fyne cloth of damaske, aHe fulHe
of arowes / and therwythaHe the bowe for to shoote to
the wylde beestes, and otherwyse atte her playsaunce.
Thus appoynted / she mounted on horsebacke for to 4
goo to the sayd chasse, wyth hir barons, knyghtes, and
Yolus is there, her gentyH women / and also the lytyHe Yolus or
ascanyus, that hadde putte hym selfe in poynte for to
also his father Aeneas, conduytte the quene wyth his fadre Eneas / the whiche, 8
wyth a ryght grete and fayer companye ridynge afore
the lady, appyered aboue aH the other, wythout ony
comparyson, the moste fayre / Lyke as the beaulte of
who in his beauty is like Apollo, god of the sun, the god Appollo, that is, the sonne, doeth appyere and 12
shewe vpon the flode of Exanco, whan he cometh in
wynter in-to the cyte of Pathere in lycye / to gyue his
aunsweres,¹ and kepe the courte of his grete godhede /
And fro thens, whan the syx monethes of the wynter 16
ben passed / and that he wyHe retourne in to the Isle
of Delon, for to make semblable his aunsuers duryng
the syx monethes of the somer, the places partyculer
of Crete, as Agatyrse and Dryopes, doo ryse and goo 20
ayenste hym / for to see his grete beaulte / whan he,
comynge, casteth his bemes vpon costes and mountaynes
of the countrey in manere of golden heres descendynge
as well as of his favourite haunts.
* leaf D 7, back] from his hed, and as the lighte of torches *sparklynge, 24
weH enflammed, wherby aHe thynges renewen them at
his commynge, as the trees that to theym maken gar-
landes of leues grene / the erthe taketh a newe cote
fuH subtyly weued aftre y^e werke of fyn gras, powdred 28
with floures of a hundred thousande maners of colours /
The byrdes renewen theyre swete songe graeyouse / The
bestes becomen fyers, and of proude manere ; The ayer
purifyeth and clenseth hym selfe for to receyue the 32
Impressyons of influences of this god Apollo, to his
newe commynge, whiche is so fayre and sore desyred of
aH thynges / Lyke wyse in aHe exceHence surmounted
Yolus exceeds

¹ orig. anuswers

the yonge yolus aH the other that were in y^e ladies
 felaship for to goo to the sayd chasse. And when
 they were come in the dales and narowe wayes of the
 4 busshes, vpon their courses for to destourne the bestes
 that yssued oute of their denes, with grete effortes
 renny[n]ge in the playne vafeyes and mountaynes by
 dyverse places, the one opposyte to the othre in confu-
 8 sion merueyllouse / The lytyH Ascanius or Yolus, that in
 this toke grete playsure, Ranne aftre vpon a corrageous
 hors alwayes Redy for to renne, so that he ouer Ranne
 often the bestes, and was before them / And some tyme
 12 abode behynde, aH he wrothe of the grete cowardyse of
 these bestes / Desyrynge to Recountre a wylde bore, or
 some lyon that fledde not, for to fyghte with hym /
 ¶ Duryng the tyme of the whiche chasse, And that
 16 aH the assistents were departed, And stronge chaffed,
 rennyng aftre the bestes In many and dyuerse coun-
 trees / Iuno the goddessse, wyHyng accomplysse / the
 maryge of Encas to dydo, thrughe suche meanes as ben
 20 spoken here aboue, byganne to make the ayre to be
 troubled, And to couere the blewe cote of the * heuens
 azured, with cloudes blacke and obscure, fuH of wynde
 Impetuouse / of Rayne and of heyle / of thondre &
 24 tempeste, aH he medled togydre / Of the whiche the for-
 sayde hunters apperceyued them not, nor made no force
 for it, withstandyng the grete entermyse and besy
 occupaicion that they had In hande, to the poursiewte
 28 and destournyng of the bestes, wherof euery of hem
 was atte astryffe who sholde doo best, for to be praysed
 and acyured the grace of the ladyes / vnto the tyme
 that the sayde cloudes were weH thyk gadred with the
 32 stronge wedryng that surprised them aH atones, and
 soubdaynely enuaysshed them and tormented Rygth
 asperly with Rayne myseH, and grete heyle stones
 amonge / Aftre, cam a stronge wynde lowe by the
 36 grounde, that agettet them in suche a wyse that they

CAP. XV.

all the rest
in beauty.They begin to
hunt.Prowess of
Yolus.Juno, to accom-
plish her design,
brings on a
storm.

[* leaf D 8]

The hunters are
dispersed by an
awful tempest,rain, hail, and
tremendous
wind,

CAP. XV. were lyfte vp on hyghe fro the grounde / and were
caste backwarde / forewarde, and atte eyther side, whan
they wende to haue drawn hem selfe, one towarde
other, by the thondre and tempeste that descende-⁴
doun from the clowdes, and ranne by the grounde aHe
euf[l]ammed, in suche moeuyng and perturbacyon, that
it appiered of pryface / that the heuens were broken
and parted a sondre, wheroute yssued fyre ardaunte /⁸
whiche IHumyned attones aHe the erthe / And afre
that this lighte was goon, the ayer retourned in-to a
grete derknesse / for the grete Impetuosite of the orage,
as thoughe it had be nyghte / For the whiche cause,¹²
the tyryns and the troiens, wyth the hunters / and other
of the sayd chasse / and also the lityH Yolus, sone to
the sone of Venus / that is, Eneas, and neuwe of dar-
danus his grete vncl, whyche was the firste prynce¹⁶
that edyfyed Troye / were constrayned for to flee / and
to seche, euery one after hys power, some vyHages or
habitacyons for to wythdrawe theym selfe, whiles that
the faHyng *of the reyne russhynge doun from the²⁰
mountaynes descended in to the valeyes. Also of a
nother parte, the quene dydo and Eneas, in fleeynge,
founden a caue vnder a grete roche, in y^{e1} whiche they
hidde theym selfe bothe togyder alone / & ther the²⁴
goddesse Iuno, quene and patronesse of the commocyon
nupeyaHe, by the assente of venus, that lyghtened the
torches fo[r] to receyue hiemen, the god of weddyng,
accompanied wyth the erthe, moder to the firste goddes²⁸
whiche for to doo this / hadde prepared that secrete
place, and the reyny wedre therto / propyce and conuen-
able whan they hem selfe, goddesses of the watres &
fontaynes russhyng doun in grete haboundaunce from³²
the toppe of the mountaynes / assembled & made
thenne the forsayd maryage / of Eneas and of dydo,
wythoute other wytnesses to be by / but the god & the

dreadful thunder

and lightning.

The hunters
disperse.

[* leaf D S, back]

Aeneas and Dido,
alone, take
refuge in the
same cave.¹ orig. y^t = that

goddesses that be declared aboue / wherof folowed
 after / that this daye was the firste cause of the grete
 euylls and deth of dydo, the whiche coude neuer be
 4 dysmoueyed from the same, by her grete vertues and
 merytes, ne her laudable renomme, and wolde not kepe
 her secrete, as she dyde afore / but in publique, for to
 gyue a coloure to her faHe / confessed hym to be her
 8 husbonde / And therof was grete spekyng made, that
 sone ranne thorough the cyties of Lybie and of
 Affryque / wherby arose one euyHe goddesse caHyd
 fame or renomnee, whiche is more lighte than ony
 12 other thyng / and by mobylite vygorouse encreaseth
 her forse in rennyng / Atte the firste she is ryghte
 lityH, for doubte that she hath to be seen ; and anone
 after, she maketh her selfe grete, and mounteth vp in-to
 16 the ayer / And in vyagyng thrughe the landes, hideth
 her hede betwyx the clowdes / And thenne she vttreth
 and sayeth aHe that she wyHe, by cause that she is
 ferre from the partyes. And it is not to be merueyHed
 20 yf she be wycked, as I saye, *for she was wickedly be-
 gotten, and for an euyH occasyon / the erthe, granmodre
 of the godde, was ones wrooth wyth theym, And for to
 doo hem a grete Iniure, engendred two horryble mon-
 24 stres / the fyrst hight Seceo, and the seconde Antheledo,
 whiche were geauntes, stronge and puyssaunt aboue aHe
 othre men of that tyme, and exempt from the subiectyon
 of aHe the dyuynite, and had a suster named renomnee
 28 or fame, that was the last procreated / and in signe of a
 mocke, was to her youen the facultee and power for to
 reherce and saye aHe thinges that sholde come in her
 mouthe / and to speke ayenst aH folke, be it kynges,
 32 princes, or lordes or othre knyghtes, ladyes, gentyH
 wimen / marchauntes, labourers, and maydens, goddes,
 goddesses, & theyre sequele, withoute hauyng rewthe ne
 regarde to no manere of lesynge, no more than to the
 36 trouthe of the dede ; & to her were gyuen wynges aHe

CAP. XV.

This the beginning of Dido's sorrows, as she would after acknowledge Aeneas as her husband, and that in public.

Description of Fame.

[* sign. E JJ

Her birth,

her functions,

her wings.

CAP. XV.

of fedders, and fete and handes and body and hede,
 wherof was made a monstre fulle terrible, that hath as
 many eyen in her hede, euermore wakyng, and aHe
 wyde open / as she hath fedders vpon her, and as many 4
 eerys / mouthes, and tonges in lykewyse, that spoken
 styHe without ceasse / And for her talkynge, neuerthe-
 lesse cesseth not to herken, and hereth weH a[l]waye
 that that she hereth. AHe the nyght she fleeth betwix 8
 the clowdes / and renneth ouer the erthe, spred abrode,
 rushynge, and makynge grete noyse as thondre & tem-
 pestes, nor can neuere wake so longe that she can gete
 luste to slepe She sette herself somtyme atte the gates 12
 of the townes, casteHes, fortresses, and of grete lordes
 houses, with the porters and mynystres, for to questyone
 theym what rewle is kept in the towne / of the astate
 of the kynge and of the princes, and of theyre moost 16
 famylyer seruauntes / Aftre, she goeth vp in to the haH,
 and somtyme within the chambre and *hyde herse[l]f in
 corne[r]s, and behynde the tapytes ; a nother tyme vpon
 the highe pynacles and toures / and wyth theym that 20
 kepe the day watches, whiche beholden aHe the towne
 ouer ; & nothyng is there so secrete, be it in house or
 in strete, but it is sone manifested vnto her / The grete
 eytees & bygge townes, she doeth trouble somtyme 24
 wyth sorowe and yre by her reportynge / AHe is goode
 for her / and aHe is to her paye. AHe thynges wherof
 she aduyseth herself / be it good or euil, trouthe or
 lesynge, she telleth and reporteth aHe to her guyse. 28
 This meschyne of whome I speke, that Ioyeth her to
 recyte asweH the euyH as the goode, and more lesyng
 than trouthe, byganne to renne by the townes, eytees
 castelles & other places / recountyng vnto aH theym 32
 that she fonde / how Eneas, of the lynce of the troians,
 was come in Cartage, of whom the fayr dydo had
 enamoured herself, and bothe togydre helde hemselfe
 aHe the winter, passynge the tyme in grete playsaunces / 36

Fame—her eyes
and tongues.

She haunts all
places, and

[* sign. E.j, back]

finds out and
spreads abroad
everything.

She spreads
reports of Aeneas
and Dido over
Africa.

festes / playes & sportynges, aH occupied In theyr
 delices / wythout to puruey to the gouernaunce of theyr
 Royalmes lordshypes, as though they had forgotten it,
 4 aHe dedycated to theyr playsures & wylles / how be it
 that it was other wyse / And in passyng through the
 landes, reportyng aH this tidynges, was aduertysed
 that the kynge Yarbass, resident in the same contrey,
 8 and sone adressed her selfe towarde hym the streyght
 cours / And to hym recounted the manere, How dydo
 hadde esprysed her owne herte wyth the loue of Enee /
 and aHe the thynges here a-fore wryten / wherof this
 12 Yarbass, that was kynge of the grete Libye, hadde a
 grete dyspyte, by cause that this lady hadde somtyme
 refused hym, that was a grete lorde / and of the lynce
 of the goddes, sone to god Iupyer a renouse, that men
 16 adoured in Lybye / and of one Nyuyse, goddessse of the
 fontaynes, * doughter to Gzamas, that had be rauyshed. [** sign. E ij*]
 This Yarbass was ryghte deuote, and in his tyme had
 construed, edyfyed, and made an hondred temples wythin
 20 his royaume, wyth an hondred othre sacraryes, in whiche
 he had consecrated the fyre brennyng without ceasse,
 that he called the daye wathe pardurable of the godde :
 And made there contynueHy so many sacryfyces, that
 24 the erth aHe there about, was aHe made fatte and moly-
 fyed wyth the blode of the bestes that were there
 Immolated to the honoure of the goddes / And repleny-
 shed wyth aHe manere of good odours & swete smellynge,¹
 28 for the grete haboundaunce of the garlandes made of
 floures that he gadred in that place. And whan he was
 adcerteyned of the dooyng of dydo and of Eneas, he
 was therof vtterly dysplaysed / wherby a grete acumu-
 32 lacyon of yre and wrathe he begate wythin the roote of
 hys herte; and as tryste, sorowfuHe, and besyde hymself,
 wyst not to whom complayne / but onely that he wente
 in to the temple before the awter / and in loynyng his

CAP. XV.

The reports
come to Lybia.Anger of Yarbass,
King of Lybia,
on hearing them.

His temples

and sacrifices.

His wrath.

¹ orig. smellyuge

CAP. XVI.
Yarbas prays to
Jupiter.

handes togydre, made the prayer and requeste that
foloweth / ¶ “ O Iupiter, almyghty god, for whome folke
of Moryenne, where is made the roughe tapysserye in
pycture aHe dyuerse: haue made an assemble magny- 4
fyque of metes and of wynes for to kepe a solempneHe
feste in the worshyp of thy godhede / knowest thou
not oure sorowe? hast thou for euer determyned to
solace and dysporte thy self euermore wyth the thondre 8
and weddrynges, for to gyue vnto vs tremoure and
feere / wylte thou feere vs onely wyth thy fyres, by the
sodaynly sente throughe the cloudes in grete tempeste
and murmure, and occupye thy self aHe to that, wythout 12
rightwisnes to be by the made vnto euery chone / ”

Will Jupiter
only frighten
mortals with his
terrors?

[* sign. E ij,
back]

* How Yarbas complayned hym to Iupiter
of eneas that edefyed the cyte of Cartage /
and how Iupiter sente sodaynly Mer- 16
curyus towarde eneas, for to make hym to
retorne in to the countrey of ytalye.

¶ Capitulo xvj

He complains to
Jupiter that
Dido has
rejected his
love

“ **W**E complayne to thy ryghtwysnesse, of a 20
woman whiche is come in to the lymytes
of our londe, habandonned & as lost, named fenyce or
dydo / that hath take vpon her to edyfie a cyte of lityl
pryce, that she doo to be called cartage, to the whiche 24
by curtoysie we haue gyven londe habytable, & lawes
for to gouerne her peple / and haue required her ofte
tymes to be our wyf & spouse / but therof she made
none acompte / and hath habandonned hersilfe in aHe 28
manere poyntes to receyue the false eneas, as maister &
lord of aHe her londe / The whiche seductor of ladies,
as parys that enwedded y^e fayr heleyne, kepeth himself
in maner as a woman, in their companye, wyth his longe 32
heres that he maketh to be enoynted & kemed for to
be yelow as golde, makyng them to be bounden in a

and accepted
Aeneas,

coyffe rounde a-boute his hed / wythout to thynke CAP. XVI.
 vpon none other thynges, but only the delites of
 wymenly love, wherin he is contynueffi occupied wyth
 4 her; and we, that aHe the tyme of our lyf hane serued
 to thy temple / doon many sacrificees & oblaeyons to
 thi lawde & praysinge / are dyspysed & habandouned, while he, Yarb^s,
 wythoute to bryng there-from some rewarde or a- is despised after
 8 vantage." the whiche yarb^s, makyng this his com-
 playnt and prayer within¹ the temple, byfore the
 awters, the god almyghty Iupyter, that wolde exalte his
 requeste, tourned hys loke a side towarde the walles Jupiter hears
 12 and habytaantes of the cytee of Cartage, where he
 knewe the two louers, wythoute remembraunce of theyr
 first goode fame that they hadde forgotten : And thenne
 called to hym Mercuryus, whiche ys * inter-pretour of [* sign. E liij]
 16 the goddes, And commaunded hym to doo the mes-
 sage here wryten, saynge / "¶ My sone mercure, goo
 lyghtly, take thy wynges empared with fedders / CaHe and sends Mer-
 the swete wyndes, and goo doune wyth them towarde cury to Aeneas,
 20 Eneas, the duke troien, whyche is nowe taryed wythin
 Cartage for to enhabyte there / hauynge noo mynde
 ne recordaunce for to goo conquere the cytees that
 by-fore haue be youen vnto hym / shewyng vnto hym
 24 that his modre venus, the fayre goddessse, dyde not
 promytte vnto vs that he shulde be suche a seductour
 of wymen, and of lyf determyned to commuynque
 wyth them / Whan atte her requeste we kept and with a rebuke
 28 saued hym two tymes ayenst the grekes hys enemyes,
 And gaffe hym vycторыe one tyme ayenst Dyomedes,
 and a nothre tyme ayenst AchyHes, whan atte bothe
 the tymes he enterprysed for to doo armes ayenst theym
 32 before the grete Troye / But vnto vs dyde promyse hys
 sayde modre, to make hym more cheualerouse than eny
 othre of hys tyme, in suche a wyse that he shulde be
 dygne by excellence aboue aHe othre, to obteyne by

¹ orig. writhin

CAP. XVI.

batayHes the conqueste vycoryouse of the ryche and
 second empyre of Ytalye / And that thrughe hys
 grete worthynesse and hyghe fayttes, he shulde brynge
 vp ageyne the grete and fyrst renomme of the troiens, 4
 and alle the worlde subgeit to hys lawes / And yf he
 had hys herte so harde Inclyned to the playsure of his
 fowHe delycees, That the desyre gloryouse to conquere
 one suche lordshyp / coude not mowe bryng hym 8
 there-to as touchythe honour of hys owne persone /
 Atte the leste that he have consideracyon that his sone
 ascanius, to whome afre his deth are due his grete
 domynacyons, be not putte ther-from thrughe hys 12
 deffawte / What mystreth hym to edyfie cartage, &
 enhabyte emonge his ennies, for to leue & forsake the
 no*ble posteryte of ytalye, and the ryche possessyons
 of lauyne / goo thou forth incontynent, to gyue hym 16
 commaundement in oure byhalue, that he parfournyshe
 hys vyage ; for this is in effect thy message, and ende of
 thy legacyon /” The whiche Mercuryus, desyrynge to
 acomplyshe the commaundement of his granfadre 20
 Inpyter / appoynted hym self fuHe soone for to fuHe-
 fyHe his wyHe / and fyrst he made fast atte hys heles
 hys grete wynges ouer gilt, that bare hym with the
 wyndes, asweHe ouer see as ouer erthe, hyghe and lowe, 24
 where someuere ho wolde be, and toke the cepter
 ImperyaHe of hys dyuynyte / by meanes of the whiche
 he drewe some sowles out of heHe, and made hem to
 come vp ahighe to the lyghte / the other he toke out 28
 of lyff, and sent hem in to heHe / Also wyth his rode
 he made some to faHe a slepe, without neuere to wake ;
 and the other he made to watche without ceasse /
 And with this rodde fleeynge, he deuysed the foure 32
 wyndes, and departed the troublouse clowdes that he
 recountred in hys waye / And trauersynge from one
 lande to another, he perceyued in lokinge aHe of ferre,
 the hyghe sholders and sydes of the strong Athlas, that 36

If Aeneas is so
 given to pleasure
 as to forget his
 honour and
 Italy, he should
 at any rate
 remember his
 son.

[* leaf E iij,
 back]

Mercury puts on
 his wings and
 takes his rod.

Powers of his
 rod.

He flies towards
 the earth.

CAP. XVI.

susteyned the heuens vpon his hedde. This Athlas was a geant, strong and myghty a-boue aHe other / & bycause that y^e heuens were not stedfast of one syde, & 4 sometyme dyde bowe atte other part, the goddes dide tourne hym in to a hyghe mountayne, for to susteyne the heuens. And vpon his hed, in stede of herys, he is aH garnysshed of sapyn trees and of hooly trees, that 8 be contynually beten & cast of the wyndes, and sore couered with clowdes fuHe derke / his sholdres are couered with snowe atte aHe season of the yere ; & out of his grete chyne, issuen grete flodes, & fontaines 12 rening doune without cesse alonge his terrible berde, of whiche the borders and shores in stede of *heres ben garnyshed wyth thyeke yse / And incontynent the sayd mercurys drewe thyderwarde, for to festye the sayd 16 athlas, *that* was his vncles brother, vnto his moder named laye / & sette hymself vpon his sholdres, where he was a whyle to reste hym / And after toke his flyghte as a byrde, streyght towarde the see of lybye, fleyng lowe, & 20 syn hie, restyng hymself vpon the roches alonge the shores of the see, takyng hys dysportes as a byrde that pruneth or pycketh her / so that he cam by processe of tyme, from a-boue the sholdres of his sayd 24 vncle, vnto the sandy shores of the see of Lybye / & from thens he entred wythin cartage, where he fonde eneas, that buylded towres & other grete edyfices, aH occupied for to make vp the cytee of cartage / and had 28 a bystorye or wepen crysolite / as it were a lityl swerde crosseles, that hafted was wyth iasper, wel enryched & garnysshed wyth fyne golde, hangyng at a silken lase by his side / and hadde a sleue vpon his lifte harme, 32 of fyne cremoysein aHe drawn ouer wyth golde wyer, right wauytanly wouen / whiche the ryche dydo had made wyth her owne handes, & had gyue it to him ; to the whiche eneas, the sayd mercurys adressed him, & 36 said in this manere / “ Man effemynate, wythout honour,

Mercury rests a space with Atlas, his uncle, who supports the heavens,

[* sign. E iiii]

and then flies to Lybia, where

he finds Aeneas building in Carthage.

there / wythstandyng the inuetyue monycyons doon
 to hym by the *commanndement* of the goldis, & knowe
 not what to doo / so moche he is esprysed of sodayn
 4 sorowe immense / nor by what wayes he maye notyfy
 thees thynges to Dydo, ne what termes he shaH take
 at the begynnyng of his wordes / hymself to valyde, &
 to gyue a coloure to his byfaHe / & abode longe in
 8 this thoughte doubtouse and varyable, wythoute to
 sette his purpose to condescende to ony parte of that
 he wold do, vnto * the ende that it semed hym for the
 beste to caHe thre of hys knyghtes / One named
 12 Nestor, a nother Sergeste / and the thirde is the
 stronge Cloant; to whome he commaunded, that aHe
 secretly they sholde doo make redy his shyppes /
 assemble theyre folke / take theyre armeures and aHe
 16 other appareylle, for to depart incontinēt *that* he
 shold ordeyne; And that they sholde doo this conertly,
 in dyssymulyng their goyng / to thende, that yf it were
 aperceyued by some waye / men shold wene that it
 20 were a manere of a feynynge :

CAP. XVII.

not knowing
 what to do in
 this emergency :

[* leaf E 5]

then calls
 Mnestheus,
 Sergestus, and
 Cloanthus, and
 bids them pre-
 pare the fleet
 secretly for
 departure.

¶ How dydo, knowyng the departyng of
 eneas, ranne through the cytee of cartage,
 as a woman desperat, and from herselfe.

24

Capitulum xvij

THe felawes right gladly dyd fulfyHe ryght soone
 the *commanndement* of eneas / the whiche,
 trowynge that dydo sholde neuer haue thoughte vpon
 28 y^e brekyng of soo grete a loue, nor that he wolde
 habandoune & leue her, stroof wyth hymself / by what
 wayes he myghte signifye it vnto her, in what wordes /
 or what hour / and in what maner, moost honeste, for to
 32 gyue her lesse sorowe. But the quene dydo, atysed of
 the grete couctyse, enflammed wyth desirouse loue that
 can neuer be sacyate ynoughe / felte firste this barate /
 by cause that the fyne louer that alwayes kepeth hym

They obey
 gladly.

Aeneas doubts
 how to break the
 matter to Dido.

Dido suspects
 Aeneas.

CAP. XVIII. selfe wythin his warde, and fyndeth noo thyng soo sure but that he putteth it in adoubte, can not be lyghtely deceyued. For fame, that euyH goddessse, reporteth vnto her that Eneas made his nauye to be 4 armed and repayred, wherby she ymagnyeth fyrste / that he dyde soo for to departe / and goo oute of her lande; & Incontynente, as aHe furyouse, & oute of her wytte, toke to styre her selfe, & ranne through y^e citee 8 of cartage as a mad woman, as thyas y^e grete prestresse dyd in tyme *passed, whan she wente to incyte and somen the matrones and yonge maydens, to renne furyously and wythout shame, thrughe the towne by 12 nyghte to the feest / and sacryfyces of the goddes Bachus and Venus, atte the daye of theyr solemnyte

Dido hears of his preparations,

and rushes out madly into the city.

[* leaf E 5, back]

¶ How dydo sorowfully bewaylled the departyng of Eneas, by swete and amyable 16 wordes
Capitulum xviiij

Rushing wildly about the streets, she encounters Aeneas, and tries with loving words to persuade him to remain,

ANd thus rennyng aboute, she recounted Eneas, to whom by grete dyscomforte, reforced wyth merueyllouse sorowe / wherof her herte was surprysed 20 in gret accumulacyon of extreme dysplaysur, she sayd these wordes, halfe by manere of a reproche, in dolaunte lamentacyons, rewthes and complayntes / “ O ryght dere eneas, sedyicious & ryght cruel / how haste thou had 24 the herte so vntreue, to thynke so grete a treson / as for to wyH departe out of my lande sodaynly, wythout to make me a-knowen therof / Is there thenne nothyng in the worlde that can make the to abyde here? nother the 28 grete loue that is bytwyx vs bothe, wherof we haue somoche loued eche other, the grete recuel that I haue doon to the / the grete ayde & secours, the worshyp that *thou* hast had of me, whan I receyued the in-to my 32 londe / that tyme that thou come firste to me / as a man exyled and naufragred; nor the deth horryble & crueH that for the I must receiue, wherof I shaH redyly

reminds him how she received him after his shipwreck,

slee my selfe at thoure of thy departyng / nor the CAP. XVIII.
 paynes & traueylles that thenne I shaH must endure.
 O man, of aH other, the moost forened oute of thy wyt,
 4 & doled out of y^e sure waye / how in this harde wedder warns him
 of wynter, *that* the wyndes ben in their furye / y^e see full against the
 of tempest & of grete voraygeouse wawes, & the tyme winter tempests.
 aHe indisposed more than euer it was / hast *thou* purposed
 8 to mounte vpon y^e see, & to flee from my presence / for
 to goo with a lityl puissaunce to *werre and here [* leaf E 6]
 greuauance to ytalye, a strange londe / wher-from thou and the danger
 shalt be sone expelled at thys tyme / For yf thy wiHe of going to
 12 were to goo to troye, thyn owne londe / yf she were Italy ;
 yet in her beyng / & that thou were weH sure to be
 there honestly receyued / yet thou oughtest not to goo
 there, nor to take the see now, wythstandyng the
 16 daungeours aforsayd / Alas, fle thou not from me! therof
 I requyre the, & admonest the, for pyte of the sorowe
 that I bere, and for the grete teeris flusshyng douw
 from myn eyen, that this to doo ineyten & somone the,
 20 by the swetnes / by thy weH wyHyng, and by the
 yeftes & aHe other thynges that I haue doon vnto the,
 aHe at thyne owne wyH, in suche a wyse that no thyng
 I haue rescrued for my selfe / but that it was aHe
 24 habandoned vnto the, more redyli than to myn owne
 body / By oure kyssyng and swete cuHyng, by oure
 byhauyng and louely countenaunces / by our Ioyes invokes their
 and playsures delycouse, in fyne loue bytwyx vs past loves and
 28 mutueH, wherof we haue loued eche other soo that in
 noo wyse my dyligente thoughte hadde neuer no wyHe
 to be crueH anemste¹ the, but hath be atte aHe tymes [1anent]
 desirous for taccomplysshe, wythout ony gaynsayng,
 32 aHe *that* I knewe was to thy playsur / And thenne yf
 I haue deserued to haue some good of the / & yf thou to induce him to
 euer toke playsunce in ony thyng that by me cam, stay ;
 playse the, thenne, to haue mercy of this poure desolate
 36 frende, that shalle be sone broughte to the poynte

CAP. XVIII. mortaHe, and my cytee dispeopled / and to grete ruynes,
 recounts the dangers his going will expose her to from the Lybians and Tyrians,
 [* leaf E 6, back] delynered by thyn infortunate goynge; And wyH
 laments the loss of her good name,
 fears she will fall into the hands of Pygmalion or Yarbas,
 and laments that she has no child to remind her of Aeneas,
 change thy courage / yf my requeste and prayers can
 haue place of merite to acqyre mercy ayenst the. thou 4
 seest that the folke of Lybye / the crueH tyrauntes of
 Myronde, and they of the cytee of Thyre, that many
 tymes I haue offended, hate and haue enuye atte me;
 for the; *my chastyte pudyque and aHe hee praysynge 8
 is there loste; And my first fame & goode renomme,
 wherbi I was electe & taken vp to the sterres as a
 veraye goddesse / is now, by thy departynge, sodaynly
 extyncted. why wolde thou thenne habandoume and 12
 leue me, thy kynde loue, dyscomforted, Redy to deie /
 for to flee, passinge by this countrey, lyke as an hoste
 that lightly forgeteth his lodgyng and the place that
 he goeth fro, & departeth Ioyously wythout to haue 16
 eny rewthe / therunto haa I perceyue weH, that of the
 I wende to haue my frende, my true husbände &
 espouse / & no thing abideth with me nowe / but
 onely the name of an hoste. what can I wayte for nowe? 20
 O, what recomfort may I haue, that am voyde from aHe
 hope / and noon other is there / but to faHe in-to
 the handes of Pigmalion, my crueHe brother, kyng of
 Thyre / that shaHe comme take my cyte, and put aHe 24
 to destructyon, and brynge me to mendycyte; Or
 that Yarbas, kyng of Gectuses, that I haue so ofte
 indygned / for to auenge hys Iniuryes, shaHe reduce
 me in-to captiuite / Atte leste, yf afore thy harde 28
 departynge, I had had of the, som lynce, or som lyteH
 Encas / that I myght haue seen often playnge in my
 haHe, for to take theratte som comforte, wheryn I
 shulde haue take my dysport / thinkynge vpon the 32
 remembraunce of the IoyfuH playsaunce that I haue
 had of thy presence / whyche shulde asswage the
 harde dysplaysaunce that I shaHe haue of thyn
 absence, I shulde thynke that I were not so sore 36

wasted, nor aHe togydre habaundouned, as presently I am /” CAP. XIX.

¶ How dydo, alle in a rage, complayned
4 her to Eneas and to the goddes.

¶ Capitulo xix.

OF the whiche wordes, Eneas not moeuynge hym self
in nowyse / but in holdyng hys syght alwayes /
8 Immoyle atte anothre syde than vpon dydo, & sighynge
sore * in his herte for the loue that he had hadde to her,
sayd in this manere / “ Certes, quene, I answere not, but
that thou haste deserued of me moche more of goodes
12 than I can nombre, or by som wyse thynke ne telle ;
and so shaH I remembre elysse as longe as lyffe shaH
abyde wythin me / and by cause that thou hast spoken
first, I wyH teHe & shewe vnto the that I wold not haue
16 departed furtyuely out of thy land, vnknown¹ to the,
but sholde haue sygnified it vnto the / Also I am not
come hider determyned to wedde the / nor neuer toke
presumpcion in me for to do so, nor to take aliaunce
20 wyth the for suche a cause. And yf the goddes wolde
suffre that I myghte vse my lif to myn appetyte, & to
be at my fre wyH / I shold take habytacion in the
grete troye, wyth my kynsmen & other that are there
24 abyden, escaped from the distruction / And yet sholde
troye be made vp agayn by me / but the god Appollo
of the cytee of tymbre, wyth the oracles, in short, pre-
ceptyue of the lande of lycye / commaunden me to goo
28 in to ytalye. and syth that it muste be thus doon, it is
my lande² & my desire to accomplyshe aHe theyr wyHe /
And it semeth that *thou* oughte not in no wyse to repre-
hende me, ne to haue³ enuye vpon y^e troians, of theyr
32 goynge in-to ytalye, a strong lande, out of theyr naeyon /
sith that *thou* art of thire, come from the meane regyons

[* leaf E 7]

Aeneas acknow-
ledges her
deserts, says he
would not have
gone secretly,
and had not
presumed to
marry her.

His own wish
was to rebuild
Troy,

but Appollo
commands him
to go to Italy,
and he must
accomplish the
will of the gods.

¹ orig. unkonwen ² Fr. pays. Strong, l. 32, is *estrange*. ³ orig. hane

CAP. XIX.

of fenyce, to enhabyte in libye, & to take thy playsure
 in thy grete edyfices of cartage, that thou doost make
 presently for to preside in hit / forsakyng the swete
 grounde, moder to thy byrth. For to a peple yssued 4
 out of strange lande, is licyte to seke strange places for
 theyr / dweHyng. And it sholde be a shame to me,
 that haue enterprysed the conquest of ytalye, to reside
 in this land of lybie, wythoute to accomplishe my wyage; 8
 whiche thyng for to doo, I am incyted in dremys by
 the soule of my fader Anchisis / the whiche, atte aHe
 * tymes that the nyght obscure couereth the landes
 of her shadowes humyde / whan the sterres togyder 12
 maken theyr rysyng / apyereth byfore me vndre the
 speche of a terryble ymage / strongly indygned, and
 ayenste me sore moeued. Also of a nother side I am
 sore conturbed wyth a drede merucyHous, for the grete 16
 Iniurye that I doo to my dere sone Ascanius, whiche,
 by my longe taryenge, I doo pryue of the possession
 of the royaume of ytalye / wherof the successyon is vnto
 hym due of ryghte heredytatHe / and by veraye des- 20
 tynacy after my deth / but there is no more / by cause
 that thou shalte not wene / that of my selfe I haue
 enterprysed this besines for to leue the / yet in trouth,
 and also I swere it by thy hedde, and also by my owne, 24
 that Mercurye, the gret messenger and grete Interpretour
 of the goddys, hath ben hastely sente fleyng by the
 ayer from Iupyter, souerayne god, whiche hath brought
 me maundemente for to departe aHe incontynent / I 28
 haue seen hym manifestly, in lyght of godhed, to entre
 the walles of thy cytee / & aH clerly of hym herde his
 voys wyth myn eerys properly. wherfore it ought weH
 to suffyce the / wythoute to presse me wyth wordes ony 32
 more, sith that the goynge and enterpryse that I muste
 doo in ytalye, is not of myn owne wyHe:”

Both on his own
 account

[* leaf E 7, back]

and his son's he
 must go to Italy
 and carry out
 his destiny.

He tells of
 Mercury's
 message to him,

which ought to
 satisfy her.

IN sayeng the whiche wordes by eneas / dydo loking
 at one side, torned hir eyen sodaynli, wythout to 36

speke neuer a worde / as a persone furybounde & fury-
 ous: and or ener that she coude saye any thyng, as
 ranysshed / helde her sighte aH mibile, wythout to
 4 areste it vpon one thyng of a long while / and after, by
 gret yre, gadred by immense sorow intrysiuque wythin
 her hert, sayd to hym in this wyse: "o man right false
 and vntrue, *that*, what someuer men sayen, was neuer
 8 borne of no goddesse, nor procreated of Royathe lynce
 *comyng of the puissaunt dardanus, fyrst founder of the
 grete cyte of troye, but arte engendred of Caucasus¹ /
 whiche is a mountayne terryble in ynde, aH ful of harde
 12 stones of dyuerse fygyres, of merueyllous height that
 recheth almost vnto the heuyns / soo that neuer any
 birde myghte passe ouer / where groweth hungre that
 was neuer satysfyed, to exstirpe & waste aHe the goodes
 16 comyng oute of the erth, The whiche, how be it that
 she hath chosen there her habytacion, for to deuoure
 aH thynges that comyn vnde[r] her; AH this nethelesse
 suffiseth her not / but sendeth down her colde messagers /
 20 as snowe / froste, heyle / & tempeste, transported & caste
 of the ayer by the colde wyndes into the lowe regyons,
 and after doeth peryshe the trees & the herbes, the
 corne, & aH other thyng growyng oute of the grounde /
 24 and this doon, whan she hathe no thyng more, [s]he
 parforseth hyr self, wyth hir grete teeth to ete the rotes
 vnder the grounde, that haue hidde hemself wythin
 the entraylles of thierthe their moder / for to achieue
 28 that aH were brought to destructyon / as *thou* wylte
 doo of me, in folowyng the condycions of y^e subsiduous
 modre that hath made the to be norysshed and fedde
 wyth the mylke of the tygres of Yreanye, that are
 32 made wythoute to haue pyte of any thyng that is
 borne in this worlde; what holdeth me / but that I
 shaHe some goo fro my wyttes, replenysshed of grete
 madnesse / why is it that I dssymule to goo aHe oute

CAP. XIX.

Dido bitterly
reproaches
Aeneas,says he is
neither of divine
nor royal
descent, but

[* leaf E 8]

born of Mount
Caucasus, where
grows hunger
that deuours all
things,and whence
come cold,
snow, etc., to
destroy
vegetation;or he has been
fed with the
milk of the
pitiless tigresses
of Hyrcania.¹ *orig.* Caucasus. Fr. Caucassus.

CAP. XX.

Dido upbraids
Aeneas's want of
feeling,

[* leaf E 8, back]

prays to Juno
and Jupiter,

from my wyttes? wherto wylle I thenne kepe my selfe,
nor lyue more from hens forth / syth that this euyH
man / & a traytour, for what wepyng that I make,
dayneth not gyue oute one only syghe, nor torne his 4
eyen to loke ones vpon me / nor haue no pyte of me,
his sorowfuH loue / for to styre hym to one sighyng
only, or to a tere descendyng out of his eyen / what I
ought to do / ne what parte to torne me, *what I may 8
saye / to what ende shold my wytte mow begynne /
nor where to haue recours / I wote not / O goddes
celestial, and Iuno grete goddesse! O Iupiter, and aHe
othre goddes, gyue socours to me, thys vnhappy / and 12
wul permute rigoure to equitye, in this bihalue.”

¶ How dido, with grete cursynges, gaf leue
to Encas / ¶ Capitulo // xx

recounts her
benefits to him,

“ **A** Las, I haue receyued this man, poure, myserable, 16
and naufragd vpon the ryuage of the see / and,
as euyH aduysed, haue kept hym, and weH entreated,
and lyghtly & gretly coloued, aboue the moost grete
of my lande / his nauye I haue do make ayen, that was 20
reduced aH in peces; his folke, that were aHe perished,
and aHe lyuered to deth, I haue delyuered them
therfrom, and receyued in-to my cyte / not onely
receyued / but entreteyned / furnyshed and susteyned, 24
as them of my house / And nowe, for to rewarde me
therof, I haue the rage of furoure atte my herte. O
what anguyshe / what lesyng, what treson fuH of
desperacion / how he swereth that the god Apollo, 28
by his aunsueres and angurementes¹ / the sortes pre-
ceptiue of lycie, and the interpretour of the grete
god Iupiter, Mercurius, messenger of the goddes / haue
pressed hym strongly, by ryght grete commaundementes, 32
for to goo ryghte sone in-to ytalye / O aHe puissaunt
lyght permanent / before whome no thyng, be it

disbelieves the
prophecies and
divine messages
he speaks of,¹ orig. angurementes

neuere so secret nor couertly hept, can not be hyd, CAP. XX.
 how weneth this man, by his false and deceyuables
 wordes, made stronge with right grete and horrible
 4 othes, to make me to vndrestande / that ye aHe ben
 about for to make hym goo from me, as that ye had
 now othre besynesse but only to send doune youre
 knyghtes messagers towarde hym / O, how thou art a
 8 ryght stedfast lyar, that dredeth not to caHe the true calls him a liar,
 goddes in testymonage for to con*ferme thy lesynge ; [* sign. F j]
 and yet more, to Impute to theym that they ben cause
 of thyn vntrouth / Now goo, thenne, syn it is soo / into and bids him go,
 12 what someuer partyes that thou wylt / for I haue not
 the keypyng of the / I holde the not in no wyse / nor
 wyH not that thou abyde for me. crye strongly, and
 caHe the wyndes / and doo the worste that thou
 16 canste! calle after Yolus & Neptunus, for to lede the
 in-to ytalye! hie the, and make it shorte / mounte vpon
 the see, and tarye no lenger / For I truste that the
 goddes of equitye pyetouse, haue suche puyssaunce, thou
 20 shalte abyde naufragd wythlin the see / thy shyppes hoping he will
be shipwrecked,
 broken ayenste the roches / and shaHe caHe me often
 to thyne ayde, in grete complayntes & merueyllouse
 rewthes, that thou haeste thus habandoned me, dydo,
 24 dysplaysaunte and desolate / that sone shalle folowe
 the / by fyre mortaHe inflammed. & whan the colde and threatens
her own death,
 deth shaH haue separated me, and taken awaie the soule
 from the body, my spyrite shaH aproche the nyghe in
 28 aH the places of thy flageHacyons, peynes & tormentes,
 for to see thy sorowes, and to here thy wepynges and
 sobbynges, and grete lamentacyons ; wherof I shalle
 make my reporte vnto the pryue goddis, beyng in the
 32 lowe shadowes :” and that after
that she will in
spirit haunt him,
and hear how he
laments in his
troubles.

¶ How dydo felle down in a swone / and
 how & in what manere she was borne
 away by hir wymen ; and also how

CAP. XXI.

dyligently the nauye of enecas was made
redy for to goo in to ytalye.

Capitulum xxj

Meaning to have
said much more,

Dido swoons,

[* sign. F j, back]

and the Trojans
continue their
preparations for
departure.

They are com-
pared to ants,
whose method of
working is here

IN sayeng the whiche wordes, how be it that dydo 4
hadde purposed to saye moche more / she brake
her speche aHe atte ones by ryghte grete sorowe ; Toke
and dystourned her eyen from the lyghte where she
was inne / And felle in a swoune, as alle ded to the 8
grounde. she was soone take vppe by her wymmen,
that bare her in-to her chambre marbryne, & leyd
her vpon a lityl bedde. Wherof Eneas, *how be it
that he had grete pyte and compassyon of her, and 12
desired sore to comforte her wyth swete & amyable
woordes, for to assuage her sorowe in grete sobbynges /
for grete displaysure & sorowe *that* he had, to see
his swete loue suffre suche¹ a payne / Alwayes he 16
determynd hymself, & went his wayes for to see his
shippes / Thenne whan his folke and maryneres sawe
hym / they dyd hie hemselfe yet more fast to werke,
for to haste their goyng / transported the moste parte 20
of the nauye, that was talowed / & weH garnysshed
wyth pytche / oute of the hauen in-to the rode ; made
oores of wood aH grene, comynge new out of the
forest / and toke also ryght grete trees, and foyson of 24
other tymbre, for to apropre to their other businesses,
in grete desire to departe some hens. ye sholde se
troians of aH sides, that ranne, some downwarde / and
thother vpwarde, aHe of one wyHe to haue furnysshed 28
theyr shippes, euyng soo as pysmers are wounte to do,
dredyng sore the wynter / whan they haue founde a
shokke of whete or other corne, goo some oute of theyr
nest, and aHe by one waye, for to bere awaye their 32
proye / Some lade themselfe / som helpen the other,
and thother drawe after them *that* / that they can not
bere ; that other commaundeth and setteth hem aH in

¹ orig. snche

ordre; a nother forseth hym self to swepe the place; CAP. XXI.
 a nother kepeth, that other bystoweth it; And the curiously
 other ineyteth to make dyligence / one renneth, a described,
 4 nother cometh agayn / and that other seketh what to
 lade hym selfe wyth aHe. a nother hath somoche laden
 that he late faHe som by the waye / And thenne he
 caHeth for helpe, soo that the waye is neuer deliuered
 8 of theym, tyH that they haue doon theyr businesses.
 ¶ Alas, Dydo, where is thy wytte bycome, thy fayr
 maynteyn and swete countenaunce? what goole, what
 Ioye / and what playsure, nor solace of IoyefuH re-
 12 membraunce, maye thou *haue, byholdyng vpon thyse
 things / What terys¹ and grete sighynges / what
 complayntes, caHyinges and lamentacyons, dyde yssue
 that tyme out of thy swete brest, whan thou were in
 16 the highe lotte² of thy grete towres, and sawe the see
 aHe troubled and tourmented with shyppes and orys /
 ¶ O right grete lone Importunate, to whome aHe thinge
 diffycile / semeth to be facile for to come to her The power of
 Love over
 human strength.
 20 entent / how hast thou so grete strengthe ouer the
 corage humaine? This dydo, for to serue the nowe,
 fonndreth aH in teeris; after, parforceeth herself by
 praiers; and after, submytteth hersilf to aHe daungers /
 24 and to aHe thinges dyuerse; leueth nothinge, how
 stronge that it is, how sharp, harde nor grete / but
 that she wyl parforce herself for to experimete them
 aHe, or euer she delybere herself vtterly to the dethe /
 28 After she dyde doo caHe anne, her suster germayne, and
 to her recyteth a part of her sorowe; and with grete
 rewthe byganne thus to saye vnto her / “ Anne! beholde
 and see how this folke haste hemself, & assemble from
 32 euery syde in-to the hauen / they haue drawen vp
 already their hyghe sayHes vpon the grete mastes of
 theyre shippes, aHe spred abrode ayenst the wyndes,
 desiryng³ and waytynge after the storme, for to

¹ orig. treys² orig. lotte³ orig. desiryuge

CAP. XXI.

The Trojans' joy
at goingenhances
Dido's sorrow,

which she can
bear no longer,

[* sign. F ij, baek]

so comes to her
sister for help,

and prays her to
go to the false
Aeneas, and show
him that she had
no part in the
Greek con-
spiracy against
Troy,

neither has she
offended him in
any sort of way;

lede hens the nauye aHe attones, whiche they haue
garnyshed wyth floures, and garlandes, and with crownes
in sygne of Ioye & gladnes, that maketh my sorowe
and heuynes to be moche the greter / AHas! yf I had 4
weH thoughte to haue fallen in the Inconuenient
where I fynde now myself ynne, I wolde haue purueied
therto in suche wise / That I shulde not haue come by
noo waye to thys greuouse tourment of mortaHe sorowe 8
where I am so ferre come, In to the bytternes of grete
myserie / that by noo wyse I can not bere it noo
lenger / socorus to the, must I thenne seke, my swete 12
suster, & my right dere frende / * saue my body! saue 12
me my lyf! and for to doo this, I praye & requyre the,
that one message only it playse the for to do for me,
towarde that traytour, that man of euyl corag, that
hath loued the gretly / and hath vttered his secretes 16
vnto the entierly, so that thou knowest his condicions
& his dedes / the places / the houres & mouementes,
and the oportunyte of the tyme moost propyce for to
speke wyth hym. Goo thenne anone, my suster, wyth 20
aH humylite / to requyre myn eumye mortaH, the false
eneas, whiche is ayenst me so fyers, shewynge vnto
hym pietously / how I haue not be in no wyse /
thynkinge nor consentyng in the cursed yle of Aulite, 24
whan of one assente aH the grekes folke swore that
troye shold be distroyed / The harde conspyracion of
the same grete excysion was made ferre from my
lande; and neuer socours ne comforte by me, nor of 28
my supporte, was gyuen to theym, for to doo that my
shippes nor my armye were neuer sent thyder for to
gyue greuauance to the troians / nor neuer of me came
euyH vnto them, nor no thyng that was to theym 32
nuyisible. Also I haue not rented, vyolated ne broken,
the pyramyde of his faders sepulture. I neuer dyde
amys, nor neuer offended ayenst hym / wherby he
ought to leue me aside / Infestaunce obprobre ne 36

vytupere to anclises, whan he liued, that called hym
 fader of Eneas, nother to his soule after his deth /
 were neuer doon of my behalue / Alas why, suster, in
 4 shewynge thyse thynges vnto hym / wyte of hym /
 why he hath me in suche indygnacyon / that he
 refuseth to lene his ceres / for to vnderstande my
 wordes, that ben soo iuste and resonable, as thi self
 8 knowest: O! he wyHe now goo soo hastely, atte this
 tyme whiche is so daungerouse / atte leeste that it
 maye playse hym to graunte a yefte to me, his sorowfuH
 lone, that is onely / that he wyHe tarye and dyfferre
 12 his departynge vnto * the newe tyme / that the swete
 wyndes shaHe putte hemselfe vp in pacifycacion of
 the see pestilencyaH, that thenne shaHe permytte hym
 facely & lightly for to do his vyage safly. I do not
 16 somone hym for tacomplysshe his promyse simulatyue
 of the mariage of vs two / nor *that* he leue his purpose
 for to goo in-to ytalie / but I requyre only that he
 putte this thyng in delaye for a certayn space of
 20 tyme / Duryng the whiche, I may induce my self to
 sorow, & that infortune admynystre to me my sorowes
 by proces of tyme, one after a nother, wythout to
 suffoke me now vtterli in-to the depe see of amaritude,
 24 wythout ony reysing / soo doo, I praye the, my suster,
 hauinge of me remembraunce / that it playse the to
 goo & make vnto hym this my present requeste / &
 thus doynge, I shaHe make thee myn heyre, to enioye
 28 & receyue, after my deth, y^e renues of aH my londe."

CAP. XXII.

and to ask him
to put off his
departure till
spring,

[* sign. F iij]

when the
weather will be
less stormy.

She does not ask
him to fulfil his
promise of
marriage, but
only to delay his
departure a
little.

If Anne does
this she shall be
Dido's heir.

¶ How enea brake the oken tree for the
grete loue of dydo Capitulum xxij

32 **T**he whiche thynges, thus sayd by dydo, Anne her
 suster went incontynent towarde enea, to
 make vnto hym her feble legacion. the whiche he
 wold not graunt, by cause that the dynyne commaunde-
 mentis inhibytores, that had stopped his ceres of pite,
 36 were contrarie to the same; and many goynges &

Anne goes to
Aeneas.

CAP. XXII. comynges were there made of the sayd aene from one parte to thother / that fynably were aH frustratoire / and percisted eneas / like as a grete oke tre, antyque & in-uetered of many yeres among the grete stones harde, 4 strongly roted, whiche is ofte caste of many wyndes & orages, wherof the foure wyndes happen ofte to assemble togider, one ayenst *that* other, for to ouerthrawe hym doune, & wyth their grete blastes taken his hie 8 braunches, whiche they shake & bowe un-to y^e grounde / & make hem to braye & crie by impetuouse moeuynges,¹ tendyng to distroye hym vtterli / wherof y^e gret tronc *auncient, that the more that he is olde / hie braunched / 12 spacouse & grete, the more thicke & depper ben his rotes spred wythin therthe, & related bytwyx th[e] harde roches, abydeth euer styl ferme, & moeneth by no wyse. In lyke wyse dyd semblable Eneas, that, how be 16 it *that* he was strongli impelled in his corage by y^e persuasions & harde lamentacions confyte in pietous teeres rennyng doune the swete face of dydo / that he somoche derly had loued, & by her was restored from deth to 20 lyf / from anguyshe & calamyte, in-to right grete prosperite / wherof y^e remembraunce greued hym ryght sorowfuHy by incytacion compatyble, whiche admonnesteth hym to socoure this dolant lady / the whiche 24 by her suster maketh hym to be induced to doo the same / by many exhortacions & pyetous remonstrances excytatiue of aH weH wyHyng noryce of loue in dylection mutueHe of swete charite / condolaunt ouer them 28 *that* ben affliged / aH this nethelesse, the resolucion intrinsque of his courage is euer reduced to thobeyssaunce of y^e goddes, & to their deuyne commaundementes, the whiche, aH thise thynges reiecte from hym, 32 he enterprised for tacomplysse after his power :

Aeneas resists temptation as an oak does the tempest,

despite all blasts.

[* sign. F iij, back]

The older it is, the more firmly fixed are its roots.

So stands Aeneas,

though sorely moved by pity for Dido,

and her sister's remonstrances and appeals.

A Nd what wyHe y^e swete fenycce, foundrynge in teeres / *that* for ony thyng that she may saye / do, or thynke, can not conuerte the courage of eneas? she 36

¹ orig. moenynges

- taketh her recours to wyshe deth, ouer moche noyeth
 her to lyue lenger in this worlde / fleeth aH mondayn
 playsurs / fleeth recomforte & aH companyes, fleeth
 4 y^e palayees & her chambre arayed, fleeth y^e lyghte of
 y^e daye / fleeth the sonne, & the heuyn shynyng / In
 her closet hideth herself, sore sighyng, makyngre grete
 sorowe. But yet, for to augmente more her sorow in
 8 desperacion, thus hid, & makyngre her secret sacrificyes
 wyth y^e lyght of the fyre brennyng & enflamed vpon
 her pouldres of frankencens,¹ wherof she decored her
 oblacions for to Immole byfore thawtres of her temples,
 12 *she sawe & aperceyued horryble thynges that made
 her fulsore affraied, moche more than she was to-fore /
 that is to wite, the holy waters dedicate to the sacr[i]-
 fice, became blacke & obscure, & chaunged in horrible
 16 licoure. And also apperceyued how the good wyne of
 swete odour, ordeyned for the lybacions or washynges
 of the sacryfices, were conuerted & tourned in spece of
 bloode crueH, aH dede, & almost rotyn, whiche for cer-
 20 tayne was to her a harde thinge to beholde / wherof
 a grete malencolie enuaded thezme her herte & her
 wittes, aH ynoughe troubled of the thynges precedent /
 whiche thinges she kept clos & shette withynne the
 24 shryne of her sorowfuH thoughte, without to notyfy
 them to eny body lyuynge / aHe were he neuer so
 gretly her frende, not oneli to her suster anne, that
 afore had weH knowen aH her secrete thoughtes & other
 28 pryue thinges ; amonge the whiche she hadde a lyteH
 sacraire of marbeH, made in manere of a temple, in
 remembraunce of Sycheus, that his brother pygmalyon
 had putte to destruction / whiche, duryng the maryage
 32 of hem two, dede haunte there fuH ofte / and made it
 to be weHe ornated & hanged with fayre tappytes
 white, & crowned weH rychely with crownes of
 golde, weH enameyHed, & ryght curiously & proprely

CAP. XXII.

Dido's great
distress.She avoids
company and
the light of day.

[* sign. F iiij]

Her sacrifices go
wrong.Her visions and
delusions are
dreadful, but she
keeps them
secret.Her shrine in
remembrance of
Sycheus, her first
husband.¹ orig. frankencens

CAP. XXII. kerued / & of other somptuose thynges in grete
honoure & reuerence / out of y^e whiche sacrayre,
w[i]thin the temple aforsayde, after that this dydo had
vtterly submytted & dedicate her-self to eneus, out of the 4
place of maryage, in brekyng her first feithe promysed
to sycheus / her semed that she herd come ther-out
often some voyces of her sayde late husbände, Sycheus,
hym complaynyng, and blamyng her by cryes and 8
lamentacyons, in right grete wepynges & quarellouse
plaintes / and after, atte euen, about y^e gooyng vnder
of y^e sonne, w^han y^e derk night taketh y^e landes vnder
her gouernance / she, beyng alle alone *in her secrete 12
and pryue houses / vnderstode & herde at euery owre
the owle, whiche is a byrde fleyng by nyght, feryng
y^e lyghte of the daye / wherof the song termyneth in
pyetous extermynacion, whiche dooth quake & fereth 16
thertes of the hereers, & constricteth theym wyth a
sorowfuH mynde; wherby it is sayd that he is a byrde
mortaffe, or otherwyse, denouner of mortalite, And
conuerseth often in the chircherde, vpon the temples & 20
symulacres, & in places that ben solitare & pesty-
lencious / this byrde a-boue declared, cam almost
euery nyght vpon the temples & hie pynacles of the
palayce & cyte of elysse, in syngyng of fyne manere, in 24
grete draughtes & of a longe brethe, his right sorowfuH¹
songe / soo that ryght often he moeued of dydo the
corage, in-to grete teres & sobbynges malencolyouse, fuH
of trystesses & merueyllouse thoughtes. and of another 28
side, come to her remembraunce the grete iustycees &
dyuynacions presagyous & aruspyeous, vnto her tolde,
& somtyme denounced, by the auguryes² & prenostyca-
tures of her harde and aduerse fortunes, that to her 32
were frusted / wherof the most parte she had weH
knownen & approued to haue ben veritable / that con-
tryste her alwayes to sorowe more than afore / After

From this shrine
she seems to
hear her
husband's voice.

[* sign. F iij,
back]

She hears the
owl,

the bird of ill-
omen and
darkness,

which sits
almost nightly
on her palace,

and moves her
to weeping with
its moanings,

to her prophetic.

¹ orig. sorowfull

² orig. anguryes

whiles that she is lieng in her bedde, wenyng to slepe
 & take some reste, horrible dreames & cruel, comen to-
 fore her in hir mynde / that tormente her in tremoure
 4 merueyllous; her hert semeth somtyme that enes
 foloweth her of nyghe, as alle forened, replenysshed
 wyth rage & tormented in furoure, for to distroye her, &
 vtterly subcombe her in-to persecucion extreme / And
 8 after seeth herselfe lefte all alone wythout companye,
 goyng by longe wayes, dystroied, deserte & vnhabyted,
 as a woman loste, vagauit aboute the landes vnknownen
 to her / where she goeth. After, wyth this dreame
 12 cometh to her aduyse, that her eyte and landes of
 Cartage are aH dystroied *and¹ tourned in exyH /
 wherfore she fleeth, for doubte to be taken, and
 retourneth towarde the marche of thyr, wenyng for to
 16 come to a place of sauete; but sodaynly commeth tofore
 her in her remembraunce, the grete Iniurye that she
 hath doon to the tyrynes / withdrawen their folke,
 & taken their goode, and aHe the rychesses of sycheus /
 20 the whiche to be had, pygmalion, kyng of aHe the
 lande, made hym to be slayne and mordred falsly;
 wherfore she doubteth lest asmoche shulde be doon to
 her yf she went thidre. And thus she remayneth in
 24 this poynt desolate, wythout eny hope of some refute to
 haue, as aH tourned from herself for grete sorowe in-to
 a rageouse franesye; euen thus as was the sone of
 pantheus cardynus, whan, in his grete furyosite, was
 28 conuerted and tourned by Acho out of his witte, so
 that hym semed that he sawe the felawes of the
 Emmendes and aHe their excercyte / that is to wite,
 Thesypho, Megere, and Atheleto, thei thre furyouse
 32 goddesses, infernaHe, ineytatyue to aHe cuyH thynges,
 that dystroyen and bryngen aHe to nought, kутten and
 choppen / breken and marren, aHe the werke and subtyH
 artyfcee that men haue made / Clotho and also Latheser,

CAP. XXII.

Dido dreams that
 Aeneas follows
 her to destroy
 her,

[* leaf F. 5]

also that
 Carthage is
 destroyed,

but she fears to
 return to Tyre,
 dreading Pygma-
 lion's vengeance.

She is like Pen-
 theus tortured by
 the Furies.

¹ orig. aud

CAP. XXII. that neuer ceassen to spyne and weue / To sette to gyder
and to coagule aHe natives for generacyon / Wherof are
The Fates produce all creatures. produced aHe the creatures that out of the erthe ben
heued vp to the ayere. Of another syde she saw also, to 4
Dido sees two suns. her semynge, two sonnes shynynge one by another, that
presente himself by symulaeyon wythin the fantasme
of her entendement, aHe troubled in grete confusyon of
dysplaysures and sorowes excessyue, aHe dyuerse in 8
Two cities of Thebes. contrary qualyte / And y^e two thebes, grete citees
merueyHouse, that appieren in aduysion to be bifore her
eyen / whiche to her semyng are bothe properly one
[* leaf F 5, back] lyke another / How be it that there was neuer *but one, 12
whiche a kyng of grece called cadinus, made somtyme,
that founde first y^e lettres & the arte of wrytyng, whiche
Cadinus (Cadmus) of Thebes, the first inventor of letters and writing. he sent in to diuerse countrees, & pryncipally in the
land of fenice, wherre he made scriptures, grete bokes & 16
cronicles / lerned the folke to rede & to write / wherof
right grete lawde was to him attribued, to haue founde
by subtyH artyfice suche a manere of waye, that men
may doo knowe aH his wiHe, & notyfie it to whome he 20
wiH, by one symple lettre, be it nyghe or ferre, be it of
peas or of were, of amyte, or of eny other thing /
without to departe himself from his place, but onely by
a messenger whiche is sent ther / whiche haply shaHe 24
knowe nothing of the matere / & aHe be he dombe or
specheles, yf he take the lettre vnto hym whome it
is dyrected vnto, howe be it that he were atte roome or
in nauarre, in hongary or in englande / he shaH therby 28
vnderstande the desyre of hym that hath sente suche
a messenger vnto him / wherbi yet atte this owre, with a
good right & a Iuste cause, is lefte of the god cadynus
here in erthe his grete loenge and good renomme, that 32
neuer shal be extyncted nor anychiled, nor here after
abolished. But in token of this, that the first lettres
wherof he was inventour, came out of fenyce, equypared
The first letters were purple. to purple coloure, By cause that in that countrey were 36

the pourpre clothes fyrst made, and the coloure founde /
 We wryte yet in oure kalenders the hyghe festes wyth
 rede lettres of coloure of purple / And the grete
 4 capitaHe lettres of the bygynnyng and princypal¹ of
 the psalmes and chapytres wythin oure bookes, ben aHe
 mayde fayre ther wythaHe. ¶ But yet the grete
 trybulacon of Elysse is equypared to that of horrestes,
 8 the sone of Agamenon, weHe ofte recyted in the
 comedies senoyse, makynge mencyon Howe, In sygne
 of vengauce of the dethe of hys fader, And turpy-
 tude *dysonest of clytemestra his moder, after thoe-
 12 cision of her, & that he torned himself in-to furiosite,
 him semed that he sawe inessauntli his saide moder
 elitmestra / or proserpine of heH, the gret goddesse / or
 the moder of y^e emezdes that I haue named aboue, aH
 16 enflamed in y^e face with fire brennyng / & the hed aH
 fuH of right grete serpentis, graffed there-vpon as thike
 as heerys, that pursued hym at aHe houres, in aHe places,
 for to distroye hym, in makynge vyndicacion of the
 20 deth of his sayd moder / And forto distourne & haue
 himse[]f a-side from there waie / was conseiHed by
 piladis for to goo or transporte himself in-to delphos, &
 to flee anone hastily aH streighte vnto y^e temple of
 24 appoHo / the wiche horrestes, trowinge by this subtyl
 meane to be escaped / whan he was come byfore y^e gate
 of the sayd temple, or there aboute / he fonde the
 forsayd goddesses infernaH, that sette there ouer thentre
 28 of the sayd temple, as a-waytyng there after his
 comyng, whiche was to hym more greuouse a thyng
 than it was a-fore / wher-by he lost thenne the hope of
 his entent / The sayd elysse, vaynquysshed & ouercome
 32 of the grete anguysshes, sorowes & heuynesses, whiche
 dyde flowe at her herte in grete haboundance, one vpon
 a nother / as admonestementes & incytacions whiche
 somone to procure y^e deth / proposed thenne to

CAP. XXII.

Red, i.e. purple,
 letters are still
 used to signify
 feasts in our
 calendars, and to
 head psalmes and
 chapters.

Dido's sufferings
 compared to
 those of Orestes,

[* leaf F 6]

who for the slay-
 ing of his mother
 was horribly
 tortured by
 Proserpine,

and attempting
 to take refuge at
 Delphi, was an-
 ticipated by the
 goddess, and so
 lost all hope.

¹ orig. princypal

CAP. XXIII.

So Dido loses
all hope.She sends for
her sister.

[* leaf F6, back]

habandoune herself, & vtterly determyned for to deye /
& dyd delibere in herself of the manere more honest /
& of the tyme couenable to *that* same, how & in what
manere she myghte do hit / & shortly expose herself to 4
deth / & she beyng in this tryst thoughte, after her con-
clusion taken, & her fayt arrested / sent to her swete
suster anne for to come toward her / & couered her
tryst thought wyth a manere of gladnes ynough, not 8
wiHyng to manyfest, ne bi no wise to declare vnto her,
the caas nor the *conclucion that* she had taken of her
deth / but assone as she was com, went & said to her in
this ma*ner:—

12

¶ Of the wordes of dydo to hir suster
anne.¹ Cap̄ / xxiiij

Tells her she
wishes to find
some way out of
her sorrows,and tells her of
Mout Atlas,
where is the axis
of the heavens.

MY right dere suster & parfite frende: wil ye
reioysshe my corage to the recomfort of my 16
sorowes and bitternes? Verily I haue enquyred yf it
were not possible for to fynde som waye to pease &
make swete the grete euyhes wherof I am esprysed,
& to departe myself without heuynes from the grete 20
loue that I haue to eneas, or to make hym to remeue
& retourne towârd me without tarynge. & so moche
I haue doon by my dilygent inquisicion / that I haue
founde a thinge ryght merueyHouse / It is trouthe, my 24
swete suster, that about the lymytes of the grete see
that men caHe oceane, in the marches or the soune
goynge-vnder, right nyghe to *that* place where he lyeth
at the endes, vpon his last part of thertth there habitable / 28
where conuerse thethyopes, is a certeyn contre of
habitacion merueyHouse, where as men sayen the grete
athlas, *that* susteyneth vpon his sholders thaxtre of y^e
moeyng of theuen with his sterris brennyng, that 32
maketh hym to moeue & tourne to what syde that
he wil / maketh hys princypaH dueHyng. In this

¹ orig. nne

place, the^{ne}, wherof I teHe you, as I haue be aduer-
 tised, is a right holy woman, whiche is a prestresse &
 wardayne of the faire temples of the Ope^{ry}des, whiche
 4 are the doughters of athlas / she is theire maistres, theire
 tutryce and techer, that lerneth and enterteined hem /
 & incyteth & techeth them for to doo sacrifice to y^e
 goddesse / & for her grete witte & knowynge, & also
 8 for her grete science, that be knitte togider with *that*
 experience *that* she hath within her of aH thynges / was
 taken vnto her y^e cure and gouernement of *that* tendinge
 & of the norryture of y^e fiers dragon that had that
 12 tyme the keypyng of the holy braunches of the tree
 with golden frute, that bare apples aH of golde / &
 prepared to hym his mete, aHe after his complexion,
 somtyme wete thynges humyde, whan he was wexed
 16 lene, for to haue hym soone vp ayen / Another tyme,
 powdres and *graynes of poppy & other seedes, for to
 make hym soone a-slepe, whan he was ouermoche
 traueyllled / and admynystred to hym his metes after
 20 that he was dysposed / This lady knoweth many
 thynges / and emonge other, wyH vndertake, and pro-
 mytteth, by her sortes and charmes, to deliuer pure and
 playne the affections and courages that ben bounden
 24 and enterlaced in loue one towarde an other, to them
 that she is playsed, and hath theym attones, wythoute
 prolongacion ne taryeng from y^e grete loue merueyll-
 ouse ; and to the contrarye, putteth loue sodaynly in-to
 28 theym that happely thinketh not vpon. But yet this
 is a lityl thyng to the regarde of the other grete arty-
 fices and werkes that she can doo, as to tarye &
 areste sodaynli the flodes & grete ryuers, that they
 32 goo no ferther doune ; And make their bygge stremes
 rennyng, to remounte vpwarde ; the sterres also, and aH
 the fymmente she maketh to retorne abacke / the
 soules pryuated & lowe, that be descended in-to helle,
 36 constrayneth theym often by nyghte tyme to speke

CAP. XXIII.

There is a wonder-
 ful woman,
 priestess of the
 Ope^{ry}des
 (Hesperides),

and nurse of the
 dragon that
 guards the tree
 with the golden
 apples,

[* leaf F 7]

who can work
 wonders in
 affairs of love,

and do still
 greater miracles

in things
 material and
 infernal.

CAP. XXIII.

Dido continues
to recount the
witch's powers,

but swears she
will not avail
herself of the aid
of magic.

wyth her / she maketh therthe to calle & eryl, whan
she tredeth vpon, and somtyme tourmenteth it in so
dyuerse manere that she aH to-shaketh it, & pulleth
oute the grete trees, & maketh them to falle dozne 4
from the mountaynes, by her grete wyndes & terryble
orages & tempestes *that* she draweth & sendeth in to
dyuerse contreys. But I swere to y^e, my dere suster
germayn, by aHe thy goddes & thy hede debonayr / 8
that in aH thartes & scyences magicque, wherof this
lady & prestresse entromytreteth herse[1]f / I wolde neuer
sett my selfe therto, nor enquere no thing therof / and
this that I haue enterprysed for to doo / it is by grete 12
prayer & constraynt, & in my body defendyng / alwayes
sith *that* I haue enterprised fermly my wyttes therunto /
it byhoueth me theⁿe to doo *that* aH that therto appar-
teyneth for to brynge better oure werke to an ende / 16

[* leaf F7, back]

*And bi cause that it is of costume & necessarie to
haue euer fyre without ceasse, I requyre the, my swete
suster, & praye, that in som place of my palaice moost
secret, that men be not aware of it, thou doo a grete 20
fyre to be made / And the armures of y^e man without
pite, y^e false enneas, for whome I calle ' alas *that* euer he
was borne' / whiche he hathe lefte hanginge in my
chambre, with aHe his habilimentes & other thinges, his 24
of owne, lefte behinde in my priue closet, where I was
perished & lay many a night, he & I togider, must
aHe be cast in to that grete fyer, for to brenne & con-
uerte theym in to ashes / as doeth teHe & commaund- 28
eth, that woman of grete science / that men must doo
perishe & oblishe, distroye & take aHe out of memorie,
aHe *that* is abiden behinde of that traytour & crueH
approued. 32

Dido begs Anna
to make a great
fire in some
secret part of her
palace and burn
the armour, etc.
left by Aeneas.

¶ How dydo in grete bewayHynges, praied
her suster to make a grete fyre in a place
moost secrete of her palayce, for to brenne

the harneys & raymentes of Eneas / &
 how, by dyuers sortes, she wende to haue
 dystroyed him. Capitulo xxiiij.

CAP. XXIV.

4 **A**fter y^e whiche thinges, dydo kept herself stiff,
 without eny wordes more to speke, all pale &
 discoloured as a body *that* is taken out of y^e erthe, or fro
 som grete & sodaine peril, wherof aune her suster was
 8 moche abashed / alwayes she doubted her self in noo
 wyse, *that* her suster wolde entende to doo a newe sacry-
 fice, *that* afore *that* tyme had neuer be doon / *that* is,
 to sacryfye hir self with fueraillhes mortalle, by fyre
 12 horrible; & knewe not *that* she was accensed nor esprised
 in her corage of so grete a furour, nor *that* her sorowe
 had be wers / than was that, that she suffred atte
 the dethe of her late husbonde Sycheus. And went
 16 and determyned her self for to fulfille the commaunde-
 ment of her sayd suster Elysse, and to doo aHe by
 ordre that that she had charged her for to doo / The
 whiche thinges thus doon of the queene dydo / wiH-
 20 yng to procede to *her sayd sacryfice, went to see the
 place where the grete fyre shulde be kendled, whiche
 she founde aHe redy made, garnissed with a grete
 quantyte of logges, and vnder hem and rounde aboute,
 24 grete foison of drie fagottes & other smaff wood for to
 kendle the fyre lyghtly / & toke herself for to encence
 it, and to suffoungge the place / And crowned it with
 garlandes made of herbes and braunches, that men haue
 28 of costume¹ to putte vpon the cores of the dede bodies,
 vpon theyre graues and tombes, and also ouer the
 ymage and fygure of cneas, that she had doo make
 after the semblaunce² of hym, for to be brente ther
 32 with her. And toke the swerde that he had left with
 her, that she hidded in the same place, for to accom-
 plysshe y^e werke that she thought for to doo / Aftre,

Anna, unsus-
 pecting, makes a
 fire as ordered by
 Dido.

[* leaf F 8]

Dido goes to the
 fire;

and crowns the
 pile and an image
 of Aeneas with
 garlands.

¹ custom

² orig. semblaunce

CAP. XXIV.

she wolde goo with the sayde prestresse to her sacry-
 fice of magique that she had ordeined to be doo / and
 were the temples and awtiers weHe prepared and
 garnyshed, of oblacions and other thinges necessarye 4
 and conuenable to this present obsequye. And thenne
 came out the olde wiche of charnouse magyque, in
 her raymentes made in dyuerse maneres, aHe her hed
 shauen, for to fuldoo her sacrifyces / Atte the begyn- 8
 nyng of whiche, she inuoked and called thre tymes
 by hidous wordes, thre hundred goddes infernaH / and
 the grete habitacyon of heH sem-pyternaHe wyth their
 confusion / the moder of magyque, in her triple pro- 12
 poreyon, and the thre faces of the mone that shyneth
 by the quarfours, somtyme wyth two grete hornes, &
 somtyme as it were cutte by the myddes / A nother
 tyme she appyereth aHe rounde, wherof many one ben 16
 merueyled / By cause that they ygnore the causes /
 the whiche, yf they knewe theym, they sholde not
 happely merueylle. Also from wythin it is obscured
 moche more in some places than in some other. So 20
 that men myght saye that it encloseth, * that it is the
 tryple fygure of the vierge dyane, wherof maketh her
 Inuocacion this lady olde magicienne / And thus
 dooyng, she dide asperse the place with the waters 24
 obscure, venemouse and blak, representyng the lycoure
 of the hydous fontaynes of heHe / After, she maketh to
 be brought to her certayne herbes, freshe and newe
 mowen & taken by nyght whan the mone shyneth, 28
 with sercles of coper, wherof the Iuse is passyng venym-
 ouse, and of coloure aHe blake. And with this she tak-
 eth the lyteH skynne that remayneth of the secondyne
 within the forhed of the lyteH foole, that must be 32
 seraped away from hys forhed whan he is newly
 borne, afore that the moder lycketh it of / whereof,
 after that doon, he shaHe not be knowen of his sayde
 moder / as it is sayde, so that she refuseth to gyue 36

The Witch,

Her invocation
of the infernal
gods,

of the moon,

[* leaf F 8, back]

in which is the
triple figure of
Diana,the sprinkling of
dark water.The Witch uses
herbs cut by
night, and
hippomanes.

hym souke / as it were not her owne / And also it is
 named and called the skyune 'mortaHe loue,' bi cause
 that after the saide prestresse, the foole shal neuer
 4 haue luste to souke hys moder, but yf she liketh or
 eteth the secondyng, or atte leste that same skinne
 that he hathe in his forhede ; and men shulde saie that
 by the same cause shulde procede the moderly loue /
 8 yf it were not that inclynacion natureHe purposed
 ageynst the same / But aHe that is sayde aboue, made
 the forsayde magyeyenne, Dydo beyng ther present,
 that helde in her handes a grete stone aHe rounde, with
 12 one fote bare, and the other hosse on / AHe vngyrde,
 and vpon her knees, as a vassaH that doeth homage to
 his lorde, of a parfytte corage, as she that is redy to
 16 Inmole herself vnto aH the goddes, in syght of aHe the
 sterres, that ben culpable of her faHe by their con-
 iunctions, and moeuyng, and influences celestyaHe, that
 sygnyfy and denounce the dysposycion secret of the
 deuine prouydence / saynge, that yf ther be eny merey-
 20 fuH god and pyteous, that medleth hym to receyue and
 beholde *the consideracyon of louers, that maketh them
 to enterteyne weH togider wythoute varyaunce / that
 it wyH playse hym, for his pyte, to corrige and punyssh
 24 thoffence that Eneas hath commytted ayenst her, and
 wyHe retribue hym iustely, aHe after his demeryte.
 After aHe the whiche sacryfices / oblacyons, prayers &
 requestes, thus made in grete deuocyon and affectyon
 28 synguler, as aboue is sayd / and that the tyme after
 the daye is paste and goon, whiche is couenable in aH
 landes for the bodyes humayn that haue traueylled, to
 take reste, that thenne is to theym playsaunt and
 32 agreable, was come to his ordre / that tyme that the
 grete woodes & forestes / the see also / and aH thynges
 that ben crueH & nuysyble, take in hem selfe reste and
 slepe / And whiles that the sterres ben in theyr courses
 36 weH yocked, whan aHe the feldes ben in silence, the

CAP. XXIV.

Description of
 hippocanes or
 the skin 'mortal
 love.'

Dido, ungirt, on
 her knees, with
 one foot bare and
 a round stone in
 her hands,

[* sign. G j]

prays for retribu-
 tion on Aeneas.

After which in-
 vocations and
 prayers,
 night comes and
 other things rest.

CAP. XXV. byrdes / and bestes brute ; and whan the grete poundes
 and ryuers, aHe thynges aquatyque / the busshes and
 the large playnes / & aHe that the erthe conteyneth,
 are in grete ceasse, and in reste vnder the grete maunteH 4
 of y^e nyghte, that gyueth triews to aHe labours / and
 by slepyng maketh swete aHe peynes and traueylles
 that men hath suffred afore / AHe this neuerthelesse /
 she, fenyce, elysshe, or dydo, that thenne abydeth deso- 8
 late and alone wythoute companye, can not by no wyse
 induce herself to gyue a reste vnto her eyen by a
 lityH slepe, wherby she myghte aswage the presente
 anguysshes that she bereth atte her herte / but 12
 redoubten her sorowes, and¹ her trystesses enforce more
 vpon her / the fore loue reneweth hym selfe, that
 torneth soone to madnes, whan it can not be recouered :

But Dido
 cannot sleep.

¶ How dydo made her lamentacyons re- 16
 preuyng the periuremente of Laomedon.

Capitulum xxv

[*sign. G j, back] * **T**HIS lady, by grete distresse tourmenteth & al to-
 renteth her self. aftre, she thinketh in her courage 20
 what she may do / “ alas ! ” sayth she, “ poure & wery,
 where shalt thou mowe become / must I nowe thenne /
 sith that I am aHe ashamed / that I habandoune my selfe,
 and retourne towarde theym that firste haue requyred 24
 me, and that I requyre humbly the companye of the
 myrouzdes, & of theym that so ofte I haue caste in-to
 dysssdayne, & refused to haue me in maryage / Certes
 I ought not to doo the same / and better it were to 28
 me for to folowe the nauye of the troyens, and to
 submytte myself alle togydre to their mercy / They
 haply shaHe haue recordaunce of the grete aydes and
 benefaytes that ben comen vnto theym by me / For 32
 often commeth in mynde, to theym of good recordaunce,

Dido's doubts ;

shall she seek the
 friendship of the
 Myrouzdes,

or follow the
 Trojan fleet ?

¹ orig. and

the benefayttes that somtyme were doon vnto theym. CAP. XXV.

And supposed that ene-as wold not haue me, nor take
me in to his shippe, ther shaH be some of the oost,
4 after that he shaH haue refused me, that shal be
content to take me / but sorowfuH, caytyue & lost.
who bringeth *thee* in-to this folye / to thinke *that* this
might be / art *thou* madde, or out of thi mynde ? / hast
8 thou lost thi knowlege ? knowest thou not *that* the
troienne folke is aH yssued & descended of the for-
sworne laomedon / this laomedon was the first fader that
dyde enhabyte the grete troie, and brought there a grete
12 nombre of peple that made right faire edifices, & also
multiplied within a liteH tyme in grete quantite, & weH
grete in nombre, for y^e good polycie *that* they kept, &
also for y^e fertylyte of y^e grounde of *that* countreye /
16 And by cause that laomedon was aH ynoughe occupied
for to make y^e palayces & other edyfices intrinsique
of y^e eyte, & *that* hym thought ouer moche diffycile &
to longe a thinge / to make the walles closed rounde
20 aboute y^e towne, he made a *composicion* with phebus
& neptunus, *that* ben *goddis grete and myghty / by the
whiche he promysed theym, and conuenaunted by his
othe, to gyue theym a tonne fuH of golde, yf they were
24 playseed to make the walles rounde aboute the eyte
of troye / The whiche goddes, hauynge confydence in
trustynge his sayd promysse, dyde close hit wyth ryght
fayre hie and grete walles. And thus doon, they
28 somoned hym for to paye them, that / whiche he had
promysed theym / wherof he wolde neuer doo ne paye
ony thyng / And for this cause they submytted hym
to suffre, bere, & susteyne perpetueHy for euer more,
32 the detestable hate and reproche of a man forsworne.

Some Trojans
recollecting her
benefits, would
surely take her
on board.

But the Trojans
are descended
from Laomedon.

Her recollections
of the treachery
of Laomedon,

[* sign. G ij]

who cheated the
Gods in the
matter of build-
ing the walls of
Troy.

His curse.

CAP. XXVI.

¶ Of the vysion that Eneas hadde for to departe towarde ytalye. Capitulum xxvi.

THis lady whan she dyde remembre the forsweryng of laomedon, of whom the troians are descended, 4 made grete doubte to folowe theym / and stryuyng wythin her tryst thoughte to herself / sayd in this manere / "Alas, miserable sorowfuH! what may I doo now / oughte I to leue aH the fenyces, & them that 8 I haue wythdrawen from thyr, for to goo wyth the troians ; or that, by puyssaunce & bi my hande strongly armed / I shold goo to destroye their nauye, & brynge them to perdyceyon? wythout fawte, I wote not what 12 to saye; and me semeth to harde a thyng for to habandoune my good subgettes, whiche by weH subtyl meanes & grete difficulte I haue brought out of thyr, & out of the lande of fenycce, to expose & bryng 16 them now some in daungers of the see, & to the harde peryH of batayH / namly ayenste them of Troye / whom they haue no quareHe / Verely, whan I me aduysel¹ / it is better that I deye, as I haue weH 20 deserued, And that my sorowe poure & miserable / be some fynysshed by swerde. O, what hast *thou* doon, my swete suster germayne, of my teeres & emense wepynges / *thou* hast ben the first cause of the *grete 24 furoure where I am now in / *thou* hast charged vpon my sholdres aH the grete euylles *that* I bere & supporte; *thou* haste absorbed me, & reclosed, in the grete see of amarytude / *thou* haste founde me weH pesible, but *thou* 28 hast betaken me for to werre ayenst myn owne peas; *thou* hast broughte me from solysitude, & remysed into resolysitude; *thou* hast taken rest fro me, & hast brought me in-to ryghit grete turbacion / *thou* hast abolysshed 32 my fraunchise, for to entre in-to grete seruytude; *thou*

Dido doubts whether to follow the Trojans or destroy them.

Finds it hard to bring her subjects into trouble with the Trojans.

Thinks she had better die.

[* sign. G ij, bk]

Blames her sister.

¹ orig. aduy / seit

hast dyuerted my honour in-to dishonest infamye / *thou*
 hast conuerted my eyte in feere & drede perdurable ;
 thou hast aH *peruerted* my wyttes, & reduced in-to
 4 madnesse & forsenerie / thou haste delinerde me my
 traytour & peruerse enmye, vnder hope of loue &
 benyuolence. what eyleth me, tryst, poure / veri, & fuH
 of teerys. O fortune enyH *fortuned* / why haste *thou* not
 8 permytted me & suffred, that wythout forfayte or ony
 cryme / I myght haue vsed the residue of my dolau^t
 lyf chastly, alone, wythoute companye of man, as the
 bestes in the forestes doo lye, as it apiereth fuH often,
 12 aH alone by theym selfe. Yf thus I had mayntened
 myselfe / I sholde neuer haue come ne faHe in y^e
 sorowes & displaysures / *complayntes* & clamours, where
 I am now in, aH doled, & of grete furour forsened /
 16 more than euer was woman of moder borne / vnto this
 tyme presente ; but I beleue veritable *that* it is for to
 take vengeance of the feyth & of the grete othe that
 I had first promysed to my husbonde sicheus / whiche
 20 I haue violated falsly, & broken wyfluffly / wherof I
 am faHe in grete tormente, replenysshed with langour
 mortaH / Alas ! what harde destynacye happed to me
 that daye / that I was so ferre doled from my wytte,
 24 & so madde, to habandoune my selfe to a man alone /
 For whom I haue loste aH in a *somme* / at one daye
 & at one owre / in somoche *that* I abyde aH alone
 wythout *companye*, habandoune^d fro all comfort'' / thus
 28 made this fenyce her rewthes & her sighynges * in suche
 a sorowe & so dolant termes *that* she fowndred aH in
 teeris / duringe the whiche, afre *that* aHe y^e nauye of
 eneas was takled, & weH nyghe redy for to departe, ther
 32 appiered to eneas, *that* nyght *that* he entred his shippe
 & was leyde a slepe, a certayne god, in *that* propre fygure
that mercure appiered to hym first, for to admonneste
 him of his partynge, in suche manere of semblauce
 36 of voyce / of coloure / of heeris of golde, as weH pro-

CAP. XXVI.

Dido's pitiful
 lament over her
 fall,

which is a judg-
 ment on her for
 deserting the
 memory of
 Sycheus.

[* sign. G iij]

Mercury appears
 to Aeneas in
 his sleep the
 night he goes
 on board his
 ship.

CAP. XXVI.

Mercury rouses
Aeneas.Warns him
against Dido's
vengeance.Urges him to
depart swiftly,

[* leaf G iij back]

and vanishes.

poreyned of membres & fayre facion / of yongthe & of
 fayre beaulte, *that* sayde to him in this manere / “O
 eneas, y^e sone of a goddessse / how art thou so moche for-
 sened to take rest of slepe in this grete daunger wher 4
 thou art now ynne? knowest *thou* not y^e fortunes &
 perillous aduentures *that* enuyronne y^e on aH sydes?
 seest not thou y^e tyme couenable for to sayHe, and the
 swete wyndes propice / why consumest thy self slepyng, 8
 without exploityng y^e in thy vyage, thou knowest not /
 what the fayre dydo prepareth for the / whiche is
 tourned in turbacyon, thynkyng in herself what frawde
 or decepyon, or som grete myschef, for to doo to the 12
 a greuauance / why feerest *thou* not lest she doo y^e to de-
 struction, sith *that* she wyl bryng her self to the *de*the?
 thynke *the*me what euyHes, what harde aduentures,
 what displaisirs & what grete decepcions & iniuries, 16
 she ymagyneth ayenst the / but more ther is: yf thou
 departe not with aH diligence, thou shalt soone see the
 see aHe couered with¹ vesselles of werre, with grete
 strengthe, commynge ayenst the, with torches lyght, 20
 And cressettes esprysed of fyre brenny[n]g, for to brule
 and brenne thy nauye / And wythout respyte ne
 remedye *thou* shalbe dystroyed, yf thou be founde whan
 the [s]prynge of the day shalbe comen / Aryse vp quykly 24
 without taryenge, and abyde here noo lenger / For
 a woman is founde euermore subtyHe in aHe her dedes /
 As sayth the fable / A grete daunger is thenne to the,
 for whom she is thus / *endulled, and fallen in 28
 dysperacyon, to abyde in lyr iurisdyceyon nor to
 reside in her contree / And to thende that thou be
 not myscheued, yf *thou* loue me, thou shalt departe
 forwyth.” aHe the whiche thynges thus sayd, the god 32
 of whom I haue spoken here, presently remysed hym
 selfe in to a derke cloude, & vanysshed awaye sodaynly.

¹ orig. wthh

CAP. XXVII.

¶ How Eneas encyted the patrons & maysters of his shippes for to depart.

Capitulum xxvij^o

- 4 **A**Nd thenne eneas, aH affrayed of his grete vysion, Aeneas awakes in alarm,
 awaked sodaynly from his slepe / and thenne he rouses his men,
 called to hym aH the patrons & aH the maystres of
 the shipes, & incytyng the maryners for to departe in
 8 aH dyligence, he made some to hale vp the saylles, &
 thother for to drawe thanceres / & made theym to take
 their coores in hande, recounytyng & shewyng vnto
 them aH theffecte of his vysion / & how & by what
 12 rayson the grete god of heuen commaunded hym, by
 his messenger, that he must departe ryght soone / And
 for to hast them yet more / he admonested them of
 newe for to sprede & dyspoye the sayles & cordes *that*
 16 were wythin the shyppes, & to make soone redy aH
 thappareylle, & aHe that neded thenne for to departe
 incontynent / alwayes recommendyng hymselfe & aH
 his / to this grete god of maieste that had thus incyted
 20 & somoned hym / and to hym sayd in this manere :
 “ We folowe the, right holy god debonayr / whosomeuer
thou be, in grete deuocion, redy for to obey thy com-
 maundementes, ioyful & glade wythout extymacion ;
 24 and to the we praye deuoutely, that *thou* be of vs con-
 duyttor, & benyguly helpyng to the prosperous dys-
 posicion of y^e cours celestiaH & regyon stellyferaunt /
 yf her moeuyng were irryted ayenste vs by pestyferre
 28 influences, & bryng vs sauffe & peassyble to the portes
 of ytalye !” And anone drewe out his swerde clere &
 bright, & cutte asondre the *cables that with-helde the
 32 shippe within the hauen, & also made the mariners
 to rowe myghtyly for to be hastely thens ; the whiche
 with aHe dyligence forced hem to putte or sette their
 orys to the see, that soone was couered with the nauye
orders them to make ready for immediate departure,
prays to Iove,
[* sign. G iijj]
cuts the anchor ropes with his sword, and puts to sea.

CAP. XXVII.

The sea, angry at
being oppressed
by Aeneas's fleet,

becomes im-
patient and
stormy.

Aeneas is driven
to Sicily,

where reigns
Acestes, of
Trojan lineage.

[* sign. G iij
back]

that sayHed, partyng the waters asonder, whiche semed
brayenge right Impetuously by the tourment & flagita-
cyon wherof the see was bette in righte grete violence,
by the opressions of the shippes, that oppressid her in 4
their saiHyng, so *that* thei carfe waie in the water / &
yet the oorys that entred within her entraiHes, smotte
asonder her auuzient wawes, whiche she myght not
suffre nor pacyently bere / but reputed it to be doon 8
in opprobre and confusion, inhomynouse & fuH of
despyte / wherof it happed soone after, that the see
wexed right sore inpaeyent & indigned ; wherfor they
suffred moche whan the see was weH chaffed, and by 12
their fayte ayenste them sore moeued, as it is more
playnly spoken in the .v / boke of eneydos, where as the
harde & sorowfuH admiracions that theme made palm-
yerus, *that* was maistre of eneas shippe, ben declared, 16
whan he myght not withstande ne contreste the tour-
ment, fortune & tribulacion of the see, but that she was
maister ouer him & gouerneresse, and was constrayned
to habaundouze aHe his nauye to the fortune, that 20
cast hem in to the ysle of cicyle, wherof was kyng atte
that tyme, accestes, comen of the lynage troiame ; and
ther was be-grauen anchyses, the fader of eneas, that
deyde in makyng the vyage from troye in-to lybye / 24
And aHe thus they left the hauene of cartage, takyng
their way towarde ytalye / But or euer they coude
make aHe these dilygences for to departe, And that
they were as yet nygh the hauen in syght of the cyte / 28
And that the fayre lady Aurora, that holdeth the
spryng of the daye enclosed wythyn her chambre wyth
her swete spouse Tytan, Was rysen out of her couche /
* weH arayed, and had opened to hym the gate for to 32
go sprede abrode his newe lyght to iHustre & iHumyne
the landes, & delyuer theym from the derknes of the
nyghte / The quene dydo, that was not a slepe, seeng
the first openyng of the daye, sore besi to chässe the 36

tenebres calompnious away / arose vp lyghtly for to see out of her chambre wyndowes, & loked towarde the hauen, whiche she perceyued aH voyde & smothe,
 4 wythoute ony shippe there / And after castyng her sight ferder towarde the see / she sawe the saylles, wyth the flote of the shippes that made good waye. thenne byganne she, for grete distresse, to bete & smyte thre or
 8 four tymes wyth her fyste strongly ayenst her brest / & to pulle her fayr heres from her hed, as mad & beside herself / And spekyng to himself / sayd in this manere y^e worles that folowe / " O iupiter, souerayn god, and
 12 pryncipall of aH other, shaH thus departe sauily the false & euyl man enecas, that tratoursly hath mocked me, & fraudulently seducted / Is it not to me weH licyte to send after hym, & by force of armes to
 16 dystroye hym, and bryng alle to deth / And that alle they of my towne & eyte, goo to confounde and destroye hym alle attones / and breke and brynge his nauye aH to noughte / Goo, goo hastely, and destroye
 20 alle incontinent / sette aH on a fire ! kylle & slee, and brynge theym aHe to perdyceion / haue awaye these oores & saylles ! breñne, & brynge aH in-to ashes / take hede that nothing escape ! haue no mercy ne pyte of ony
 24 man that lyueth / foundre & droune altogider in-to the botome of the see, & perysshe aH in a somme, to thende, *that* of theym be no memorye nor nomore spoken emong y^e lyuyng peple vpon erthe / Alas, poure dydo,
 28 what sayst *thou*? in an euyl houre *thou* were borne / what thynkest *thou* doo / I trowe *that thou* art ferre out of thi good wytte, or eHis taken wyth right ewiH peruerse fantasyes, or that the goddes *that* ben wythout*te
 32 pyte & myserycorde, wyH peruerte & retourne thi grete clemence in-to furiose cruelte / Alas, it is not possible at this houre that *thou* sholdest now ouertake them / but this thou sholdest haue doon that tyme that
 36 *thou* receyued theym, whan they cam first, & arryued

CAP. XXVII.

Dido, arising early, sees Aeneas's fleet in the distance.

Her frantic grief.

She invokes Jupiter,

and prays for vengeance on the Trojans.

[* leaf G 5]

CAP. XXVII.

Men may say
Dido is cause of
Aeneas's going,
as she had not
endeavoured to
detain him.

[orig. & and]

Might she not
have destroyed
him and his son
while they were
with her, and
served up Asca-
nius as food to
his father?

Might she not
have burned his
ships and slain
all of them, and
then burned
herself?

[* leaf G 5, back]

She invokes the
Sun,

and Juno,

in-to thy londe afore that ony alyauces hadde ben, by
the, made wyth theym / Men sholde mow saye of the
now / that thou were cause of his goynge / and that he
bereth away wyth hym the pryue goddes that ben of thy 4
royame, for to assyste to the obsequyes & consecracyon
of anchyses, his olde fader / and that he is departed wyth
thyne assuraunce / by cause that in no wyse thou hast
not letted nor gaynsayd his goyng openly / whan he 8
dyde make his appareyl, for to make redy aH his
nauye / whiche thyng thou knew, and¹ was doon in thy
presence / Myghteste not thou, whan he was wythin
thy royame & wyth the, haue dystroyed his persone, 12
and his body to haue ben hawen in pyeces / and also
his felawes to haue ben caste in-to the depe see / And
in lyke wyse, his sone Ascanyus myghtest thou haue
made to be alle tohewen and chopped smaHe, And to 16
be soden and dressed, as it had be good mete, for to
haue made hym to be eten of hys fader / And to haue
sette hym in stede of other seruyse atte hys table /
And yf he wolde haue be wrothe ther-wyth, and 20
moeued werre ayenste me, Howe weHe that the for-
tune of ba[ta]yHe is doubtouse. Yet netheles I myghte
haue doo brenned his shippes / and conuerte hem aH
to ashes, to thende they myght not haue gone for to 24
purchase ony socours / And durynge the same, I myghte
haue doon brynge to the dethe, the fader asweH as the
sone, wyth aH their parentes and frendes of aH their
lynage, and myghte haue slayne, brent hem, or otherwyse 28
haue doon wyth theym after my playsur & wyH; and
therne wythin y^e fire I myghte * haue cast my self, for
to be ded after *that* I had be auenged of his falsenes
& oultrade / O fayre sonne, *that* shyneste fuH bright, *that* 32
iHumynest with thy beemes aH y^e werkes & operacions
of y^e erthe / O Iuno, the noble goddesse, vnder whome
aHe werkes & operacyions humayne, with their solici-
tudes, are gouerned and submysed after theirre disposicion, 36

euerych in certeyne or-dy[n]aunce to theym sette &
 stablyshed by thy deuynne prouydençe; highe,puissaunte,
 grete patronesse, lady & mastresse of aHe artes & scyences
 4 magyques, ryght often called with voyees vltatytue, by
 the grete quarfours, and by wayes within townes &
 cytees and eHis wher / In tyme of nyght obscure / O
 cru[e]He vltryces, wycked vengeresses / Furyes infernaHe
 8 & Iusticers of heHe; O aHe goddes & goddesses, haue
 pyte on me, sorowfuH Elysse, concluded & delibered to
 the deth, to y^e whiche I goo delyuere me vnto / Entende
 to my wordes, and enduce the crueHe goddes to punyshe
 12 the euyH men as they haue deserued / & playse you to
 receyue my prayers & oracions inuectytue *that* I doo make
 presently to you, yf it be so *that* the sacred destynacyes
 of y^e souerayne god Iupyer haue ordeyned that that
 16 traitour enecas, & vntrewe man, shaHe come sauely¹ in-to
 som hauen for to descende alonde hole & sounde, or *that*
 the ende of his lif be not yet come to his terme *that* pre-
 fixed was to him atte y^e first tyme of his birthe, at lest
 20 I prai you & requyre, *that* he may be vaynquished &
 recountred of hardy peple cruell / strong & rebell, & alle
 contrary to him, vexed, broken, & traueilled of grete
 batailles & assawtes / rebuked, reduced, & chassed from
 24 his lande & lordshipes / alwayes putte ther-from with-
 out to recouere eny place of his lande, whiche alwayes
 be so stronge & myghty ayenst hym, that he be expelled
 euermore ther-from, namely of Ascanyus his sone, and
 28 pryuated,² ouercome, and exyled out of alle / his kynnes-
 men & * frendes. to hym also be gyuen by neessite to
 requyre ayde & socours wyth gret requestes & prayers /
 and yf it happen *that* some other doo hym ony plaísur or
 32 som good, he haue therfore a myscheffe, sorow, peyn, &
 perpetuel myserye / In grete assawtes & in bataylles, be
 he slayne, & put to a cruel deth, ferful & horryble /
 AHe his folke, wythout mysericorde afore his eyen
 36 present, be put to anguysshe, & not mow socoure

CAP. XXVII.

Diana,

and the furies,
and prays them
to have pity on
her.

Dido's fearful
imprecations on
Aeneas and the
Trojans.

If Aeneas's time
have not yet
come, at any
rate may he be
engaged in cruel
war, defeated,
exiled,

[* leaf G 6]

and his friends
or allies put to a
cruel death.

¹ *orig.* saueyl. Mr. Huth's copy has 'saueyl.'² *orig.* pryuated

CAP. XXVII. theym, for to encrease his tormente / & whan he shaH
 May Aeneas take ony triews or make peas or alyauunce / that it be
 never have peace or quiet, aH at his owne prayer in confucion & greuauunce to his
 folysshe enterprise, & his dysnaauantage¹ / to his gret 4
 vitupere, hurt & charge / in somoche *that* he may faH
 therfor in a rage & grete sorowe / And yf it be so, *that*
 god forbede ! *that* by his tryews or alyauunce / som londe
 abydeth wyth hym for to make there his residence, he 8
 neuer be in a suerte to soirne there pesible / but aH
 atones, & wythout taryeng, he be cast therfrom sham-
 fuHy / & lyue, like mendycant, a poure lyf and nede-
 fuH / whiche maye come to hym sodaynly afore aH 12
 other werke, Sooner than to be sure of ony goole
 fortune ; And that after hys deth wythoute sepulture, as
 an hownde or other dounbe beste, be he caste in-to the
 depe shadowes of hel, ther to suffre tormentes right 16
 horrible & cruel / this is in effecte that whiche I
 requyre. It is my request & prayer / that to you I do
 make wyth an hole herte, at the last poynt of my lif
 whiche I doo offre to you / redy for to deye at this 20
 houre / receyue now ye my soule, wherof I make to
 you² a present / O ye tiryns, & aH they of fenyce *that*
 enhabite presently cartage, aH your parentes & frendes
 alyed / & aHe they of your affynite that now ben 24
 present / And that are to be borne herafter, yf ye euer
 toke playsure to doo to me ony thyng aggreable, I
 requyre and admonest you, at thys tyme byfore aHe
 other, that ye haue and bere enmyte³ & mortaH hate 28
 pardurable, ayenste *the false troians *that* goo for to con-
 quere & wynne Italie. And yf it happe by ony wyse
that they may haue dominacon, & conquere by their
 puissaunce som lande or region / I exhorte & admoneste 32
 you to make eternaH werre ayenst theym / this re-
 queste & ordenaunce *that* I make vnto you now, it is
 my bequest, it is my testament & my last wiH, my con-

but live the life
of a beggar,

and be buried
like a dog, and
his soul cast
into hell.

This is Dido's
dying prayer.

She bequeaths to
her Tyrians an
undying hatred
of the Trojan
race.

[* leaf G 6, back]

¹ for dysauantage

² orig. you

³ orig. eumyte

dieyHe, & my wiHyngre inreuoicable & permanent. And
to thende *that* yf by som wyse ye wil not accomplysse
it, or that your children after youre dethe wold putte
4 hit in oblyuion / I haue ordeyned & stablished that hit
shalbe writon in harde stone, wherof my sepulchre shalbe
closed, & right nyghe my bones it shalbe sette vpon my
visayge, to thende *that* it shal bere testymonage ayenst
8 you, yf in eny wyse ye putte hit out of memorie / *that*
god forbode it shulde so come to / but deffyaunce, with-
out to haue peas, and without benyuolence, werres /
discordes & bataiHes, I wyl that ye haue euermore with
12 theym / for of my bones & of myn ashes, after *that* they
be rotye in erthe, shaH yssue atte leste, how longe some
euer hit tarye, a vindicatour, and a man of ryght grete
courage & hardinesse / that shaH auenge this grete
16 treison of y^e false eneeas & of all his folke, whiche shaH
brene hem aH in a fyre & in flamme, & shaH slee &
distroie them in diuerse manere, som by wepen, y^e other
by hongre / som shaH be drowne in y^e see, some he
20 shaH make to be byhedde, & their membres to be
broken & aH to-hewen, y^e other to be hanged / & the
other within his prisons shalbe flain from hed to fote ;
y^e other he shal doo cast out of y^e windowes down to y^e
24 pauement ; & to other he shal make their eien to be
puffed out ; & many other euyHes he shall make them to
endure. their townes, their castelles, cites, lordshipes
& possessions, he shall take / their captayns of werre,
28 knightes & barons, he shall doo destroye, & banysshe
out of their landes, & shall tourne them in to grete
mendycyte. Theyre * wyues, that thenne shaH be come
to the astate of wydowhed, their daughters, & also their
32 children / their grete treysours, & aH that they be
worthe, shaH be rauysshed, habandoned / taken, &
departed in-to an hondreth thousand shippes / chassed,
caryed & transported & exyled from their contrey /
36 and putte oute of their nacyon / the one slayne, the

CAP. XXVII.

This is Dido's
dying and irre-
voicable bequest
to her people.

She prophesies
an avenger,

and terrible suf-
ferings at his
hands in future
years to the
descendants of
Aeneas.

[* leaf G 7]

CAP. XXVII.

This avenger,
who is to redeem
Dido's fair fame,
is Hannibal.

other in pr[i]son, in right grete seruage & captuyyte /
they shalbe solde as wylde bestes / iniuried, defoyled,
& beten / Theyr fayr doughters & their vyrgynes shaH be
habandouned to men by force, & deflowred / and to a 4
ryght grete shame deliuered, & vyolated ayenst their
wyHe. A hondred thousande euylles shaH be ap-
pareylled for theym, more than men can recounte ne
teHe / Thenne shaH my shame be socoured, & the 8
maculates taken from me, by HanybaH, that shaH be
borne of myn ashes / whiche shal be a man of grete
power & of grete renomee / preu, hardy, & cheualrouse
about aH men *that* shaH be in his tyme, so that memore 12
shalbe therof as longe as heuyn & erthe shaH last. but
in y^e meane while I make a request to you aH / & after
to your children, whan they shaH be borne, & to aH their
lygnage *that* of theym shaH come, vnto thende of the 16
worlde / that they make werre by armes & by bataylles /
by see & by londe / by assawtes & shippes, ayenst y^e
traytours troians, aslonge as they shaH lyue / & that y^e
see whiche is in oure lond, & the ryuages & portes & 20
the wawes, be to them repulsyng, contrare & rebel, euer
more." these thynges sayd by dydo, enraged from hir
good wytte / troubled in courage more than euer she
was, esprised fro aH partes, sekyng meanes moost subtil 24
to thende of her miserable lyf, whiche she can support
no lenger, soo veri she was of it / wyHyng to fynde som
meane to voyde oute of hir castel aH them *that* were
there / as she had of custume whan she wold do 28
sacrifyces, & *that* she myght abyde alone *for to delyuer
herself soon to deth / and *that* she were not empeshed
there-from / she dyd caH presently a goode olde woman
that made herself to be called barthe / y^e whiche long 32
tyme afore, whan she dweHed in thyr, was noryce, as it
was sayd, of hir late husbonde Sicheus / and kept her-
self yet alwayes styH wyth the sayd Elysse / as are
wonte to doo these auneyent good ladyes wyth there 36

Dido requests
her people
always to war
with the Trojans.

She finishes her
harangue, and
thinks of prepar-
ing to end her
life.

[* leaf G 7, back]

She sends Barea
to keep her sister
out of the way,

firste mastresses ;—but she called not her owne noryce
that had kepte her in her childhode, by cause that she
 was decessed in the regyon of fenyece ;—And sayd in this
 4 maner to the for-sayd barthe, for to be rydded of her :
 “ My good moder barthe, goo lyghtly towarde my suster
 anne, & teHe her that she make hast for to rise, & aaye
 herself as it was of custome whan men wolde doo
 8 sacrificye / and that she brynge wyth her promptly
 the shepe & other bestes, wyth the other pynacles
 dedycated to the sacryfice, that long agoo I dyde shewe
 to her / And also it behoueth of thy parte, for to
 12 admynystre the werkes, that thou take the vestymentes,
 & the myter vpon thy hede, for to fulmake thoblacyon
 to pluto, the grete god of heH, admyraH of the styge /
 whiche is a grete pounde of fyre brenninge, that renneth
 16 through all heHe / composed & made of brymston & of
 pitche: this immolacion I haue purposed to doo vnto hym
 wyth my besy thought, for to put an ende to my grete
 tribulacions & care ennuyouse / for the whiche cause
 20 I wyHe kindle a grete fire, for to brenne the raymentes
 of eneas, his ymage, *that*¹ are lefte wyth me / wherwyth
 I shaH do sacrificye to y^e grete flood infernaH, to thende
 he be moeued wyth hate ayenst hym / whan by deth
 24 his trist soule shalbe delyuered to him after thise
 thynges.” this said, barthe went hir waye hastely, as her
 olde age myght suffre it ; & lefte there her mastres dido,
that quyuered & shoke of grete rage, & entred into a
 28 grete fransie, desiryng tacomplysshe *that* purpos of hir
 deth / wherof y^e dredfuH remembraunce, redy to be exe-
 cuted, troubled hir in suche wy^{*se}, that it made aH hir
 wyttes to torne in to a wyked kynde, and in a mynde for
 32 to destroye the first composicion, coagulate in couenable
 proporcion for the entreteyny[*u*]ge of the spiryte vitaH ;
 wherof her fayre eyen, grene² and lawghynge, were in-
 contynent tourned in-to a right hidouse lokyng mobyle,
 36 & sangwynouse to see / the swete baHe of the eye,

CAP. XXVI.

on pretence of
 preparing a
 sacrifice to Pluto,
 at which Barce
 must assist.

Dido will burn
 Aeneas's raiment
 to move the in-
 fernal regions to
 hatred towards
 him.

Dido's agitation
 when left by
 Barce.

[* leaf G 8]

¹ for his thynges that ² orig. greue. See p. 112, l. 25.

CAP. XXVII. whiche is the veraye receptacle interyor of lyght visible /
 and Iuge of the colours by reflection obgectyf, whiche
 she bryngeth vnto the Impression cogytyue of the
 entendement / wherof she maketh a present to the 4
 suppost indicatyf, discernynge without interuaHe the
 differences abstractyue adherynge to theyr subgecte,
 was sone made obscure, & her lyght empesched from
 the veraye Iugyng in parfyt knowlege / her tendre 8
 chykes and vysage, that afore was playsaunt & debon-
 nayre, of sangwyne coloure tournyng vpon white /
 becam aHe pale sodaynly in hydouse manere, & aH
 mortyfied for the crueHe deth, wherof the harde ang- 12
 wysshes had enuahyshed her alre dy, & with grete furye
 betaken & cast, went & mounted the degrees aH¹ highe
 vpon her palayce, tyl *that* she came ther as y^e wode was
 assembled for to kendle ther a fyre. In whiche place, 16
 y^e habilements, the bed, & *that* other thinges, with y^e
 Image of eneas, & also his swerde, were brought for to
 be brente, & cast out of memorye; the whiche dydo, aHe
 thus vexed & troubled in her wittes, drewe y^e swerde 20
 out of y^e shethe for to murder & slee herself. but or
 euer she wolde doo this, she dide loke vpon y^e habili-
 mentes / the bed, & other remenaunt, *that* by other tymes
 afore had plaised her soo moche / & *therne* she began 24
 somewhat for to lacryme & syghe vpon the bed, where
 she put herself, in proferryng her last wordes in this
 manere: "O right swete dispoillynges plaisaunt, weH
 loued & honoured of me somtyme, aslonge as god & 28
 fortune wolde, I beseche you take my sowle, and
 delyuere her out of thys care, And from these sorowfuHe
 peynes / * in whiche I am absorbed in the grete viage
 of heuynes / I haue lyued vnto this tyme presente, and 32
 haue fynysshed the cours of my lyffe that fortune had
 gyuen to me. It is now tyme presently that the ymage
 of my semblaunce be sent vnder the erthe / I haue had
 of peynes and traueyHes by my brother pygmalyon, 36

Dido's appear-
 ance is changed
 by her distress.

She ascends
 alone to where
 the altar was
 made, and
 Aeneas's dress,
 image, and sword
 laid out.

She looks on
 these memorials
 and laments.

[* leaf G 8, back]

that made to deye crueHy my first husband sycheus,
 wherof I haue ben ynonghe¹ auenged by me, and holde
 me content therof; I haue edified my cite, fayre, noble,
 4 puissaunt and riche; I haue seen the waHes, and batel-
 mentes, & the deffenses, accomplysshed. O felycyte
 merueiHouse, wherof I shulde be weH happy, and aboue
 aHe other honoured, weH loued and holden fuHe dere, yf
 8 the nauye of the troyens had not come wythin my
 stremes of the see! O hard commynge, and cursed re-
 cepeion intrynseque / false, daungerouse, and fuH of
 grete dispite, that hathe brought me in-to confusion /
 12 O tryste machynacyon of trayson, approued fuH of
 frawdulouse induction / that hath delyuered me to
 a shamefuH dethe, whiche shaH come to me sodaynly,
 and presently without taryenge." And ascryed wyth a
 16 hÿghe voyce, saynge in thys wyse: "Must I thenne
 deye thus falsly, wythout to be auenged of that traytour
 theffe, and crueH, by whome I am vitupered so sore and
 defyled / Nowe thenne sith it is so, I wiH soone deye
 20 lastly, and sende my goost sodaynly vnto the lowe
 shadowes / I shulde deye more gladly yf Eneas were
 here present, for to see the dethe and grete tourmente
 that for hym I muste endure, to thende that he were
 24 therof contryste, in remembrance pardurable, aslong as
 that his lyffe shaH laste; and syth that otherwise it can
 not be, I goo to my dethe, whiche to hym shalbe in-
 puted and represented by the inspecyon of the grete
 28 fyre that soone shalbe kendled in this place /"

CAP. XXVII.

All went well
 till the coming of
 the Trojans.

Dido laments her
 approaching
 shameful death,

and grieues that
 Aeneas is not pre-
 sent to see the
 torments she
 suffers for him.

¶ How dydo, fuH of grete rage, and dys-
 powruyed of witte, * slewe herself with
 the swerde of eneas / And how be it that
 32 aboue is made mension of this ocsicion,
 it was nothing but for to shewe the

[* sign. H j]

¹ orig. yncnghe

CAP. XXVIII.

diuersite of fortune. And here the execution of the dede is shewed

¶ Capitulum xxviii

Dido falls on
Aeneas's sword.

THe whiche thynges thus made & sayde, without 4
 eny more langage / dydo, full of rage, seased
 thenne the swerde of eneas, whiche she helde
 the poynte vpward, & vpon hit dede cast her self, so that
 the swerde entred within her brest, vnto the bake of 8
 her / This lady thenne felle doune to the grownde, sore
 hurt with a wounde mortall, wherof she lost her speche,
 labourynge sore harde atte the entree of her dethe so
 cruell / as many one doo whan they be atte the poynt 12
 of deth, that tormente herself strongli for the harde
 distresse that they haue atte the partynge of the
 spyryte of lyffe fro the bodye, that wyl not leue the
 membres pryncipall, of whom he is susteyned / but yf 16
 it be by grete violence, atte leste whan the cause is
 meanely sodayne, & not all mortyfyed attones. all thus
 was this sorowfull lady founde on the grounde,¹ that
 coude not ryse, her handes, & her persone all couered 20
 & defyled with blood without mesure, & the swerde
 that dropped yet of bloode, and all bloody, laye by her.
 wherof a grete sorowe, a grete crye, and grete clamour
 was thenne attones sodaynly made thurgh all the 24
 palayce, that perced the wailes & tours vnto the
 myddes of the towne / ther shulde ye haue seen make
 grete lamentacyons, grete cryes / grete playntes and
 grete moone; wymen wepe, sighe, & makyng sorowe; 28
 & all y^e peple was all forsened with wrathe / Wher-
 of the cytee was sore moeued in grete desolacyon, by
 suche wise & forme as though y^e enmyes capitalle
 of the towne had entred by force of armes wythin 32
 the same, for to brynge theym all to destruction.
 or as that the grete and aunycient towne of thyr,

She is found
covered with
blood.

Great lamenta-
tion and uproar
in the city.

¹ orig. grounde

that hath *nourysshed theym, and the same cyte of
 cartage, had be bothe embrased wyth fire alle kyndled
 in a flamme / By the whiche grete noyse and
 4 disaraye, anne, the suster of dydo, that was goon some
 for to make redy the thynges *that* neded for to make the
 sacrificee / vnderstandyng thenne weH / that the sorow
 & grete moone that was made thurgh the aHe the towne,
 8 was for her suster dydo, that had slayne herselfe /
 wherof she aH atones forsened, as a persone that ys
 madde & out of her mynde / toke herselfe for to renne
 as faste as she myghte, passyng thurgh the multytude
 12 of the people that was there, smytyng her brestes
 wyth her handes & fustes, and aHe to-cratched her face
 wyth her nayles / And cryed aHe highe & pyetously,
 made grete rewthes and lamentacyons / callyng vpon
 16 dydo, sayeng in this wise / "My righte swete suster, alas,
 what haste thou doo / and by what maner & rayson
 hast *thou* broughte thi selfe thus to eternaH perdyceyon /
 and has deceyued me wyckedly & falsely wyth a bytter
 20 deth / whiche I wolde gladly haue suffred & endured
 wyth the / Alas, what nede was it to me to make redy
 the sacrificees / sith that a fyre for aH other obsequyes
 & a swerde weH sharpe slyped, myghte haue broughte
 24 the two susters to deth bothe atones, wythout to haue
 be departed one from the othre. Alas, what shaHe I
 saye, ne what begynnynge maye I now take for to
 make my mone / Why haste you thus dysprayed me
 28 that am thy suster and true felawe? aHe my lyf I haue
 honoured, worshiped, serued & prayed the / and eke
 moche loued the. For to folowe the, I haue alle
 habandoned / I haue knowen thy werke. I haue
 32 knowen thy wyll / and also thy secretes thou wolde
 neuer hide from me / Alas now, what furye hath taken
 the atte this nede / whiche is the sorowe mortalle /
 for to haue caste me thus abacke from thy presence / by
 36 cause *that* I sholde * haue had not knowen this faicte.

CAP. XXVIII.

[* sign. H j,
back]The noyse reaches
Anna's ears.Anna's lament
over Dido.Why did Dido
deceive her?

[* sign. II ij]

CAP. XXVIII.

Anna would have
died with her
sister Dido,

who by her
death has
brought disgrace
on her city.

Under Anna's
care Dido re-
vives a little.

[* sign. H ij,
back]

“Alas! yf I myght hane knowen the same thyng, veraye
trouthe I wolde haue deyed with the / O what sorowe
I doo supporte, whan I haue lost aHe my force / and
noon ther is that me recomforteth ; but of aHe sydes is 4
brought to me peyne & traueyHe without mesure /
the grete wrathe and the grete care that wrongly,
and magre myself, I doo endure, whan I me recorde
of the Iniure that my suster hath falsly doon, not 8
onely to me / but hathe defyled vylaynsly the good
name and the enhaunsynge of the cytee that she
hathe coummysed, and submysed to a grete vilete &
shame ; for aHe tymes shalbe recyted the enormyte 12
of this fowHe befaHe, whiche euer shalbe imputed
to a grete infamy, wherof they of cartage shaHe
haue a blame, *that* shaHe torne vnto them to a grete
diffamy. And moche more, bycause of their good 16
fame that was knowen / that had be weH entreteyned,
and in grete worshp susteyned / yf my suster had
mayntened and kept herself wythout dysperacyon /
Wherof aHe hope / as weH to theym as to me, failleth, 20
by her *that* hath extyncted oure goode renomnee, &
brought vs in a grete blame ; & now be we without
pastoure, as the sheep that is habaundoned ! Now
thenne, sith that it is thus come / lete vs loke to her 24
wounde, and in her face, yf she is thrughly passed” / and
thenne she toke her vp bytwene her armes, and with
ryght grete sorowe and heuynesse / washed the blode
away from about the sore, and made it elene fulle 28
swetly wyth hir owne raymentes / And perceyued
and knewe that yet some spyryte of lyffe was wythin
the persoune of Dydo, that forced her self for to open
her eyen / And thre tymes made her effort to reyse 32
her self vpon her elbowe. But her strengthes sore
fayHed, of the dethe that alreedy hadde her aHe in her
rewle, myght not therto suffyse, but that she * muste
falle ayen attones vpon her bedde, where she hadde 36

be layd / And knowynge that she wasted alle awaye, CAP. XXVIII.
 she dyd forse her owne self for to open her eyen / to Dido opens her
 see the lyghte of the daye, that gryeued her sorowe eyes,
 4 weH harde and sharpely, and by suche a wyse that she
 entred incontynente, in grete peyne, to the extreme then falls into
 angwysse of the dethe, where she was ryght longe / the death
 Wherof Iuno, the noble goddesse conseruatyue of struggle.
 8 yongthe, that hadde pyte of the longe sorowe mortalle
 in whiche was constytuted the fayr Elysse or dydo /
 sente towarde hir, for to brynge atte an ende hir
 Immense trystesse, hir noble messenger named Yris /
 12 whiche, as some saen, is the rayen bowe, with hir fayr
 cote of dyuerse fygures, For to vnbynde the rotes of Juno sends Iris
 the spyrite vytalle from the membres of hir body, to unbind her
 whiche were thenne in grete opposicyon and debate struggling spirit.
 16 one ayenste another / By cause that the humydyte
 radycalle, and other complexeyons in proporeyon con-
 uenable, coencluyed¹ togyder, Dyde receyue the gooste
 soo that it coude not goo there-from by hit selfe,
 20 wythoute ayde of other / Also that hir deth natur-
 alle oughte not to hauen comen yet of longe tyme /
 But by accydente and harde fortune / whiche is
 gladdely euyH and dyuerse to theym that she by-
 24 holdeth awrye, was broughte in to suche dysperacyon /
 not for noo crymynaffe cause, nor for noon other
 thyng wherof she oughte to suffre dethe / nor to
 endure ony peyne or sufferance / that she slewe her
 28 self And thenne after that, arose proserpyne, wyffe and
 spouse to Pluto, the ryghte grete god infernalle / The power of
 whiche holdeth vnder her domynacon the persones Proserpine
 that be Inueterate of euyH dayes / And they that ben over mortals.
 32 in grete sorowes, to whom she admynystred alle the
 deturpacyons and the * hardenesse of olde age / as to [* sign. H iij]
 some while that they be slepyng / she setteth white
 herres on the grounde of their hedes; Some she
 36 maketh scabbed and fuH of ytche, the feete to be grete

¹ for coenclined.

CAP. XXVIII. and swollen / And thenne the gowte or the poplesie,
 The evils in- the styches or the paraleseye, The dehylyte or feble-
 flicted on mor- nes / and of the eyen appayreth the sighte, and
 tals by Proser- replenysseth them alle wyth teeres / and the lyddes 4
 pine, loss of sight, of the eyen wyth fylthe, soo that whan they ryse in
 the mornynge, they must be washed wyth wyne or
 of memory, wyth some other lauatorye / And to other, she maketh
 their memorye to waxe feble, and conuerteth it in-to 8
 ygnoraunce; She taketh from them the puyssaunce
 of strength, that they hadde fyrste, and hath awaye fro them
 furtyuely, by proces of tyme, aH their strengthes, one
 after another, by cause noon shalle be aware of her, for 12
 doubtte that she be not deceyued. And after, she
 of stature, maketh them coked, and boweth their bodyes,
 hangynge their hedes to the grounde-warde, alle fuH
 of care, and as countrefete, asweH the men as the 16
 wymmen / to the whiche, for to bere to them a
 dyffame / taketh theyr fayr colour awaye, and maketh
 them as pale as ashes / To other, she gyueth rednes,
 of complexion, wyth a highe coloure ouer excessyue and dyshonneste; 20
 and the yelowe heres of theyr heddes, she maketh
 them to loke lyke rousset / or lyke the coloure of an
 olde bere / She after shorteth theyr retentyue brethe,
 of breath, and molyfyeth in them alle theyr bloode: And noon 24
 otherwyse it ys to be supposed, but that she doeth in
 lyke wyse of alle the remenaunte / For she goeth
 ledynge alle in equaH proporeyon, and maketh them
 of beauty, dystribucyon by the temples and in the face, of grete 28
 ryueles and fromples, that putte oute the beaulte of
 the playsaunte vysage, that she sheweth aH wyth
 cordage, * asweH in the nek as aboute the temples /
 We haue therof many exemples / Nomore therof 32
 we wyH now speke / It is so lothely to here / Also
 weH harde it is to me, to teH therof that I haue sayde
 afore / but to thende that eny gaynsaynge sholde be
 Imputed ayenst me / to haue obmyssed for to dysente 36

[* sign. II iij,
back]

som of the condyecons and euyH operacyons of the
 cursed proserpyne, that is more sore prykyng
 the thorne / I haue sette thees here for to vnderstande
 4 the other better, that men shaHe mowe take In lyke
 conformyte, as it is recyted aboue /

CAP. XXIX.

Proserpine's
evil deeds.

¶ Of the beaulte of dydo

¶ Capitulum / xxix

8 **T**His proserpyne, of whome I speke / how be it
 that of aHe her werkes and subtyHe artyfyces
 wherof she is wonte to vse, had not in noo wyse
 wrought for dydo, nor hade not yet enprynted in her
 12 persone eny sygne of olde age, nor other thyng
 wherby she shulde directely haue pretended vpon her
 eny ryght, Alwayes she wolde force her self to haue
 for her part the soule of Elysse / sayenge, that she
 16 hadde slayn herself by dysperacion, as for cause of
 furye and of rage, whiche is a thinge Inhumayne,
 dependynge of the operacyons and wodnesses of heHe,
 that she herself hathe enprynted in her persone,
 20 wherunto she hath subdued and submytted herself,
 wherfore by reson she oughte to abyde vnder her /
 as we see by example famyler, whan som body hathe
 submytted hymself by oblygacion to the iurisdieyon of
 24 some Iuge, the saide iuge is capable for to haue the
 knowlege therof, how be it that to-fore the oblygacion
 was made / the persone was exempt of his Iurisdieyon.
 And afre thees raysons, and othre that were to longe
 28 to be recounted, proserpyne sayde that elysse ought to
 abyde with her, as she that had submyted *her self to
 her lawes and Iurysdyctions / But the fayre Iris, that
 departed from heuene by the commaundement of the
 32 goddessse Iuno, descendynge by the clowdes with her
 gylte feders at the oposyte of the sonne, ornated with
 a thousaunde colours / Came and sette her self vpon
 the hede of Dydo / And for an aunswere to the

Proserpine
claims Dido's
soul,as she had caused
her own death,
and so come
under Proser-
pine's jurisdic-
tion.

[* sign. II iij]

Iris descends on
Dido's head.

CAP. XXIX. adlegacyons of Proserpyne, sayde to her thees thynges /
 "Thys is of rayson wryton, whan eny persone noble is
 in debate betwene two partyes, that the mooste parent
 heyre of the lynage, and that commeth of lawefulle
 yssue, shalbe proferred afore that other partye, and
 shaHe bere the name awaye wyth hym, namely whan
 he is of the fyrste yssue / And also that he hath the
 gretter parte in the herytage, and hath doon many
 aquysycions, amendynges and reparacyons / ¶ Now it
 is soo, that the goddessse Inno, whos ryghte for to
 deffende and kepe I am sent hither / hathe produced
 in her, beynge in this possessyons / that is to wyte,
 Elysse, wherof we vnderstande betwix vs two / And
 hathe made her to be borne, hathe brought her to the
 worlde, and hathe alymented and noryshed her from
 the owre of hyr birthe vnto this tyme present / And
 hathe gyuen vnto her soo many fayre yeftes of nature /
 As in beaulte corporeHe / yongthe, weH made of her
 membres, eche in his qualyte, and ryght egaH in
 proporeyon, without eny dyfformyte / the hede weH
 sette by mesure vpon the nek, fayre heerys and long
 yelow tresses, hangyng betwene two sholders to the
 heles of her / her forched brod and highe ynoughe /
 the browes traytice and broun, and the lydes of the
 eyen acordyng to the same ; the eyen grene, & open by
 mesure, lawghyngeand of swete loke ; a fayre & weH com-
 passed visage ouer the forhede, aH ynoughe coloured /
 A *meane noose, not to grete nor to lyteH, wythout ouer
 grete openyng / A lyteH mouthe with roddy lypes /
 And atte the chickes, two lyteH pittes / & one, In lyke
 wyse, at the chynne / The tethe whyte / smalle, and
 weH Ioyned togyder / A rounde chynne that was not
 ouer longe ; A whyte coloure, with a bryght hew there-
 with-aHe, some what tendyng to the rede / the necke
 longe ynoughe by goode mesure, bygge ynoughe towarde
 the lowest part, and traytise on the backe syde / the

Iris opposes
Proserpine.

Iris recites the
beauties of Dido,

[* sign. H iij,
back]

both in face and
figure.

throate quyeke, and without spotte or macule / longe
 armes and smaHe, the sholders and the backe flat, the
 brestes weH sette, with a grete space betwix bothe the
 4 pappes, that be rounde and sette of a heyght / smalle
 of body, and large atte the Raynes / The thyes harde
 and grete, withoute eny blemysyunge / Fatte ynoughe,
 asweHe the body as the membres / The legges weH
 8 loyned, and somewhat small on the neder parte / lytHe
 feet and smaHe, with the toes weH euyne sette togyder /
 white vnder clothes, and fulle swete and smothe of
 skynne / smale handes, soupple and thynne, with long
 12 fyngers and smaHe, and the naylles weH euyne; swete
 voyce, of fayre eloquence and weH in langage, sadde of
 behaoure, and of symple contenance / plaisaunt for
 to see, & replenyshed of aH good condicyons, like as it
 16 were one of y^e wymen best accomplished *that* nature had
 produced syth her begynnyng vnto that tyme. Where-
 fore themne, sith that thou, proserpyne, can not shewe
 noon other rayson but the sayde submyssion wherof
 20 thou hast spoken here afore / I saye, for to kepe
 equyte / that ther was som deceptyon or frawdulent
 induction that hath made her to condescende therunto,
 as men may manyfestly apperceyue by the premysses a-
 24 boue writon, that see theym all alonge; wherfore the
 falle well vnderstande, well *assoylled well & deffended,
 may welle haue releuement / But a nother waye I shaft
 take with the, yf thou wylt be of accorde and content /
 28 bicause themne that, after thy poure and myserable
 descendynge in-to heHe, in the coniunction makynge of
 the with Pluto, Thy fayre heerys were tourned to
 In-horyble and hydouse serpentis sette vpon thy hede, I
 32 shaH gyue to the, theym of dydo, for to make sacrefyces
 therwith vnto the derk shadowes, and tygres infernaHe /
 Yf thou wiHe renounce aHe the ryght that thou pretendest
 vpon her." Wherfore themne Yrys made the fayre herys
 36 of dydo to be cutte, and toke theym to proserpyne;

CAP. XXIX.

Iris describes
Dido's beauty,declines to give
up her soul,

[* leaf H 5]

and gives Pro-
serpine Dido's
hair in exchange
for her claim,
Proserpine's
hair having been
turned into
snakes when she
went down to
the infernal
regions.

CAP. XXX.

His unbinds the
members from
the spirit, and
Dido expires.

And thenne she toke vp-on her selfe for to vnbynde
the membres from the spyrite of lyffe, wherof the hete
was soone extyncted, and was anone ranyshed with the
wyndes, that bare her awaye a grete pas, and delyuered 4
her free and quytte to that place, after her demeryte,
that to aHe folke is propyee, as it is ordeyned by the
prouydenche deuyne, wherof the regne shaHe neuer
fynyshe / 8

¶ how Eneas saiffed, & how by tempest he
arryued in cecyHe ¶ Capitulum xxx

We leave Dido.

Aeneas's voyage
to Italy.

A storm turns
their course.

[* leaf II 5, back]

They land in
Sicily.

Accestes the King
receives them
gladly.

WHat shaH I more saye of the quene dydo, nor
of her sorowe that she made, nor also of the 12
grete moone *that* her folke made for her after that she
was dede / But now I shaH teHe of Eneas, *that* went in
to Italye, for to haue the londe that y^e goddes had
promysed vnto hym / whan thenne they had rozne & 16
saylled so moche *that* they were in the highe see / a
stronge weddre arose, that brought to them a grete
tempeste, soo that they wist not what they shulde doo
nor saye, & habanndouned theyr saylles, for to bere 20
theyre shippes atte y^e wille of y^e horrible wyndes, in
whos power they were / y^e mayster maryner said, after
his semynge, by y^e sterres *that* he sawe, **that* they made
waye towarde Cecylle, wherof Accestes was kynge / 24
Whan Eneas herde thus speke the maryner, he was
therof gladde / and sayd, that to noone other londe he
wolde more gladdely goo, yf the goddesse wolde ; For
Accestes was his frende, and of the lygnage of the 28
Troians ; And also the sepulture of his fader Anchises
was there / Soone after ceased the tempeste / and they
saylled soo longe that they arryued in Accestes londe /
that hadde grete Ioye whan he knewe of theyr 32
comynge / And soone after that they were entred in-to
the hauen / Accestes ryght gladdely receyued theym
wyth grete Ioye / Whan the morne come, Eneas spake

to Accestes, the kynge of the londe / and to his barons /
 and sayd to theym in this wyse / 'That the annyuer-
 sarye of his fader he wolde make, and that he was
 4 ryght gladde that he was come there soo sone / And
 that he wyste weHe that hit was the wylle of the
 goddes' / Thenne ordeyned and aduysed, Accestes and
 Eneas, for to make playes of dyuerse maners abowte
 8 the tombe of Anchyses / Wherefore the yonge bachelers
 shewed there theyr prowesse, Tourned theyr horses,
 and ranne and lepte / and proued theym selfe one
 ageynste another / And atte this annyuersarye that
 12 Eneas dyde doo make for his fader / was made moche
 of prowesse, For alle they that were there dide putte
 hemselfe in peyne for to doo weH, asweH Eneas folke,
 as they of Accestes

CAP. XXXI.

Aeneas cele-
 brates games at
 the sepulchre of
 Anchises.

16 ¶ How Eneas toke the see for to seke the
 region of Ytalye: Capitulum xxxj^o

Whan they were comen ayen from y^e sepulture of
 anchises, theyr shyppes were set in a fyre, & had
 20 ben aH brent, yf it had not be a messenger *that* anounced
 this to theym *there as they were / And sayde / that
 the ladyes that were within the shippes, hadde set
 them In a fyre / Bycause they wolde fayne make
 24 there theyre dweHyng place; for they hadde ben
 seuen yere and more out of theyre countreye, & were
 sore wery and broken of theyre longe vyage.

[* leaf H 6]

During the
 games, the
 women, un-
 willing to go
 farther, set fire
 to the ships,
 which are with
 difficulty saved,

¶ Whan they vnderstode thyse tydynges, Ascanyus,
 28 that was sette vpon a ryche courser, went with other in
 hys companye, and resened the shyppes wyth grete
 peyne / but aHe wayes there were thre of theyme loste
 and brente / After thys was doon, Eneas was
 32 counseyHed¹ that he shulde begynne to bylde ther a
 newe cytee, whiche he sholde people with the folke
 that were comen with hym, that were not able to bere

Aeneas founds a
 town, first called
 New Troy, after-
 wards Accesta,
 for the aged and
 infirm.

¹ *orig.* conuseylled

CAP. XXXI. armes, nor for to goo to batayHe / And thus he dede it
 by the wyHe of Aceestes / And deuysed the gretenes
 of the cytee, and sayde that it sholde be called the newe
 troye / But they of the countrey named her aftrewarde 4
 Aceestre, for the worshype of Aceestes, by whome aHe
 the lande was gouerned. In the same cytee, lefte Eneas
 the wymmen, and the chylidren, and the olde men / and
 helped hymself with thoos that were stronge, and that 8
 myghte weHe endure the traueyHes of batayHe, for to
 haue theym with hym In Italye / A fewe men he
 hadde, but they were gode and socourable, bothe by see
 and by the lande / whan this was doon, and that Eneas 12
 hadde doo make the tombe of hys fader / He toke hys
 leue of the kynge, and of hys owne folke that he lefte
 behynde for to enhabyte there, that made grete sorowe
 for hys departynge / Thenne retourned Eneas, with his 16
 folke that sholde goo with hym In-to Italye, and entred
 hys shyppes that were weH appareyHed, And made the
 sayHes to be *hyssed vppe, toke vp theyr aneres / and
 departed from the rode. Thenne myghte ye haue seen 20
 the ladyes and other wepe fuH sore / makynge grete
 moone for their frendes and theyr chylidren that they
 sawe departe from theym. Eneas wente streyghte /
 towarde ytaly / but one thyng happed euyH to theym / 24
 For theyr chyeff maryner, that vpon a nyghte was halfe
 a slepe vpon the foreasteH / felle down in to the see, and
 was drowned, wherof Eneas was ful sory, and alle his
 folke also / And soone after, they landed in an yle 28
 whiche is called Tulyola, where was a cyte that was
 named Thetys, after Thetys the neuewe of Eneas, that
 gatte hit and peopled it, after that he hadde conquered
 alle Ytalye. ¶ I haue broughte this cyte to memorye, 32
 by cause that many haue harde speke of Dedalus, that
 fleded there for fere of the kynge Mynos of Crete, that
 wolde slee hym ¶ I shalle telle you the cause why, and
 shalle leue awhyle to speke of Eneas / The wyffe of 36

The women,
 children, and old
 men are left
 behind in Sicily.

Eneas bids
 farewell to
 Aceestes, and
 sails for Italye.

(* leaf H 6, back)

Death of
 Palinurus.

They land at
 Cumæ in Italye.

The story of
 Dædalus, and
 how he came to
 Italy from Crete.

kyng Mynos of Crete, was named Pasyfa, that was a grete lady and a fayre, aboue alle other ladyes of the royame / Dedalus dwelled that tyme in Crete / and
 4 was a wyse man called, and a goode man of werre.
 The quene Pasifa was wyth chylde by kyng Mynos / and whan her tyme was comen, she was deliuered of a creature that was halfe a man and halfe a bulle, whiche
 8 was called Mynothaurus / and was norysshed by the commaundemente of the kyng, that wende hit hadde be his sone, And became soo terryble, that the kyng was counseyllled for to shytte hym vp som where in a
 12 stronge holde / And for this cause, was dedalus sente for to the kyng Mynos / by whos requeste & commaundemente, this dedalus deuysel & made a house of *merueyllouse composicyon, where were asmany
 16 walles as were there chambres, that were in grete nombre; and euery chambre was walled and closed rounde aboute, and yet myghte one goo from one to a nother. And yf some body had be shette therin / he
 20 coude never fynde the firste entree therof, for to come oute ayen; For an hondred dores were there; and whosomeuer went in, after he was ones paste the firste dore, he myghte neuer come oute ayen / and wyst not
 24 where he was. Wythin this place was Mynotaurus broughte / They of Athenes muste sende eueri yere for a trybute to the kyng Mynos of Crete, as to theyr souerayne lorde, seuen men and seuen wymen / vnder
 28 the age of xxv. yeres / And whan this foureten¹ persones were come to Crete / the kyng made theym to be putte wythin the forsayd house wyth his monstre, that deuoured theym fuH soone / Egeus was at that tyme
 32 kyng of Athenes, whiche was sore an-angred in his herte of suche a seruage / And by cause he myghte not amende hit / he wente and soughte after an aunswere, to

CAP. XXXI.

Pasiphæe was wife of Minos, King of Crete.

The Minotaur, for whom

[* leaf H 7]

Dædalus constructs the Labyrinth.

The tribute of Aegæus, King of Athens, to Minos, seven youths and seven damscels.

¹ orig. foureten

CAP. XXXI.

Aegeus consults
the oracle of
Minerva,

and sends his
son Theseus to
Crete.

The signal
agreed on by
Aegeus and
Theseus.

[* leaf II 7, back]

Story of Theseus
and Ariadne, the
daughter of
Minos.

Ariadne consults
Dadalus as to
how to save
Theseus from
the Minotaur.

Advice of
Dadalus.

the temple of Mynerue / for to knowe what he sholde
doo of this thyng.

¶ The goddesse Mynerue gaaffe hym answeere / that
he sholde sende his sone Theseus in-to thralldome to 4
the kyng of Crete. This Theseus was a fayr knyghte /
preu, valyaunt / and hardy / And sayd to his fader
that he sholde goo there / Syth that the goddes were
soo playseed. he thenne made hym redy, and toke his 8
waye / And whan he toke hys leue of his fader / he
commaunded to hym that he sholde bere whyte saylles
in his shyppe, yf he happed to retourne sauffe wythout
pereille / In sygne of vycторыe. 12

And theseus sayd he sholde doo soo, yf the goddes
wolde brynge hym ayenne alyue. kyng Mynos hadde
a doughter that was called Adryane / whiche, whan
she sawe * Theseus, that was so fayre and so amyable, 16
and that was come for to be in thralldome vnder her
fader / she hadde pyte of hym / and for hys honneste
behauoure / Began to be taken with his loue / And
vnto hym vpon a daye she sayde / that ‘yf he wolde 20
brynge her in-to his countreye with hym / She shulde
soone delyuere hym from the handes of her fader
Mynos’ / Theseus made this couenaunt with her and
promysede her for to kepe it truly and weH / The 24
lady wente anone to Dedalus, and requyred and asked
hym how she myght delyuere Theseus / Dedalus tolde
her / that ‘theseus shulde meddle pyche and towe bothe
to gyder, and that he shulde bere thesame with hym / 28
And whan he shulde come afore the monstre, he shulde
cast it before hym, whiche anoon sholde come for to
ete it ; But he shulde neuer conne chewe it so moche,
that he sholde not swalowe hit, nor haue it out of hys 32
mouthe / And whyles that the monstre were thus besy
and sore occupied / theseus myght slee hym lightly /
And whan he shaHe come to the fyrst dore of the
house, he must take wyth hym a botom of threde, and 36

the end of hit he shaHe make fast to the fyrste dore,
 and so goc forthe, wyndyng of this botom of threde
 tyl he be come to his aboue of hys entrepryse ; And by
 4 the threde, that he shaHe wynde vp to-gyder, he shaHe
 mowe retourne lyghtly to the fyrst dore where he went
 ynnē / Thus dyde Theseus, by the counseyHe of the
 lady, and slewe the monstre, and came ayen oute of the
 8 place fuH soone / And anone after, he toke Adryane
 wyth hym, and secretely entred in-to his shyppe / and
 made as goode waye as the wyndes wokle / wythout the
 knowleche of Mynos the kynge / Theseus was soo
 12 gladde of this good^ele aduenture that was happed to
 hym / that he forgate for to doo as his fader hadde com-
 maunded hym atte his departyng from Athenes / that
 ‘ yf he scaped, he sholde sette vppe white sailes ; and
 16 yf he were perished, his men sholde come home ayen
 berynge blacke saylles / and thus he sholde be in
 certayne of his lyffe or his deth :’

CAP. XXXII.

Theseus kills the
 Minotaur,
 escapes from the
 Labyrinth, and
 flies with
 Ariadne.

[* leaf H 8. orig.
 te]

He forgets the
 signal.

¶ How kyng Egeus lete falle hym selfe in
 20 to the see, for y^e deth of his sone Theseus.

Capitulum xxxij^o

WHan Egeus sawe the shippe of his sone comyng
 ayen wyth y^e blacke saylle sprede abrode /
 24 lyke as whan he departed from hym / he wende verely
 he hadde be ded / And for grete sorowe that he hadde /
 dyd caste hymself oute of the wyndowes of his
 casteH in-to the see, and loste his lyf in this wyse.
 28 And whan kynge Mynos wyst that Theseus was escaped
 by dedalus / he put hym in pryson, and his sone wyth
 hym / But Dedalus made wynges, and fastened theym
 to his armes, and to his sones armes, of federes, of pytche
 32 and of wax, connyngly made / and floughe oute at the
 wyndowes fro the prison where they were. But sycarus,
 the sone of dedalus, floughe alle to highe / wherby the
 wax waxed hoothe, & beganne to melte, and the feders

The death of
 Aegus.

Dædalus im-
 prisoned by
 Minos.

He makes wings.

Flight of
 Dædalus and
 Icarus from
 Crete.

CAP. XXXIII. to faHe of; wherefore he felle down in to the see, and
 Death of Icarus, was drowned; but his fader floughe soo longe, as
 Salamon telleth, that he came in-to the isle of Sardayne,
 and escape of and after went he to Thebes; And alle thus eschaped 4
 Dædalus. dedalus oute of the pryson of Mynos kynge of Crete /
 Now shalle I leue to speke of this mater, and shalle
 telle of Eneas and of his werkes.

¶ How Eneas arryued in Ytalye. 8
 Capitulum xxxiiij

[* leaf H 8, back]

* **W**Han Eneas and his folke were arryued in the
 saide yle of Enlyola, they landed anone /
 And eneas went to a forest, where was a ryche temple 12
 that dedalus had founded there / In-to this temple
 went Eneas / and there he wolde reste hym self awhyle.
 There dweHed the goddesse Cryspyne, whiche shulde
 haue brought eneas in-to heHe, for to see the sowle of 16
 Anchises his fadre / and the sowles of aHe his meynce
 that were decessed / but this mater I leue, for it is
 fayned, and not to be byleuyd / who that wiH knowe
 how eneas wente to heHe, late hym rede virgyle, 20
 claudyan, or the pisteHes of Ouyde, & there he shaH
 fynde more than trouthe. For whiche cause I leue it,
 and¹ wryte not of it. Whan Eneas had taken his reste
 there awhile / he and his folke departed from thens / 24
 And went so moche, that they came in ytalye, in a
 grete forest, where the ryuer of the tonyre renneth, and
 faHeth there in-to the see. thenne commaunded² eneas
 his maryners, that they shulde sette hym aloude there, 28
 and aHe his folke / and they dyde somoche that they
 came and entred wthin the hauene; for they sawe the
 countrey fayre and delectable, and the forest grete, &
 fuH of bestes / Of this lande was lorde, kynge latynus, 32
 that had noon heyre but a fayre doughter that was
 named lauyne / The kynge latyne, her fader, was of

Aeneas goes
 down to
 Avernus.

This is dis-
 believed by the
 scribe!

They arrive in
 the land of
 King Latinus.

Latinus's only
 child Lavinia

¹ orig. aud

² orig. commanuded

grete age / and many one had requyred his doughter to be their spouse. And amonge other, a bachelor of ytalie shulde haue had her, whiche was called turnus, CAP. XXXIV. courted by Turnus.
 4 that was moche preu and hardy / but kynge Iatyne wolde not gyue her to hym, though the puceHe was in age able to be maryed to a prynee of a lande /

¶ Here It is shewed how many kynges had ben In ytalye afore that eneas came ther fyrst. ¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

* **A**fore that Eneas was come in to ytalye, there had ben seuen kynges that successynely hadde kepte the londe : The firste was Lanus, whiche dyde enhabyte there firste, & peopled the contree / and after hym Saturnus / but this was not the fader of Iupyter, of whom the auctours speken. After saturnus, was Pyrrus [* sign. 1 J] The Kings of Italy before Latinus, for 150 years.

16 kynge of thys londe ; after hym came Famus / and after hym, his sone Latynus, that themme was a lyue, and kepte the royaume. There reygne lasted a hondred & fyfty yeres / afore that Eneas wedded Lauyne, by whom he had the royaume / And after theym regned eneas in ytalye / and they that yssued of hym, foure hundred and seuen yeres, vnto Romulus tyme / and thenne seuen kynges reygned there after him / that Aeneas and his successors, 407 years.

24 is to whyte, Pympeyns, Iulyus hostylius / Marcus aneus / Pryseus tarquynus / Suluyus / TuHyus, Lucyus / thyse kynges reygned two hundred & xl^o yeres / vnto Brutus, that fyrste was made consulle of the Romulus and his successors, 240 years.

28 londe / And fro brutus, & theym that after hym reygned, vnto Iulyus cesare that was the fyrste emperour, was v. hondred & iiij yeres. ¶ Now wyH I telle of eneas & of his folke, & that assone as that Brutus and the Consuls for 504 years to Julius Caesar, emperor.

32 they were come a londe / they sette hemselfe attedynner, & made trenchers of brede for to putte theyr mete vpon / For they had nother dysshes ne trenchers / and atte laste they hadde soo lyteH brede, that they ete

CAP. XXXV.

alle theyr trenchers, and aH that was lefte / And whan
 ascaunys sawe this, he began to lawgh / And soone
 whan enecas vndrestode it / he wyste weH that he was
 come in-to the contre that the goddes had promysed to 4
 hym / For his fader hadde tolde hym in a vysion, that
 where he sholde happe to ete the releef or brokelynges¹
 of his borde, there sholde be his dweHyng place /
 Eneas hadde this thyng sore faste in his mynde. And 8
 whan he sawe that this was soo fallen / he was right
 gladde *in his corage / and sayd to his folke, that he
 wyste weH for certayne that they were in the royame
 that the goddes hadde promysed vnto theym, and that 12
 theyr traueyH sholde be fynysshed there. Thenne they
 made grete Ioye togyder, and broughtte oute theyr
 goddes from the shyppes, that they hadde broughte
 wyth theym oute of Troye ; and to theym they made 16
 saeryfices, and their orysones & prayers, that they wolde
 helpe theym. Thenne demaunded Eneas of som folke
 that he met by the waye, who kepte the contrey / and
 who was lorde therof / And they tolde hym the kyng 20
 Latyne, that was sore auneyente and hadde no children
 but a doughter / and that dweHed not ferre from thens,
 that is to wyte, atte Lawrence :

Fulfilment of
Anchises's vision
of trenchers.Aeneas under-
stands it.

[* sign. I j, back]

Aeneas and his
men rejoyce.

¶ How Eneas bygan to buylde his fortresse 24
 vpon the Tonyre. Capitulum xxxv.

Why King
Latinus's capital
was called
Laurentum.

NOW shaHe I telle you why this cyte was called
 Laurence, for she was fyrste named Lamyna /
 kyng Latynus hadde a brother that was called Launus, 28
 that founded the same cyte, and sayd, that after his
 name she sholde be called lamyna / and whan he was
 ded / the cyte apparteyned to kynge latyne / that made
 it more stronge than it was a-fore, and was alwayes 32
 called Lamyna, tyH that it happed that a laureH tree
 grewe there vpon a hyghe toure wythin the cyte : And

¹ orig. brokelyngs

therof it fortunēd that kyngē latyne dyde calle this
 towne Laurence / whiche he loued ryght moche / For
 it was the chief cite of alle his royame. whan eneas
 4 vnderstode that the cyte where the kyngē of the londe
 dweHyngē was soo nyghe / and that this cyte was soo
 noble / and soo weH peopled, he was ryght gladdē
 therof. And after, he loked abowte hym where a place
 8 was moste strong, and there he broughte aHe his ooste /
 and rōunde aboute this place he dyd make diche &
 barreys for to defende hēselfe, if *nede were / And
 for certeyne, wythin a lityH space of tyme, they made
 12 the place so stronge, that thei doubted no body that
 coule hurte theym, nor take theym vnbeware.

CAP. XXXVI.

Aeneas settles at
the mouth of the
river Tiber,[* sign. I ij]
and fortifies his
camp.

¶ How Eneas sente his messagers towarde
 kyngē Latyne. Capitulum xxxvi.

16 **W**Han Eneas had begonne his fortresse / he called
 to hym a hondred of the wysest men that
 were in his ooste / for to sende theym towarde kyng
 Latynus, in his cyte of Laurence, for to requyre hym of
 20 peas & of alyauce; and that he was not arryued in
 his londe for to doo to hym, nor to the contrey, ony
 damage / but besoughte hym that he wolde not lette
 hym of that he had enterprysed to make a casteH vpon
 24 his grounde that was begonne / For he made this for
 to rest hym and his folke / and for to dwelle wythin
 his royame, by the commaundemente of the goddes,
 wythoute to doo hym ony hurte nor greuance. The
 28 messagers wente soo longe wyth theyr ryche presente
 that they bare from Eneas / to kyng Latynus, and
 wyth garlandes vpon theyr hedes, made of olyue tree /
 and also in theyr handes, braunches of the same / that
 32 peas and loue sygnyfieth / that they came to the cyte
 of Laurence, where they fonde, a lityH wythoute the
 towne, a grete feest of yonge men / that proued and
 assayed theyr streyngthes in dyuerse wyses / Thenne

Aeneas sends an
embassy to
Latinus,

at Laurentum.

CAP. XXXVI.

The ambassadors
are introduced
to Latinus,

[* sign. I ij, back]

who receives
them cour-
teously

understanding
that they were
from Troy,

and enquires
why they came.

Ilioneus explains
their coming.

entred y^e troians wythin the yates of the towne / and
one of the IouenceHys that thus dyde sporte hym selfe
there, wente a pase afore theym, and cam & shewed
to kyng latyne / how that a compayne of noble men / 4
and to his semyng, of ryght hygh astate / were entred
wythin his cyte, for to come speke wyth hym / & *that*
they semed weH to be riche & pesable folke / for they
bare braunches of olyue tre in their handes / the kyng 8
commaunded anone, whan he knewe of it / *that* they
sholde be broughte *vnto hym / And so it was doon /
The messagers come before the kyng Latyne, to whom
they made reuerence prudently, and hym dyde salue in 12
theyre lordes byhalue / The kyng, that satte highe in
his throne withyn hys haHe, where as were purtrayed
fuHe rychely aHe the kynges of his lynage, connyngly
made, how they hadde kept ytalye one after another / 16
with the aduentures that were come to theym, and the
grete batayHes that they hadde made,—Answered weH
peasibly to the troyens / For alre dy he hadde weH
vnderstande that they were of troye, that was alle 20
distroied / and asked theym ‘ what they sought, and
what nede had brought theym in-to the londe of Lom-
bardye / whether the tempeste hadde chassed theym /
or yf they hadde lost theyre waye / For in many 24
maners comen peyne and traueyHe¹ often vpon ’ / “ but
how so euer ye be arryued and comen hyther, sith that
ye requyre peas, ye be ryght welcomen to me. The
londe is gode & fayre, and the countrey swete and 28
delectable / And weH ye may ease youre self thereynne /
and also ryght and rayson requyreth that ye doo soo /
For dardanus, that fyrste kept the regne of troye, was
of this countrey borne ” / Thenne gaffe the kyng 32
seassyng to hys wordes / And dyoneus, one of the
troyens that were there, begaune to speke / saynge In
thys wise / “ ¶ Gentyll kyng, and of hyghe lynage,

¹ orig. traneylle

and puyssaunt pryuce / Thou shalte vnderstande weH CAP. XXXVII.
 that none stronge wedrynge ne tempeste / hathe con- No tempest sent
them here after
leaving Troy,
 strayned vs for to comme In-to thys londe ; but we are
 4 comme hether with oure goode wyll / For we ben
 departed from the ryche cytee of troye / That of lorde-
 shyppe surmounted alle other cytees that were In her
 tyme. And after the destruceyon of the same, that was
 8 soo grete as / thou haste weH herd telle, We departed
 fro thens, *and haue hadde syth soo moche of peyne, [* sign. I iij]
 bothe by see and by londe, that longe after we hadde
 lefte and habandouned our owne contree / we were
 12 commaunded of the goddes that we sholde come in but the com-
mand of the
Gods.
 to thyse partyes, for to haue therin our residence /
 And we requyre onely to haue a lityH plotte of grounde They require
only a plot of
ground on which
to dwell in
peace.
 where we maye dwelle in peas / and no hurte, domage,
 16 ne greuance, shalle not be doon to the, of vs, by no
 maner of wyse / And ye muste knowe, that we myghte
 haue be receyued in many places, and in a good contrey,
 for to make there our dweHyng / But the destynacyes
 20 of the goddes, sente vs in to thy reygne, for to haue
 our permanente residence there / as Dardanus was
 borne, And appollo commaunded vs the same / and
 for this thyng,” sayd Dyoneus, “we are arryued in this
 24 londe / And also Eneas, that is our kynge, sendeth vnto
 the of his Iewelles that he hath brought with hym
 oute of troye, where he was in grete honour, and a
 prince of grete lordeshyppes.” And thenne he toke to
 28 the kynge a riche mauntelle, & a crowne of fyne golde
 aH sette wyth precyouse stones, and a cepter royaH, that
 kyng pryamus dyde bere often in his honde.

¶ How kyng Latynus made grete ioye &
 32 good chere to y^e messagers of eneus :

Cap^o. xxxvij

THe kyng latynus receyued the ryche present, and Latinus accepts
it.
 dyoneus helde his peas / & the kyng latyne

CAP. XXXVIII. praysed moche the troians, not for the present that
 eneas had sent to hym, but for loue of the maryage
 of his daughter / And why he dyd soo, it was for
 bycause that he had graunted his daughter to a wor- 4
 shi[1]fuH knyghte that was called Turnus, the sone
 of kynge Darynus, of the cyte of Darda / that was not
 ferre from Laurence / To hym he hadde couenauned
 his daughter Lauyne / but theropon he had an answer 8
 of y^c goddes, that he sholde not gyue her to hym /
 but he sholde gyue *her vnto a knyght straunger.
 And whan kynge Latyne hadde mused a lytyH in hym
 selfe / he ansuered to the message : “ Fayre brother, the 12
 gyfte that thou hast brought to me from thy lordes
 byhalue, I shalle not refuse / but I receyue it gladly /
 and so teHe hym that I am ryght glad of his
 commynge, and that my londe, whyche is goode / Is 16
 atte hys wille ; and yf yt playseth to hym, he may
 herberrowe hymself wyth me within thys cytee / And
 also ye shalle telle hym, that I haue a daughter, whiche
 the goddes deffende me that I shalle not gyue her to 20
 no man of this countreye, and wyl that I gyue her
 to a stranger, of whome shaHe come a roayalle lygnee,
 and of grete name thrughe aHe the worlde ; and but I
 be deceyued, It most be he.” 24

Latinus sends a
 message of wel-
 come to Aeneas,
 whom he con-
 sideres the person
 destined to
 marry his only
 daughter

Lavinia, whom
 he had pre-
 viously granted
 to Turnus.

[* sign. I ij,
 back]

Latinus feasts
 the messengers
 and sends them
 back with gifts.

They return in
 joy to Eneas.

¶ How kynge Latyne sent his presentes
 to Eneas / ¶ Capitulum xxxviij.

WHAN the kynge latyne had thus spoken / he
 made to be brought afore hym a honderd 28
 fayre horses, weHe rychely enharnyshed and nobly
 arayed / and to every messenger troyen, he gaffe one
 of thys horses / and sent to Eneas a ryche chare, aHe
 appareylled for to fyght In a bataylle / Thenne toke 32
 the messagers there leue of the kynge latyne, after that
 he hadde made theym goode chere, and ryally fested,
 and came alle ayen gladde and Ioyouse to theyre

- lorde / And recounted to hym altogyder as it was
 sayde and doon / Wherof eneas was ryght gladdē, &
 made grete loie / The tidynges were spred aHe aboute
 4 the londe of lombardyē, and was annouced vnto
 Turnus, that the troyens that were escaped out of
 Troye, were aryued in that londe, and hadde a lorde
 that was called Eneas / To whom kynge Latyne hadde
 8 hal-aundouned aHe hys londe, and also hys doughter,
 that Turnus sholde haue by maryage / But the kynge
 wolde *gyue her to the troians, for to enheryte his
 royaume of the lynce of troye / And that kynge Latyne
 12 hadde aH-redy consented to theym for to buylde and
 sette a casteH vpon the ryuer of Tonyre / soo that they
 sholde not be cast oute lightly from the royaume by
 force. Assone as Turnus wyste of thyse tydynges, he
 16 was sore an-angred in his herte. And was ouermoche
 wrothe for the damoyseH, that hadde be graunted and
 gyuen firste of aH vnto hym / And weH he swore that
 Eneas sholde neuer haue her, as longe as he were man
 20 on lyue. Turnus, by the counceyH of his fader, sente
 for his nyghe frendes and kynnesmen, for to haue
 counseyH vpon this thyngē / And whan he had
 assembled theym togyder, they did counseyH hym that
 24 he sholde goo towarde kyng Latyne, atte lawrence, &
 towarde the quene / for to knowe whi they wolde
 gyue theyr doughter to a nother, contrary to their
 promyse that they hadde made to hym. Duryngē
 28 that these wordes ranne / Eneas and his people
 wroughte styлле to make vp theyr fortresse / And
 ascanyus, by the lycence of eneas his fader, wente to
 the foreste that was nyghe by Lawrence, and dyuerse
 32 of his knyghtes wyth hym, for to hunte the wylde
 bestes / Turnus hadde two sones, and a fayr doughter
 whiche was named Syluya. this siluya had norissed a
 herte tyH that he was ouergrown¹ and grete, that her

CAP. XXXVIII.

News of the
embassy
spreads.Turnus hears of
it,

[* s'gn. I iiij]

and is angry.

He swears Aeneas
shall never
possess Lavinia,and calls a
council of his
friends and
kinsmen.Ascanius hunts
in the forest.¹ orig. ouergrown

CAP. XXXVIII. bretheren had broughte to her from the foreste / soo
 yonge they had take hym awaye fro the moder. This
 Ascanius wounds a tame deer belonging to Sylvia, Turnus's daughter.
 herte was soo tame, *that* he suffred weH that the
 damoiselle layed her hande ouer him, for to make hym 4
 fayr and eyn / and that she shold make him a
 garlonde aboute his hornes. he was weH fed, and moche
 loued of her / and also of Turnus her brother. And
 whan that this herte had be longe atte home, he wente 8
 in-to the forest among the other / and cam ayen atte
 eyn. The houndes of * Ascanyus founde thys herte,
 [* sign. I iiii, back]
 and hunted hym sore, tyH that Ascanyus hadde espyed
 hym, and shotte an arowe att hym, and rough the 12
 sydes of hym. This herte, aHe thus wounded and sore
 hurt, came home ayen as fast as he myght, there as he
 was norysed, and cryed and made mone after hys
 manere. Syluyia came fyrst there where he was, 16
 whiche was ryght sory whan she dyde see the hert,
 that bled sore and was a deynge. Thienne came¹ there
 turnus, that was moche an-angryd and wroth therfore,
 & founde the wounde, and blew a horne for to moene 20
 his folke ayenst theym that had slayne this hert.
 And no moo wordes were made there; But they went
 toward the forest aHe armed, where they founde the
 troyens that were come after the hert: And the 24
 churles ranne soone vpon theym with suche armures
 as they had / The troyens deffended theymsel with
 theyre bowes and with theyr swerdes, but the most
 strengthe was styH with the men of the countree / 28
 Neuertheles the medlee wexed so strong, that ascanyus
 kylled there the eldest son of Turnus with an arowe.
 Thezne rose ther a grete crye, Soo that the troiens
 were of the wors syde / And whan Eneas wist of hit 32
 in his fortresse, he came & brought there a grete part
 of his folke /

It flies home.
 Grief of Sylvia.
 Turnus in anger goes to the forest with his followers,
 and attacks Ascanius and his hunters.
 Turnus's son killed.
 Aeneas comes to the rescue.

¹ orig. caae

¶ How turnus sente for his folke, for to
chasse & dryue Eneas out of his londe /

CAP. XXXIX.

¶ Capitulum xxxix

4 **F**Or this occasion bigan the bataylle to be grete
and mortaH, that was not apeased anone / There
was grete effort made, & bigge estoure, after that Eneas
was come there / For of that othre part of the batayHe,
8 they of Laurence came there, and of aHe the other
contrees about, that cursed the kyng Latyne, that so
euyH folke had receyued and lodged In his contree /
To this sorowe came Turⁿus / and whan he sawe
12 aHe the folke of laurence so moeued ayenste the kyng
Layne / he bigan thezue to swere and saye, that euyH
sholde come therof to the kyng Layne and to the
troyens; for yf he had not Lauyne to his wyff, he sholde
16 doo brenne the cyte, and the palays also / And thenne
he ascryed his folke, and aHe them of the cyte, in
whiche were many knyghtes, and sayde that hym self
and them of the cyte sholde yssue in batayHe /
20 Thenne spake kyng Layne to his folke and to
Turnus, and tolde them that, ayenst the wille of the
goddess, and without rayson, they wolde fyght aienst
the troyens / But for these wordes / turnus nor the
24 other wolde neuer withdrawe them self. the kyng,
that sawe they wolde noon other wyse doo, he lete
them shyfte / & fought tyH that the enyn departed
them / Thenne came ayen they of the londe to
28 lawrence / & enecas & ascanys went ayen to their
fortresse / turnus had sent for his aide in the contreye
aH about, & made grete folke / first of aH, came to
him mescaius of eusy, & causus his sone, & brought
32 folke wyth them. & thenne came they of lombardy,
of to-scaue, & of the nalles of ytalie. besides aH thees,
came ther canuHa, a mayde that was lady of prouerne,

A general fray
between Aeneas
and Turnus's
men, in which
Latins and
others join.

[* leaf 15]

Latinus tries to
quiet Turnus in
vain.

The fighters
separate at
night,

the Latins to
Laurentum, the
Trojans to their
camp.

CAP. XL.

Turnus
assembles the
Italian chiefs
and their tribes.
Among them
comes Queen
Camilla.

& medabus was her fader: this damoyseHe brought
with her grete *companye* of *medens* all in armes, for
to gyue socours to turnus, *that* she loued¹ sore. whan
she was come to laurence, she was gretly lokel vpon 4
of y^e ladyes of the cyte, bicause that she mayntened
herself lyke a knyght: she was stronge & hardy, more
themne eny other creature /

How eneas went to seke socours of y^e kynge 8
euander / cap^o xl

THus had turnus assembled his folke for to chase
eneas & his folke out of lombarde / for he wold
haue y^e doughter of y^e kyng latyne / eneas had with him 12
litol aide, but of them *that* he had brought with hym.
he toke no care, nor abashed hym not bicause *that* y^e
same loude was promysed to him for to dweHe * in hit /
vpon a nyghte cam to hym a vysion, that tolde hym 16
that he sholde goo to seke helpe to a kynge that was
called Euander, whiche was neuewe to kyng Thalamus
of Archade. This euander slewe his fader, by exhort-
yng of his moder, that vyceta was called / and for this 20
cause he lefte archade / and came in-to ytalye / and
dyde so moche, that he herberowed hym selfe, and his
folke that came wyth hym, vpon the mounte palatyne,
vpon the tonyre, Where Euander beganne a lityH 24
cyte that he named Palence / after the name of kyng
Palantyne of Archade, that now is called Rome / thys
kyng Euander had a doughter, whiche was called after
the name of his cyte, Palencya / and also he had a sone 28
that was pren and hardy, that had to name Palas, y^e
whiche werred euer ayenste turnus / and the ytalyens /
Also turnus wolde neuer haue concorde nor peas wyth
this kyng Euander / Eneas sayd themne to his folke, 32
that he sholde goo fette socours and helpe. And thenne
he entred his shypes, and his felawes wyth hym /

[* leaf I 5, back]

Aeneas scorns
Turnus and his
allies, but is
warned in a
vision to ask
help of Evander,
an Arcadian

settled on the
Tiber, on
Mount Palatine,
where is now
Rome.

¹ orig. lored

And rowed so moche that they cam to Palence, where
 kyng Euander receyued theym wyth grete Loye, &
 honoured moche eneas, and sayd to hym that he had
 4 weH knowen his fader Anchises / Soo longe they spake
 one to thother, that euander sayd that he sholde helpe
 eneas, & shold take to him his sone palas, & foure
 thousand men, good fyghters / Eneas thanked the kyng
 8 right moche of the good wyH that he had to hym.
 And whan the mornyng came, & that they had con-
 cluded togyder of ther besines, they toke leue of
 kyng euander / & they *that* were most in age entred
 12 in to the shyppes / And the other that were strong,
 wente by londe :

CAP. XLII.

Evander receives
 him well, and
 gives him assist-
 ance in men
 under his son
 Pallas.

¶ How a grete sorow was made / whan
 Eneas and Palas departed fro palence :

16

Capitulum xlijo

* **W**Han tyme came that they sholde departe, the
 quene wepte sore tendrely, and the kyng
 also, that called hys sone fuH swetly, saynge / “ Ha a,
 20 fayre sone ! yf I were as yonge as I was sontyme / with
 grete peyne I sholde late the goo without me / And I
 promytte the, that Turnus sholde neuer make so good
 watehe to kepe hym self, but that I sholde doo to hym
 24 dommage ryght grete / But olde age reteyneth me here,
 that happeth to hym weH. Now praye I oure goddes,
 that of the, they make vs gladde / And that I may see
 the agayn alyue afore that I shalle decesse. For I
 28 hadde moche leuer deye / than to see thy dethe.”

[leaf 16]

Pallas's mother
 grieues.

Evander's
 lament.

¶ And thanne Palas and Eneas made sacrifice to the
 goddes, & prayed theym *that* they wolde be to theym
 socourable. & this doon, they toke theyre leue of y^e
 32 kyng euander, & walked so long that the nyght was
 come ; & theene they herberowed themself behinde
 a montayne.

Pallas and
 Aeneas start for
 Aeneas's camp,
 and rest under
 a hill.

CAP. XLII.

¶ H[o]w turnus came afore the casteH of
eneas for to sawte hym

¶ Capitulum : xlij

Turnus lays
siege to Aeneas's
camp in his
absence.

The Trojans
under Aeneas
decline Turnus's
challenge to
fight in the
open, singly.

[* leaf I 6, back]

Turnus burns
Aeneas's ships.

WHan that Eneas was goon towarde kynge 4
euander / cam turnus afore his fortresse.
ascanyus was with y^e troyens, for to wite yf he coude
take theym, or entre within y^e casteH / but the troyens
that sawe theym come, putte theymself in-to there 8
fortresse, and made hem redy vpon the waHes, for to
deffende theym of their ennyes weH and vigorously ;
and visus & eryalus, two valiaunt knyghtes & hardy,
kept the gate. turnus *that* was weH horsid, came, & eight 12
felawes with him, vnto y^e walles, & called & saide, '*that*
yf there was eny man that to him wolde fight in the
playne, that he sholde come out / and that he sholde
haue no harme, but onely of him, body to body' / And 16
they of wythin ansuered not ; wherfore he launched
theym his dart over the walles, & went agayn In the
playne felde for to make a tourne of grete chialrye ;
& he, & the other *eyght that were come wyth hym, 20
aseryed theym / of the casteH wyth an hie voys / and
sore merueylled that they were of the troians soo
coward, that they wolde not iuste wyth soo fewe a
folke as they were / and whan he sawe that thei wolde 24
not come oute of theyr casteH / He wente rounde aboute
it, where he myghte ride, for to see and knowe of what
parte the place myghte sonest be take / And whiles
that he dyde thus, approached the ooste that came 28
towards the fortresse / & Turnus apperceyued the
shyppes, that were nyghe the shore, for the men to
come a lande ; whereof he hadde grete Ioye, and com-
maunded soone that the shyppes of the troians sholde 32
be sette aH in a fyre / by cause that they of the

castelle sholde not flee thyderwarde for to saue theym
 selfe. They dyde themne as turnus hadde commaunded /
 and brenned alle the shyppes, sauiffe some, of whom
 4 y^e cables brak, & escaped away / wherof they of the
 oost had grete merueylle / turnus sayd that the casteff
 must be take wyth stre[n]gthe of armes / And also he
 knewe weff that Eneas was not there, but came faste
 8 ayenste hym, accompanied of Palas and of many other
 knyghtes. Whan the nyghte cam on / turnus ordeyned
 xvij knyghtes for to make good watche / of whom
 Mesapus was chieff / and themne they made grete Ioye,
 12 and ete & dranke, & made goode chere / The troians
 byhelde theym / and garnysshed theym selfe in the
 best wyse that they coude. Menestus & segestus, that
 Eneas had made constables, hadde theyr folke wel
 16 ordeyned for to fyghte / and for to defende the
 fortresse / And made redy for to sende to Eneas / But
 noo body durst not auenture for to goo to hym, by
 cause that they knew not the contrey :

CAP. XLIII.

Some ships
escape.The Italians set
a guard to watch
the Trojan camp
at night.From ignorance
of the country
no one dares to
go to acquaint
Eneas with the
danger.

20 ¶ How Vysus and Eryalus made theym
 redy for to entre vpon the oost of Turnus

¶ Capitulum xliij

*
 24 **W**Han came toward the mornynge, the ytalyens
 that assured, were not doubted of ony body
 that myght greue hem / feffe aslepe, alle fulle of metes
 and of wynes / Themne visus that kept the gate, be-
 though[t] hym self, and sayde to his felawe: "Goode
 28 brother, loke how the ytalyens be weffe assured In
 theyr tentes / there is nowe no lyght atte aHe, and
 they be alle a slepe / I wylle goo In-to theyre oost, for
 to make slawghter of theym / And after I shalle goo
 32 to Eneas In pallence / For I shalle fynde well the
 waye thyder. and yf I may brynge thys myn entrepryse
 to purpos, I shal be rewarded ryght welle therefore" /
 Whan Eryalus vnderstode hys felawe that spacke soo /

[^p leaf 17]Nisus proposes
to sally out at
night on the
Italians, and
then go to tell
Aeneas of the
siege.

CAP. XLIV. he answered hym anone in thys manere / “ Ha a, goode
 Euryalus insists and true felawe, we haue be so famylier, and haue hadde
 on going too. so goode felyship togyder, and nowe ye wyH vndertake
 this thyng without me / ye shalle knowe, that without 4
 my companye, ye shalle nowhere goo” / They bothe
 They tell Ascanius. togyder went to Ascanyus, and to the other that were
 in counceyHe, for to wyte whom they myght sende to
 En[c]as / Thenne spake visus, and sayde how they had 8
 entreprysed y^e waye for to goo to eneas / and whan
 Ascanius consents, Ascanyus vnderstode theym, he toke theym in his
 armes alle wepyng / and sayde to theym: “ O ye
 knyghtes! who shall mowe yelde to you so grete a 12
 meryte of so grete hardynes *that* ye haue enterprised
 for to doo? the goddes shall rewarde you / first ther-
 fore / & after, my fader eneas, & also my self, that neuer
 shalle forgete thesame whiles that I shall lyue / and 16
 also I telle you, that yf ye bryng me my fader agayn,
 I shall neuer haue so grete a lordsip / but that ye
 shalle haue part of thesame / and ye shaH be proffered
 In alle maneres / 20

¶ H[o]w visus and eryalus entred in y^e tentes
 of turnus oost, & made grete slawghter &
 destruccion / ¶ Capitulum. xliiij

[* leaf 17, back] * **W**Han vysus, and eryalus his felawe, were 24
 armed & arayed, they yssued oute of the
 gates moche richely appareylled, and weH
 mounted vpon two goode horses, stronge & able and
 weH rennyng / And thus they entred in-to the lodges 28
 of theyr enmyes, whom they fonde a slepe / Thenne
 spake Vysus to Eryalus, and sayd, “ felaw myn, this thyng
 somoneth vs for to proue oure hardynes. Now holde the
 behynde, & kepe that none escape, and I shaHe goo 32
 forthe, and shaHe make large the waye” / And whan he
 hadde that sayd, he loked wythin a tente / and sawe a
 kyng lyenge, that was grete frende with kyng Turnus /

The sally of
 Nisus and
 Euryalus.

For he entermytted hymselfe for to telle that that was
 to come, & of many other thynges / The same, dyde
 vysus smyte his hede of / and thenne they made occy-
 4 sion soo that no bodye durste moeue ; for they sawe
 theym armed / and theyr swerdes aH bloody / Thus
 lasted this euyH aduenture almoste to the daye / thenne
 came they to Mesapus tente, & sawe fyre lighte ; thenne
 8 sayd vysus, “ good felawe, late vs take on our waye, for
 it is almost daye. we haue hurte our enmyes ful sore ;
 and also we be wery ” / thenne went they awaye, & left
 there moche rychesse *that* they myghte haue taken yf
 12 they had wolde ; but they wente oute of the tentes, &
 walked streighte y^e waye towarde palence, for to goo to
 encas their lorde, that was departed theus alrede, wyth
 palas, the valyaunte and noble knyghte :

CAP. XLV.

A terrible
 slaughter made
 by Nisus and
 Euryalus.

As day ap-
 proches they
 set out for
 Palence,
 abandoning all
 plunder.

16 ¶ How the two felawes loste eche other in
 the forest / whaz the knyghtes of laurence
 chased theym. ¶ Capitulum xlv.

20 **A**Nd whilis that they wente faste awaye from the
 tentes, Foure hondred knyghtes were yssued
 oute of lawrence, aH armed / & wente to
 turnus, for to bere tidynges from the kynge Latyne /
 And whan they werre *comen nyghe the tentes, they
 24 sawe ouer atte the other syde, the two felawes that
 went the waye to Palence / Also they perecynd theym
 by theire helmes that they hadde on theyre hedes, that
 resplendyshed ayenst the mone / Bolcus thenne went
 28 ayenst theym, and caHed, “ Abyde ye ; And telle me
 what ye be, and from whens ye comme ” / They answerde
 not, but withdrewe theymself toward the forest. And
 than bolcus¹ and his men spored there horses, and
 32 chassed theym / but² they were alrede withyn the

[leaf 18]

Nisus and
 Euryalus are
 pursued by a
 band of horse-
 men coming
 from
 Laurentum.

¹ orig. botcus

² orig. bul

CAP. XLV. forest, where as they lost eche other ryghte soone / For
 vysus dyde putte hym self in-tyl a path, and was soone
 goon ferre from hys enmyes. And Eryalus entred in to
 a thikke¹ busshe, where he founde nothre pathe nor 4
 noo waye atte aHe; and so he coude not flee ferre from
 hys enmyes that chassed hym / Vysus, that alre dy was
 escaped saunf, loked behynde hym, and sawe not his
 felawe nor Erialus were, wherof he was ryght sore 8
 angri; And sore sighynge, he began to saye, "O swete
 felawe, where haue I lost the? where myght I seke
 the?" And whan he hade said this, he returned ayen
 bak that waye that he came. And he had not gon longe, 12
 that he herde the noyse of the horses about erialus, that
 his enmyes had taken alre dy; and aslong as he myght,
 he had deffended him self; but aHe that he coude doo,
 awayhed him not / visus went so longe reunnyng, tyl 16
 that he sawe his enmyes about his felawes whiche they
 helde / Thenne he wist not what to doo, nor how he
 myght delyuere hym from theyr handes. And whan
 he had aduysed hym ynoughe, he loked vpon a dart 20
 that he helde in his hande, and threwe it with aHe his
 strengthe, and smotte a knyght betwene two sholdres
 therwith-aHe, so that the yron went thrughe the body
 of hym, whiche feHe doune ded to the grounde frome 24
 hys horse / Hys felawes that sawe thys, loked *alle
 aboute theym / and had grete merueylle / and wyste
 not fro whens that myghte come / And whiles that
 they merueylled theym selfe of suche a fortune that 28
 was come thus sodaynly to theym, Vysus casted ayen
 a nother darte, and smote a nother of theym in the
 breste, and soo slewe hym, and feH down ded afore his
 felawes, that were therof sore abasshed. 32

[¹ orig. thikke]

Nisus and
 Euryalus lose
 one another in
 the forest.

Euryalus is
 taken prisoner.

Nisus returns,
 and endeavours
 to rescue him,
 slaying several
 of the Latins.

[* leaf 18, back]

¶ How Bolcus slewe eryalus, & how Vysus
 his felawe slewe Bolcus / Of the deth of
 the sayd Vysus / & how y^c hedes of the

sayd two felawes, eryalus & vysus, were brought vpon two speres afore the fortres of Eneas. CAP. XLVI.

Cap. xlvj

4 **T**henne begaune bolcus, the conestable, to be alle
 8 forenced wyth grete rage, for to knowe fro whom
 these strokes cam / & in a grete anger sayd to
 eryalus, " who euer hath doon y^e same, y^e peynes therof
 12 shaH abyde vpon y^e / & with y^e swerde aH naked in
 his fust, cam nygh hym / & wold slee hym. & whan
 vysus sawe this, he coude no lenger suffre it, by cause
that he wolde not see hys felawe to be slayn / but he
 16 began to crye, "late hym be in peas / & take me, &
 putte me to dethe! For he hath forfayte nothyng."
 While that vysus spake thise wordes / bolcus smote
 eryalus wyth his swerde thorgh the body of hym, &
 20 wythoute moo wordes kylled hym. And whan vysus
 sawe the same, he ranne ayenste theym alle, and
 adressed hym towarde bolcus wyth his swerde in his
 fuste; and so nyghe he approached hym / that whan he
 24 dyd ascrye vpon his men that they sholde take hym /
 vysus smote hym wyth his goode swerde through the
 mouthe, that he made hit to come oute at the necke of
 hym / soo that he slewe hym, and fylle down ded afore
 28 hym & aH his folke / His knyghtes that sawe hym
 thus slayne, ranne alle vpon vysus oute of alle sides /
 soo that they gaaffe to hym his deth * wounde / and
 neuertheles he defended hym selfe vygoryously as longe
 32 that he myghte stande. But his ennyes charged hym
 soo often wyth grete strokes of their swerdes wel sharpe
 cuttynge / that he spred hym selfe vpon his felawe
 Eryalus / and soo fynysshed there his lyff / Thenne
 toke the ytalyens their armures, and that they bare /
 and the body of theyr lorde Bolcus / and¹ departe
 wyth grete heuynesse, and wente to the lodges of Turnus

Volocens
 (Bolcus) slays
 his prisoner
 Euryalus, while
 Nisus offers to
 take his place.

Nisus slays
 Volocens,

[* sign. K J]

and is in turn
 slain himself.

The Italians take
 the bodies to
 Turnus's camp.

¹ orig. and

CAP. XLVII.

Great lamentation for those slain by Nisus and Euryalus.

The heads of Nisus and Euryalus cut off and set on spears before the Trojan camp.

The siege is renewed furiously, and the Trojans defend themselves with vigour.

[* sign, K j, back]

Fire and scaling-ladders are brought by the besiegers.

ooste: And whan they cam / they sawe there theym
that made grete sorowe & grete cryes for theym that
were slayn wythin the tentes / Whan thenne the daye
was come / Turnus commaunded that aHe the ooste sholde 4
be armed / And that euery prynce sholde ordeyne his
folke for to assaylle the casteH / And they dyd soo by
grete wrathe / And thenne turnus made the hedes of
eryalus and Vysus to be smytten of from theyr bodyes / 8
and sette vpon two speres, and broughte theym afore
the castell wyth a grete noyse & grete caHynges / for
to fere and abasshe the troians therwyth, that were
wythin wyth Ascanyus, the sone of eneas. Whan they 12
of the casteH sawe theym, they were fuH sory & sore
tryste / and anone they ordeyned theyr folke, & putte
theym in araye for to defende the place. And thenne
they of the ooste blew vp their trompettes for to gyue 16
a sharpe sawte / And taried not, but dyde hie them
for to fylle the dyches / and for to dresse vp the laddres
ayenste the walles / And they that were there vpon the
walles, brake theyr sheldes and theyr pauesses / And 20
the hardy knyghtes troians that had lerned for to de-
fende / casted vpon theym grete logges, wyth sharpe
yron atte the ende, and gret stones. They that cam
firste to assawte the place, myght not suffre no lenger 24
the strengthe of the troians, that were vpon the walles
of theyr fortresse. For they brake theyr sheldys &
* helmes and their limmes & aH-to burst theyre bodyes /
whan Mesancus sawe this, he made fyre to be cast to 28
theym / and Mesapus made the diches to be filled vp,
& the ladders to be sette vpwarde ayenst the walles /

¶ How the assawte was grete atte the gate
of the castel / ¶ Capitulum xlvij 32

BEfore the gate of the casteH was a grete toure,
and knyghtes were within, that deffended it:
they that were without, assailed strongly, & by

grete rudesse / and aH they that were within, deffended
 theymselF ryght weH & vigorousli / but they of y^e oost
 made so greete force ayenst them, that they dyde sette
 4 the toure on a fire / and whan they of within sawe the
 toure, that brenned alle in a flame, they were aferde to
 be brente there-ynne, so that they most nedes haban-
 douzne it. And the^{me} they wolde haue yssued out
 8 aienst them of the oost, but the toure fille seone down /
 And thus alle they that were within, were ded, sauf¹
 two of hem, Elenor and Elecor / And whan elenor sawe
 hymself amonge his enmyes, he ranne vpon theym with
 12 his swerde in his hande, as he *that* wolde not escape,
 nor saue his lyffe / But elecor, that was ryght swyfte
 & lyght, fled toward the castel for his warau^t.

CAP. XLVIII.

The gate-tower
of the camp
is burned down.

The garrison are
lost, save
Elecor, who
flies towards the
camp.

¶ How Eneas came ayen from palence with
 16 moche folke for to socoure his sone & his
 folke ayenst turnus / ¶ Capitulum xlviij

MAny were there slayne, of one part, of the other /
 but the assawte was lefte, for the nyght that
 20 came thenne vpon, toke away fro theym the
 light of the daye. The troyens kept weH their walles /
 For they knewe weH that on the morowe they sholde
 be assayHed agayn. Eneas² thenne, that was goon for
 24 to seke helpe and socours, and had with hym aH the
 barons, and namely the kynge Carton / *abode not
 longe after this / But that he came wyth .xxx. shyppes
 weH laden with men of armes, whiche approached soo
 28 moche that they came to the socours of theym / that
 awaytel sore after theym, And that hadde grete
 nede of helpe / Whan Turnus³ vnderstode thise
 tidynges, he wente agaynste theym wythoute taryenge.
 32 Alle the sayd shippes entred wythin the haven, excepte
 the shippe of kynge Carton, that was to grete. Turnus

The assault
ceases at night.

The Trojans still
hold their walls.

[* sign. K ij]

Aeneas comes
with 30 ships
and lands his
men.

King Carton's
ship, alone is left
outside the
harbour.

¹ orig. fauf

² orig. Eeasn

³ orig. Turnus

CAP. XLIX. peyned hymselfe full sore, and his knyghtes also, for
 Aeneas lands his to lette theym of theyr landyng / But Eneas, that wyth
 Aeneas lands his his men despite the opposition of Turnus. to lette theym of theyr landyng / But Eneas, that wyth
 his barons that were in his ship wyth hym, was landed
 first of alle / And defended the porte ayenst the 4
 ytalyens, tyH that all the folke were come alande /
 Thenne beganne the bussynes and the trompettes for
 to blowe, of the one parte / And of the other, Eneas,
 A fierce battle. atte his comynge vpon, he ouerthrewe & slewe Sythera, 8
 that was moche rychely armed, and of noble and ryche
 armes / And after, Latam, & also the geaunte / that
 Aeneas slays many Italians. bare a clubbe / wherwyth he hadde take the lyff awaye
 of many troians. there sholde haue enneas adommed 12
 turnus ryght sore, yf it hadde not be a heuy aduenture
 that happed ; For Turnus slewe there Palas, the sone
 Turnus slays Pallas and takes his ring. of kyng euander / & whan he was ded, he toke awaye
 from hym a riche rynge of golde / Whan Palas was 16
 slayne, there was made grete sorowe for hym, of Eneas /
 and of his felawes / But therefore ceassed not the
 bataylle. his men bare hym oute of the bataylle /
 And made for hym grete sorowe Whan Eneas knewe 20
 it, he came all wrothe and sore an-angred vpon his
 enmyes, whiche he hewed and slewe wyth his swerde,
 as pren and hardy that he was. Thenne yssued oute of
 the casteH, Ascanyus his sone / and the goode knyghtes 24
 troians that were enclosed therin / and that hadde
 suffred grete assawtes the daye afore.

[* Leaf K ij, back]

¶ * How Eneas sought Turnus alle a-boute
 In the bataile, for to slee hym for the 28
 dethe of Palas. ¶ Cap^o xlix

Aeneas seeks Turnus in the battle.

ENeas was thrughe the bataiHe, sekyng a-bout
 after Turnus, that was ryght valyaunt / pren,
 and hardy In bataylle / The fende, that sawe 32
 that Eneas sought Turnus for to slee hym / that wolde
 not that he sholde be ded so soone, to thende that he

sholde doo yet moche harne, and euylls more than CAP. XLIX.
 he hadde doon aH-redy, dyde transforme hym self In A spectrai like-
 to the fygure of eneas, & came a-fore turnus, that ness of Aeneas,
 4 forced hym self for to make grete occision of the folke
 of Eneas / whan Turnus apperecyued hym, he wende
 verily that it hadde be Eneas hym self, and ranne
 vpon hym with alle his myght; and whan he was
 8 approached nyghe hym, he launched a darte atte hym.
 and the deuyH tourned to hym his back, & beganne
 for to flee awaie thrughe y^e multitude of the people by flight,
 that faught. whan Turnus sawe that, wenyng to hym
 12 that it had be Eneas that durst not abyde hym, he
 began to enchaunte hym sore with wordes / but he *that*
 fled, sette nought by hys enchaumentes, & fledd
 so longe afore turnus, that alwayes folowed him, that leads Turnus on
 16 he lept in-to one of the shippes of Eneas that was board a ship,
 nyghe by the shores, lyke as it had be for grete feer
 of his lyffe. Turnus, that helde his swerde in his
 ryght hand, and his shelde fast afore his brest, and
 20 that had grete Ioye in hym self / For he wende that
 Eneas had fled for fere of hym, and that he durste
 not abyde hym / went and entred after the deuH
 that was in liknes of eneas, within the shippe fuH
 24 vigorously, for to haue killed hym / but whan he
 was come within, he founde there noo body with
 whome he myght fight; And sought aHe about, bothe where he finds
 behinde & before, within y^e shippe / but he fonde nothing, and is
 28 no thinge / so was he thezne sore abashed, & wolde
 haue *comme* out *ayen for to retourne to the bataylle / [^e sign. K iij]
 but the yssue was to hym fuH euyH redy / For the detained on
 cables of the shyppe that heelde hit, were broken and board by the
 32 fallen vnder the water. cable breaking.

CAP. L. ¶ How Eneas smote Merencyus wyth his
spere in his thye a grete stroke :

Capitulum. L.

Aeneas, seeking
Turnus in the
press, slays
many Italians.

Turnus, to his
horror, is carried
away by the
current to
Ardea, his father
Daunus's city.

Mezentius, his
son Lausus, and
Messapus slay
many Trojans.

[* sign. K iij,
back]

DVrynge this while that Turnus wende to haue 4
chassed Eneas / was enneas in the thyekest presse
of the bataylle, callynge after Turnus wyth a
hyghe voys / and broughte many ytalyens to their deth
wyth his swerde. Turnus, that sawe hym selfe brought 8
ferre from the shores / knewe weH thenne that he
was deceyued, and wyste not what he myghte doo, nor
where he sholde become / soo sore an-angred he was /
whan he founde hym selfe in that plyght. Thenne 12
be heued vp his handes towarde heuen swetly, and
began to calle vpon Iupyter / why he hadde broughte
hym to this grete sorowe / that he sawe his folke
that were kylled & slayne afore his eyen / And that 16
he myghte in no wyse socoure them / one tyme he
thought for to slee hym selfe / another tyme he wolde
haue drowned hym selfe / And while *that* he was thus
in this thought for to doo the one or thother, y^e shippe 20
went doune the ryuer of tonyre, wyth the streme *that*
was so bigge, tyH that it cam in-to the hauen of the
cyte of darda, where as kyng daryus, the fader of turnus,
was. Merencius was yet in the batayH, & forced hymselfe 24
to dystroye & sle enneas folke / & wyth hym was his
sone Lansus, *that* was preu & hardy / this merencyus
ranne vpon the troians with grete force, his swerde in
his hande, & made grete fayttes of armes / he slew 28
acren, & Merende, & many other / mesapus made also
grete slaughter of the troians / for he slewe Lamon &
lycormon, cycartem, & many other worthi folke. thus
were medled y^e bataylles. merencyus confounded & 32
distryed wyth *his swerde aHe that he fonde afore
hym / And whan Eneas sawe hym, he beganne to

come towarde hym. and Merencyus byhelde hym
 comynge / whom he doubted not / And eneas auanced
 hymselfe soone / and launched at hym his grete
 4 espyotte or spere / and smote hym thorughe the thye /
 whan Merencyus sawe the bloode come oute, he was
 therof sore an-angred / And anone ranne vpon Eneas /
 sayenge that he sholde auenge it vpon hym / But his
 8 knyghtes toke hym, and hadde hym awaye fro the
 bataylle / for his wounde bled ahte to sore / and yet
 was a parte of the spere wythin / that greued hym
 ryght sore :

CAP. LI.

Aeneas wounds
Mezentius.Mezentius is
removed by his
knyghts.

12 ¶ How Merencyus made grete sorowe /
 whan he sawe his sone dede

Capitulum Lj

16 **W**Han Lansus sawe his fader merencyus thus sore
 hurte, he wexed therof aht iuh of wrathe /
 And assembled ayen ahte the bataylles togyder / and
 ranne vpon Eneas. There was slayne many knyghtes
 of the one parte / and of the other, eneas smote Lansus
 20 wyth his swerde vpon his helme, and cloue hym vnto
 the teeth. there was grete sorowe made whan Lansus
 was ded / Durynge the while that this happed,
 Merencyus, wyth a grete flote of knyghtes, was
 24 descended vpon the ryuage of the Tonyre, and made
 his wounde to be shwed vppe, that was yet full sore /
 Thenne asked he after his sone Lansus, and com-
 maunded that he sholde be broughte from the ooste ;
 28 And that he wolde wyte how he hadde mayntened hym
 selfe in¹ the bataylle, For he wolde here and knowe
 of his proesse / And as he spake thyse wordes /
 They came wyth the corpus / making gret mone, &
 32 cryeng full heuely. merencyus knewe soone *that* it was
 his sone / for his herte was heuy & full of tristesse /
 who thenne had seen hym *complayne* & sighe, wolde

A great
slaughter.Aeneas slays
Lansus.Grief of
Mezentius for
his son.¹ orig. iuu

CAP. LI.
[r sign. K iiii]

Mezentius has
his wound bound
up, and goes to
take vengeance
on Aeneas.

He calls Aeneas.

Terrible fight
between Aeneas
and Mezentius.

Mezentius is
slain.

Night separates
the combatants.

*haue hadde grete merueyHe / He rented his clothes,
and tare hys herys from his owne hede, and was an-
angerd and wrothe without mesure / And whan he
hadde sorowed longe ynoughe, he made hys thye to be 4
dressed and bounden vp / And commaunded that hys
hors sholde be brought to hym, for to goo to the
batayH, to auenge y^e dethe of his sone vpon Eneas /
And whan he was sette ahorsbacke, he toke a darte for 8
to launche or cast / and thenne he went streyghte to
the batayHe / And, as a worthy knyghte, smote amonge
hys ennyes. And anone he dyde caH Eneas with a
hyghe voyce / Eneas herde hym, and came towarde 12
hym / and whan he sawe hym, he sayde to hym /
“Nowe, Eneas, that hast slayne my sone, I am here
present, and wote not whether I shaH here deye / but
or that I deye, I shaH gyue the suche strokes *that* shalbe 16
to thy grete grief /” And thenne he launched to hym
a darte sore harde, And syn another; and after, the
thirde. Eneas ranne about, that durst not abyde hym /
And after this, Eneas myght suffer hym noo lenger, but 20
went vpon hym with a spere, and wende to haue stryke
hym with it / But he myssed of hym, & smote his hors
so that he feH, and Merencyus vnder hym / Thenne
rose there a grete noyse and a grete crye of Merencyus 24
folke, that came there aHe to gyder with theyre swerdes
naked: But Eneas, that sawe Merencyus agrounde,
came towarde hym or euer he coude be vpon hys fete,
and gaffe hym suche a stroke with his swerde, that he 28
slewe hym. Thenne were they of the oost aH dyscom-
fyted. And more dommage they sholde haue hadde,
yf the nyghte hadde not departed theym one from
another.

¶ How Eneas sent the body of Palas In to
the shyppe, & sente It to his fader /

¶ Capitulum : .liij.

4 * **T**Henne went they of the ooste towarde laurence, [*sign. K iiij,*
and Eneas toward his fortresse / but they *back*]
coude not entre aHe wythyme, But lodged
theymsel without vpon the ryuere. And whan the
8 mornynge came, Eneas made to take the corpus of
palas, and made it to be moche rychely appareiffed, as
to a sone of a kynge apparteyneth, & putte it in to a
shippe / and sent him ayen to his fader, with the gayne
12 of the knyghtes, & wyth the proye that they had gotten
afore that he deyed / The messagers that bare hym,
recounted weH his grete proesse, and retourned ayen
assoone as they myght *comme* / Ouer longe a thyng
16 it were, for to reherce the sorowe that his fader
Euander made, & his moder in lykewyse, for hys
dethe / And in this maner while, came messagers out
of Laurence, with *branches* of olyue tree, & asked
20 tryewes of eneas, for to take vp the dede bodies, & gyue
theym sepultures / eneas graunted theym their request
gladly for / xii dayes. And whan this triews were
graunted, eneas saide to the messagers / “ha, a, lordes
24 latyne, what aduenture is it that maketh you to fyght
ayenst me that wolde be your frende? Ye requyre me
of peas & tryewes for theym that ben deed / but ye
shaH vnderstande, that more gladli I wolde gyue them
28 to them that lyue. For I trowed not for to haue
fought here / nor I come not hither for to fight, yf ye
wolde leue me in peas / but I come here by the *com-*
mandement of the goddes, for to haue a dweHyng
32 place. Nor I fight not with them of laurence; but I
make were aienst turnus, that wold haue lauyne, the
daughter of kynge Latynus, ayenst the wiffe of the

The body of
Pallas sent
home to
Evander.

Evander
sorrowes.

A truce to bury
the dead.

Aeneas remon-
strates with the
people of
Laurentum for
fighting against
him.

CAP. LIII.

Æneas proposes single combat with Turnus, to settle their differences.

[leaf K 5]

The Latin messengers report Æneas's speech to Latinus.

The bodies are burnt.

The ladies of Laurentum curse Turnus for beginning the war.

goddess. And yf turnus wyl haue vs out of this royalme, me semeth that it were fulle couenable a thyng, that he & I sholde fight togyder, body ayenst body / & that he that sholde haue the victorye ouer 4 the other / he sholde haue the puceHe lawy*ne, & her faders good wyHe with-aHe / and the other that were ouercome, sholde lese his lyffe. And thus, they that be not gylty, sholde not deye, nor y^e londe not be 8 dystroyed / Nowe goo youre waye, & reporte to the kyng that that I haue saide, & that I wyH abyde by. And that he doo me to knowe yf Turnus wiH be agreeable to the same" / The messengers were moche 12 merueyHed of hys fydelyte, & of that that he had sayde; and they toke their leue, and returned ayen toward the kyng / to whome they declared aH alonge. aHe that eneas hadde sayde vnto theym, and that 16 the triews were gyuen. And incontyent they made theym redy for to brenne the bodies ded; and lyke wise dyde eneas, of the other syde; & ye ought to knowe, that grete sorowe was there made by theym 20 that hadde lost their frendes in the bataylle. The ladyes of the cyte cursed turnus, & the owre in whiche he bigan first the bataylle, for to haue the doughter of kyng latyn / Thus lasted the sorowe thre 24 dayes and thre nyghtes, that they neuer dyde ceasse /

¶ Of the messengers that Turnus hadde sent to dyomedes. Capitulum. Lij

THenne assembled agayne kyng Latynus his 28 barons, for to haue counceyHe what he myghte doo agaynst Eneas, that wolde not but peas and concorde / And while that they were comyng to this counceyHe, the messengers that turnus had sente to 32 Dyomedes / whan he soughte his ayde for to fighte ayenste Eneas / and that bare to Dyomedes ryche presentes in-to the cyte of Agryppa, whiche is in one

Venus returns to Latinus, from his embassy to Dionides at Argyrippa,

of the partyes of PuyHe / where Dyomedes hadde
 dwelled euer syth the tyme that he was departed
 frome byfore the cyte of / Troye, And helde there the
 4 cyte and the lordeshyppes, After that he came agayne
 *from puyHe: The kynge commaunded that they
 sholde comme afore hym, for to teHe what they hadde
 founde / vernylus began to speke ahyghe, and sayde /
 8 “Barons and lordes, we dyde see Dyomedes, and a grete
 parte of theym that were with hym afore Troye / we
 made to hym due reuerence, and tolde hym what we
 were, and who hadde sende vs / And also tolde hym
 12 ayenst whome we wolde make werre, And dyde
 presente vnto hym the yeftes that we bare vnto hym
 from the kyng Latyne / & whan kynge dyomedes
 hadde herde vs / he dyde answeere to vs peasybly, and
 16 sayde / “Ha a ! folke of ytalye, what aduenture commeth
 nowe to you ? I lette you wite for certayne, that we that
 dyde fyghte ayenst the Troyens, and that theyre londes
 we dyde dystroye, Gatte nor wanne therby nothyng /
 20 For howe be it that Pryamus the kynge was dyscom-
 fyted, and his knyghtes destroyed, Right soo was
 Agamenon loste and slayne, that cheffe gouernoure was
 a boue vs aHe, by the meanes of his wyf that loued
 24 more another than she dyde hym, whiche holdeth nowe
 the londe. what shaHe I teHe you of the vnhappy
 Pyrrus, nor of the other grekes, nor of my self / wyte
 weH that I shaH neuer fyght ayenst the Troyens, yf I
 28 may. For more wors it is to vs happed in dyuerse
 maner, of that we dyde fyght ayenst theym, than it is
 to theym for to haue be dyscomfyted by vs. But goo
 youre waye ageyne, and bere thees gyftes vnto eneas, &
 32 ye shaH doo wysely / & I lete you wite, *that* wyth hym
 I haue foughte, body ayenste body / and by cause *that*
 I haue founde hym of so grete strengthe and proesse,
 I saye yet that, yf he had nowe with him two houndred
 36 knyghtes suche as he is, & in theyre companye, hector &

CAP. LIII.

[leaf K 5, back]

with Diomedes's
answer.Diomedes will
not fight against
the Trojans,
and advises
Latinus to make
peace with
Aeneas.Misfortunes
befell all the
Greeks that
helped in the
destruction of
Troy.

CAP. LIV.

[* leaf K 6]

Diomedes
recounts the
heroism of
Aeneas.

troylus / aHe grece myght be soone bi theym aHe
wasted & distroied ; and weH ye oughte this to beleue
of me, for I haue assayed hym / And * Also ye muste
vnderstande for veraye certeyne, that aH the recystence 4
that was made ayenst vs grekes afore Troye, it was
made by the strengthe of Eneas, of Ector, and of
Troylus / that socoured and reioysed the other. And
were almoste equalle, Hector, Eneas & Troylus ; But 8
eneas was of more symple corage : Retourne agayn
towards eneas, and make peas wyth hym, yf ye be sage.”

¶ How kynge Latyne counseyllled for to
make peas wyth Eneas. 12

Capitulum Liiij^o

WHan the messagers hadde thus reported their
wordes / grete spekyng arose thurgh aH
the halle / And whan it was ceassed, the 16
kyng spake and sayd / “ Lordes, I wolde we hadde goode
counseyH afore that more *dommage* sholde come to vs /
We be not wyse for to fyghte agaynste eneas, as longe
as that the goddes wyH be on his side ; Nor ayenste 20
his folke that neuer were very for no batayHe that
they hadde. Now truste nomore vpon Dyomedes ; lete
vs thynke and see how we shaH mowe eschewe this
paryeH / For vpon vs falleth the werke / and I maye 24
nomore helpe my selfe. wherfore I haue bethoughte me
of one thinge / that is to saye, a pece of londe *that*
marcheth towards cecylle : Lete vs gyue that grounde
to the Troians / and accorde vs to theym. And yf they 28
loue the countrey, lete vs suffre¹ theym for to buylde
there townes, cytees and castelles : And yf they wyH
not doo soo, but wyll go in some other countrey, I shaH
doo make for theym ryche shippes² and goode / And 32
shaH doo delynere vnto theym aH that they shaH
nede / And I shaHe nowe sende vnto Eneas ryche

Latinus pro-
poses to give the
Troians a tract
of land next
Sicily.

If they like to
stay, let them
build there, if
not he will
expedite their
departure.

¹ *orig.* suffre

² *orig.* shippes

presentes, for to knowe his wylle in this byhalue."

CAP. LIV.

Thenne rose vppe an hondred knyghtes, *that* sayd they shold goo to eneas ; & also drastes, *that* loued not turnus, 4 sayd in this wyse to y^e kyng / " haa, goode * kyunge ! ahe they that ben here, knowe weH wheronto the thyng is come, but none dare speke hyt / Alle we oughte to putte ourselfe in peyne for to haue peas / For many a 8 man is aH-redy ded / wherby Eneas is wexed more stronge / Graunte vnto hym your doughter / for she shaH be weH employed wyth this two yestes that ye doo promytte to hym : And thus shaH we haue peas / 12 And yf ye dare not doo it for Turnus / I shaH mow praye hym fyrste, that he haue mercy of me and of other / And that he take the hardynes vpon hym for to fyghte hym selfe alone / For folke ynoughe are aH 16 redy slayne / wherby the lande is dystroyed / And yf he feleth in hym selfe¹ y^e vertue & strengthe for to haue your doughter and the royame by force / Lete hym fyghte, body ayenst body, to his enmye that 20 calleth hym therto / and that he wyH not see that the poure people be dystroyed / and that he haue in-to his remembraunce the proesse of his fader, and that he goo ayenste Eneas, for to fyghte wyth hym, hande for 24 hande" / And whan turnus, that was come ayen to Lawrence, herde the erle Drastes speke soo, he toke it in a grete anger ; For he knewe weH that he loued² hym not / and themme he spake by grete anger, and 28 sayd : " Thou haste grete habondaunce of wordes wyth y^e. whosomeuer fyghte, thou wylte not come nyghe yf thou mayste kepe the a side / But in the plees amonge the senatours, thou wylte be the firste that shaH speke / 32 and therof we haue not to doo nowe" / And yet sayd Turnus to Drastes, afore kyunge Latynus, that he neuer sawe dyomedes fyghte wyth eneas / but and yf Eneas came ayenst hym / he sholde not refuse hym, nor flee

100 knights offer to go to Aeneas with the proposal.

[leaf K 6, back]

Drances advises the King to give his daughter in marriage to Aeneas, and Turnus to engage Aeneas in single combat,

to save the lives of the poor people.

Turnus replies fiercely to Drances, but does not refuse to fight Aeneas.

¹ orig. felfe

² orig. loned

CAP. LV. ferre from hym / But sholde gladly fyghte wyth hym,
thoughe he were as stronge as the deuyH :

[* leaf K 7] ¶ * how eneas came afore the cyte of laurence.

Cap^o lv 4

Report that
Aeneas and the
Tuscans march
on Laurentum.

DVryng that thise wordes were, the sayd Eneas had
ordeyned his folke for to come afore the cyte
of laurence / thenne came a messenger, cryng to
the kynge & to the barons, that the troiens were 8
departed from their tentes for to comme and take the
cyte by force / ¶ Thenne was the cyte aHe in a rore
and sore moeued ; the cytezeyns ranne to fette their
harneys, and made stones to be borne vpon the waHes 12
for to deffende theym / ¶ Turnus went and armed
hymself, and commaunded to his folke that they sholde
be redy right soone for to yssue out with hym / Turnus
dyde putte his folke in araye, & made his bussynes and 16
trompettes to be blowen, and yssued out to the bataille.
¶ The queene Amatha, & lauyne her doughter, because
of this cuyH aduerture that was moeued, and the other
ladyes, went vp in-to the temple of Mynerue, for to see 20
the assembles, & who sholde flee, & who sholde abyde,
and who sholde doo moost of armes / And sore they
cursed Eneas and aHe his felyship. ¶ Whan Turnus
was yssued out of the toure aHe armed / The quene 24
Canulla, with aHe companye of knyghtes, and of may-
dens aHe armed, came toward hym, And demaunded
the fyrst batayHe ayenst Eneas and hys knytes and
that Turnus sholde abyde wythin for to kepe the waHes 28
of the cyte / And she sayde, “ syre, lete me doo with the
bataylle ” / Turnus behelde her thenne, and sayde, “ Ha
a Lady, that are aHe the proesse of Ytalye, who shalle
mowe Rewarde you the meryte of the goodewylle that 32
ye shewe nowe vnto me / I lete you wyte, that to me
are come messagers, whiche doo teHe me that Eneas
sendeth here afore, one part of hys folke and of hys

Uproar in the
city.

Turnus arrays
his men.

The ladies curse
Aeneas now.

Queen Canulla
(Camilla) begs of
Turnus the first
combat with
Aeneas.

- knyghtes; And that the other commen aHe away by
 the *mountayne, and wylle assaylle the towne atte the
 other side. And I shaH telle you what I haue thought
 4 for to doo / I shaHe putte my selfe wyth my folke vp-
 on the moun^tayne, emonge the busshes that enuyronne
 the gronde, there wyth mani archers, and my crosbowes
 and my knyghtes. And whan our enmyes shaH be
 8 come in to / the narrow waye / we shaHe thenne sette
 vpon theym / and shaH bere to theym gret damage.
 and ye, lady, wyth your folke, ye shaH abyde atte this
 side, for to goo vpon the troians whan they shaH come /”
 12 And thenne came there Mesapus wyth a goode bande
 of folke, whiche Turnus exhorted for to doo weH / and
 that he sholde fyghte that daye vnder the banner of
 the noble & preu lady CanuHa / And after that he
 16 hadde sette aH his knyghtes in goode arraye, he
 departed wyth his felawshippe for to go wayte after
 Eneas, atte the descendyng of the hille / And the
 quene CanuHa, and Mesapus, & conroe, & his broder
 20 caules, rode aH armed in fayre ordonaunce vnto the
 barryers: Thenne the troians hasted themsel^fe for to
 come afore the towne / But assone that they myghte
 espye eche other, they approached for to fyght togyder.
 24 they thenne lete renne theiyr horses / And gaaff grete
 strokes, the one to the other, wyth their speres. And
 atte their comyng hande to hande togyder, there was
 grete noyse of horses and of harneys / And they
 28 launched and shotte soo thyecke and soo faste, the one
 partye ayenste the other, that aH the ayer was troubled /
 The Latynes hadde the wors atte the firste comyng
 togyder / For the troians rebuked theym / and caste
 32 theym abacke vnto the gates of the towne ¶ Thenne
 retourned agayne the chyeff capytaynes of the Latynes,
 wyth theyr companye weH horsed, vpon the troians.
 and beganne the medle and the crye of newe / And the
 36 Latynes bare theym selfe fuH weH a * while, that by

CAP. LV.

[* leaf K 7, back]

Turnus agrees to occupy the mountain passes and leave Canilla the plain.

The forces are disposed.

The Trojans advance on Laurentum.

A bloody battle.

The Latins are repulsed.

They renew the battle.

[* leaf K 8]

CAP. LVI.

force of armes they made the troyens to retourne bak /
 But atte the last, the troyens that were neuer very of
 bataylles / made there merueyHes of armes, so that the
 latynes myght susteyne noo lenger the weyght of theyre 4
 swerdes / but were ageyne putte abak /

The Latins are
 repulsed again.

¶ How the queene Canula was slayne In
 bataylle. ¶ Capitulum / lvj

THUS It happed that tyme, that the Latynes were 8
 putte twyes abacke by force of grete fayttes of
 armes / And whan came to the threde tyme
 that the batayHes were aH ordeyned, thenne was ther
 grete destruction and grete slawghter made, bothe of 12
 men and of horses, byfore the barres of the towne,
 where the valyaunt knyghtes made merueyHes, of the
 one part and of the other / but aboute alle other that
 were ther, the queene Canula dyde best In armes, and 16
 kylled and slewe the troyens on cyther syde of her.
 For with the swerde she had a bowe, and a sheeffe of
 arowes hangynge by her syde ; One tyme she shotte /
 Another tyme she smotte grete strokes with her swerde, 20
 and hewe, cleued, and cutted of hedes and armes clene
 from the bodes /

Prowess of
 Camilla, who
 slays the Trojans
 in every
 direction.

¶ In the batayHes of the troyens was a ryche man
 that was called Cleonis, that afore hadde be a byshop 24
 In troye, of the temple of one of theyre goddesses / He
 hadde lefte his offyce, and hadde taken hym self to the
 fayttes of knyghted. This man hadde moche Ryche
 armes, alle conered with fyn golde, and of precyous 28
 stones / ¶ And whan the queene Canulla sawe hym, she
 dyde coueyte sore moche his armures, and made her
 self redy for to slee Cleonyus / ¶ A Troyen that was
 named Anyus apperceyued thesame / And with this, he 32
 was also wrothe for the grete ocysyon that this queene
 Canulla hadde made of the noble * troians ; this man
 began for to praye Inpyter, that he wolde gyue hym

She pursues
 Cleonis for the
 sake of his rich
 armour.

Arms perceives
 it.

[* leaf K 8, back]

strengthe, poure and hardynes, for to auenge his wrathe / CAP. LVII.
 and his frendes that Canuſſa hadde ſlayne: And
 whan he had thus finyſſhed his oroyſen, he lete go his
 4 horse towarde the quene / whiche was not aware of Aruns attacks
 hym: he smote her vpon the lefte ſhoulder wyth his her unawares,
 ſwerde a vengable ſtroke / ſoo that he dyde cutte the
 harneys / and made his ſwerde to entre in to her white
 8 fleſſhe ferre wythin the body of her / ſoo that anone and ſlays her,
 after, ſhe felle ded to the gronde: And after, as lightly
 as he myghte, he departed away; For he doubted ſore
 the quene / But nought auaylled hym his fleynge, for a
 12 mayde ſlewe hym, in vengeance of her lady the
 quene: but is ſoon
after ſlain
himſelf.

¶ How Turnus cam to the feelde, & his
 folke wyth hym ¶ Capitulum lvij.

16 **W**Han Canuſſa was fallen down from her horse,
 thenne was there gret ſorow made; and the
 bataylles of Latynus began aH for to tremble
 and ſhake for fere; and noo recoueraunce was there
 20 more / but cam agayn wythin the barreers / and many
 of theym were thenne ouer throwen and caſt down in-to
 the dyches. And the ladyes of the cyte mounted vpon
 the walles for to defende the towne. And whan they
 24 ſawe bryng the body of Canuſſa, the worthy quene,
 they ſette nomore by their lyues, but gaaf theym ſelfe
 to traueyH for to defende, ſooner than dyd the men.
 the/ene was ſente a meſſager towarde turnus, that was
 28 at his watche wyth his chyualre vpon the mountayne,
 as it is ſaid afore / Whiche ſhewed vnto hym the grete
 ſorow of the batayH, and how Canuſſa was ded. turnus
 toke ſoo grete a ſorow therfor, that he wyeſte not what
 32 to doo / But lefte his watchyng after Eneas / and came
 to the batayH / After this, taryed not long that Eneas
 came and deſcended from *the mountayne for to come
 afore the towne for to conduytte his folke / And thus The Latins
retire within the
barriers.
The women
mount the walls
to defend the
towne.
A meſſage ſent
to Turnus,
who quits the
paſſ and comes
to Laurentum.
Aeneas comes
[* ſign. L. j]
through the paſſ.

CAP. LVII.

The Latins and Turnus's men are driven into the city.

came Eneas and Turnus almoste bothe togyder attones
to the medlee / But it was soo nyghe nyghte whan
that they came there, that lityH faytte of knighthode
was there made / But the Turnyens and the Latynes 4
wythdrewe theym selfe in-to the cyte / And Eneas and
his folke dyde lodge hemselfe withoute the walles of
the towne / where they dyde pyghte theyr tentes.
And whan the mornynge was come / Turnus, that was 8
fuH sory and wrothe for his folke that he sawe dys-
comfyte and slayne, came byfore kynge Latyne in a
proude manere / And sayd that he was redy for to doo
the bataylle, body ayenste body, ayenst Eneas / “But 12
sende for hym, syr,” sayd Turnus, “and take his othe, and
doo deuise the couenaunte / And yf he ouercome me,
lete hym haue the lande, and the pucelle lauyne to his
wyff / And yf I maye conquere hym, lete hym goo his 16
wayes, and leue me in peas wyth Lauyne your doughter /
and wyth your royalm” / The kynge thenne sayd
peassibly to turnus: “Ha ha, valyaunte bacheler, I
doubte sore the aduentures of bataylle / and yf thou 20
bethynkest weH thyselpe, how grete a londe thou shalt
haue in thy holde after thy fader is deceassed, and also
that thou haste conquered grounde ynoughe by thyne
owne proesse, And how many ryehe maydens ben in 24
ytalye, of noble blode / and of highe estate, of whiche
thou myghtest chose one to be thy wyff / Syth that the
goddess wyl not, nor graunte not, that I gyue my doughter
to no man that is of my royame, how be it that, for the 28
loue that I haue vnto the, I had graunted her to the
for to be thy wyf / and namely atte the request of my
wyff / I haue taken her ayen from Eneas, the preu &
worthy knyghte, and haue suffered the for to vndertake 32
the crueH batayHe wherby I haue loste *myn owne
folke / and thou haste hadde grete *dommage* / and we are
atte this owre in soo grete peyne, that we maye nomore /
and no longer we may not weH abyde wythin this 36

Turnus offers to Latinus to fight Aeneas in single combat, for the land and Lavinia.

Latinus advises him to retire home.

[* sign. Lj, back]

cyte / Also the felde ben aH couered wyth our men /
 that lye deH vpon the erthe. what shaH I reherse aH
 our euyH fortunes? were it not thenne better for the,
 4 that thou were wythin thy londe, whiles that thou arte
 hole & sounde, in good plyghte and ioyouse / and also
 afore that thou had lost thy lif / Loke & beholde the
 aduentures of the bataylle, how they ben grete! haue
 8 mercy on thy fader / whiche is in grete age” /

CAP. LVIII.

Latinus advises
 Turnus to avoid
 further fighting.

¶ How the couenaunte of the bataylle was
 made bytwene Eneas & Turnus.

Capitulum lviii.

12 **W**Han Turnus herde the kyng speke thus / he
 taryed tyH that he had finysshed his wordes /
 and sone whan he myght speke / he sayd, “good
 kyng, haue no drede for me, nor no doubte / but suffer
 16 that my honour and praysinge be encreassed / Am I
 thenne soo feble? and doeth my swerde cutte soo
 lityH / that I dare not fyghte wyth Eneas? and is my
 flesshe more tendre, & the bloode of my body more
 20 nyghe goon / more than is his / And I doo hym weH
 to wytte, that yf he come so nyghe me that he be
 wounded / he shal be ferre from y^e goddesse, his moder /
 to whom he trust moche yf I fyght wyth hym :” To
 24 thise wordes came there the quene Amatha, that was
 sore troubled, and aH a-ferde of the bataylle, & of the
 siege of the cyte. And whan she sawe turnus, that
 wolde fyghte wyth eneas, she beganne to wepe & make
 28 grete mone, and sayd / “Turnus, I praye the, by the teeres
 that thou seeste falle fro myn eyen / and by the honour
 that I haue alwayes borne and doon to the, that thou
 fyghte not wyth Eneas / For yf thou deyed, I sholde
 32 neuer lyne after, nyght ne daye. For that owre I
 wolde neuer see, that eneas sholde haue my daughter
 * to hys wyffe” / Whan Lauyne sawe her moder wepe,
 she was thereof fuHe sory & wrothe; and with this she

Turnus deter-
 mines to fight
 Aeneas despite
 the remon-
 strances of
 Latinus

and of Queen
 Amata, who
 tries hard to
 dissuade him.

[* sign. L ij]

CAP. LVIII.

Turnus sees
Lavinia with the
Queen, and is still
more impelled to
insist on
fighting.

be-came rede In her face / And whan Turnus sawe her /
the more that he dyde beholde her / The more he
was taken of the loue of the puceHe, And more wyH-
yunge and sore chaffed for to fyght with Eneas, And 4
sayde to the queene / “Madame, wepe not for me / Nor
doubte not of no thyng / For it is better that we two
fyght togyder / Than that oure folke sholde slee eche
other.” Whan turnus had spoken thus, he dyde make 8
his hors to be broughte afore hym, and his harneys, &
armed himself moche rychely, as of custome was, after
the faeyon & manere of the londe atte that tyme /
And the kynge Latyne had sent his messagers toward 12
Eneas, for to announce vnto hym that Turnus was
alredy appareylled for to fyght, body to body, aienst
hym / Of the bataylle, was enecas ryght glad, and anone
armed him. And of bothe partyes, they assembled 16
theym aHe, In a fayre playne afore the cyte, for to see
the batayHes of this two barons, whiche sholde haue
be merueyllouse. And the ladyes & the puceHes were
mounted vpon the wafes, & the queene also. The 20
kynge latyne was yssued out of the cytee, with Turnus
and with hys men / And of bothe sydes they made
sacrefyces for hym with whome they helde / And the
kynge Latyne and the other barons deuysed the couen- 24
aunces / ‘That who some euer were vanquyshed, Other
Turnus or Eneas / that he and hys hoost sholde voyde
out of the Londe, and sholde goo In to another countrey.’
¶ Whyles that they spake thus, and that the conuen- 28
auntes were deuysed and made, and that rested theyre
nothyng / But for to goo bothe togyder / An aenture
happed there, a merueyllouse thyng, whiche appiered
to aH theym that were there / An egle grete and ouer- 32
growen, came *fleyng hyghe bytwene the cyte and
the tentes ; And themme lighte hym selfe down harde
among a grete many of swaznes that were in a water
nyghe by / And toke one of theym bytwyx his clawes, 36

Aeneas is
willing.

The ladies mount
on the walls to
see the fight, and
Latims and the
others go
outside.

The covenant of
single battle is
made.

[*sign. L ij, back]

The marvel of
the egle and the
swans.

whiche were grete and sharpe / and bare hym vpwarde
 by grete force. And anone aH the hepe of theym
 arose / For they were aferde, and flouge aH highe
 4 towarde the clowdes, And were soo many, that aH
 the ayer was couered wyth theym. And soo moche
 they dyde enuyronne aH aboute the egle / that she
 lete faHe the swanne oute of her clawes in-to the
 8 water / And the egle fledde, and heelde on his waye :

CAP. LIX.

The swan
 escapes from the
 eagle.

How Tholomeus made the bataylle to
 begynne ayen, grete and horryble.

Capitulum lix

12 **W**Han the Turnyens and the Latynes sawe this
 thyng / they hadde therof grete Ioye / For
 they trowed that it hadde be to theym a
 oode bytokenyng: And therof arose thorughe aH
 16 the ooste a grete murmure & a grete noyse, and houered
 in theym selfe soo sore / that for a lityH / they wolde
 haue romme vpon the troians / Thenne spake a deny-
 noure that was called Tholomeus: and sayd in audy-
 20 ence / “ Lordes turnyens, this was that I desired for to
 see some tokens from the goddes / That egle that
 lighted amonge the hepe of swannes, sygnyfieth our
 emnye stranger, that is, Eneas, that wasteth and dys-
 24 troyeth our londe / But lete vs aduise also that we
 enuyronne hym roande aboute wyth goode men of
 armes, as the swannes dyde the egle / And lete vs
 deffende Turnus agaynste hym / and weH I wote that
 28 he shaH flee awaye oute of oure countrey; And thus
 shaH we be delyuerde of hyn.” And thenne whan he
 hadde thus sayde, He shotte an arowe towarde the
 troians / and smote a knyghte, and ouerthrewe hym to
 32 the *grounde bytwyx the other, that were therof aH
 abashed.

The Latins think
 this a good
 omen

A great
 murmuring in
 their host.

The battle is
 again made
 general by
 Tolumnius the
 augur, who urge
 the Latins to
 defend Turnus,

and shoots a
 Trojan with an
 arrow.

(* sign. L iij)

CAP. LX.

¶ How Turnus dyde grete dommage to
Eneas folke : Capitulum LX :

The battle is
renewed.

T[H]Enne beganne agayne the batayHe of the
one parte / And of the other, Eneas ascryed to 4
theym and sayd : “ Lordes, why doo ye fyghte /
Ye knowe weH that the couenaunte ys deuysed and
made / That Turnus and I shaH fyghte for you aHe /”
Whyle that eneas sayd thyse wordes, and cryed vnto 8
his folke that they sholde not fyghte / There was a
quareyH launched in-to his hande / and wyste neuer
who shotte hit. Thenne departed Eneas from thens /
and Turnus and his folke ranne soone to fetcche theyr 12
armures. And thenne Turnus smote hym selfe in to
the troians / Turnus, atte his comynge on, dyde grete
dommage to the troians, For he was a ryghte valyaunte
knyghte of his body, And desyred moche for to 16
dyscomfyte theym. He satte vpon a charyette wyth
foure wheles, and foure whyte horses dyde lede hym ;
He hadde wyth hym the dartes for to launche and
caste / And hys other armures for to assaylle and 20
fyghte, from ferre and of nyghe ¶ Soone after that
he was come to the medlee, he slewe Thelemon and
Thamytoun, and Potym and Glathome / and Tasdome /
And after came there a troien towarde hym / that was 24
sone of Ozon of troye / that was ryghte weH armed of
ryche armures / And to the same, launched¹ Turnus a
darte / and ouerthrewe hym, fuH sore wounded. And
assone as he sawe hym a grounde / he made his horse 28
to tarrye, and alyghted down from his charyotte, and
sette his fote vpon his necke, and shoued his swerde
in-to his throtte / And after, he sayd to hym : “ Troian,
here is the londe that thou hast requyred for *to fyghte 32
ayenst me / wherefore I shalle gyue to the thy fylle

Aeneas is
wounded and
retires.

Turnus makes
terrible havoc
among the
Troians.

He slays many
chiefs.

[* sign. L iij,
back]

Gives Dolon's
son his fill

¹ orig. launched

therof" / and with the same, he toke hys hand fulle of
 erthe fro the grounde, and fylled hys throte therwith-
 alle, while that he was a passynge / And wite for veraye
 4 trouthe, sayde Turnus to hym, that "alle thus I shaſt
 rewarde theym of thy naeyon that shaſt comme ayenst
 me In bataylle." Anoone after that he hadde sayde thys
 wordes to the troyen / He recountred another, that was
 8 called Habitem, and was the felawe of hym to whome
 he had thus spoken / And slewe hym incontynent ; and
 after hym, many other moo / And while that Turnus
 went thus thurgh the bataylle, alle att hys wylle,
 12 sleynge the troyens, Eneas and Menesteus and
 Achates and Ascanyus came to the medlee / for Eneas
 hadde be a longe espace therfro, for cause of the
 wounde that he hadde had In his hande, and spored
 16 hys horse atte that syde where he wist that turnus
 was. And he had hys knyghtes made roome afore
 theym, and slewe doune many of the Latynes and
 turnyens att euery hande of hem, and soone abashed
 20 the Ytalyens, so that they trembled for feere. Eneas
 slewe Afram and Osanum, Achetym and Pulerum, and
 gyas, and also Atherantum / And tholomus, that be-
 ganne the medlee, lost there hys lyffe / for ascanyus
 24 slewe hym atte firste stroke that he smotte hym with
 the glayue / Thenne a-rose the noyse and the crye
 sore grete of bothe sydes / But the Latynes myght noo
 lenger endure, and tourned theyre bakkes, and went
 28 awaye / Eneas that chassed, wolde not ssee theym
 nomore, But dyde caſte and sought after Turnus In
 the grete presse / And with noon other he wolde fyght.
 Turnus taryed not longe In one place, But went euer
 32 here and there alonge the wynges of the bataylles,
 wherby he dyde grete damage to the troyens / thenne
 *dyde Eneas assemble alle the grete bataylles / And
 aduysed hym selfe / that he sholde drawe towarde the
 36 cyte, that was aſt abashed / Thenne called he to hym

CAP. LX.

of Italian soil.

Aeneas returns
and slays many
of the Italians,
who tremble.Tolumnius is
slain by
Ascanius.

The Latins fly.

Aeneas seeks
Turnus alone.

[* s'gn. L. iij.]

CAP. LXL.

Aeneas draws his
army under the
walls of
Laurentum,

Menesteus and Sarestum, that were connestables of his folke, and of the bataylles, And sayd to theym / "make oure folke to withdrawe theym from the bataylle, And brynge theym towarde the mountayne nyghe to 4 the cyte, For I wolde take hit yf I maye / or elles Turnus shaH fyghte wyth me" / And they dyde soone as Eneas hadde commaunded theym; They made theyr folke for to drawe towarde the walles of the 8 townne or cyte / and broughte ladders wyth theym / Eneas was a-fore, and cryed on hyghe to kynge Latyne / that fuH yHe he kepte his couenauntes.

and cries to
Latinus that he
keeps not his
covenants.

¶ Amonge theym wythin the cyte, mocued themne a 12 grete dyscorde and varyaunce. For some wolde haue opened the gates to Eneas; But theother wolde not soo / but wolde defende the londe ayenste hym / For they heelde theym selfe of turnus partye : 16

The citizens are
divided whether
to admit him or
not.

¶ How the quene Amatha hanged herselfe
by dyssperacyon : Capitulum lxj

WHan Amatha sawe the thyng goo thus / and apperceyued the ladders that the troians dyde 20 sette vppe to the walles / And the fyre that they casted in-to the cyte, and sawe not Turnus that shokle defende her / Wherefor she wende that he hadde be slayue, Thenne hadde she her thoughte sore 24 troubled / And anone she wente in-to a chambre wythoute companye / and toke the lyffe from her, and hanged her selfe. And whan the tydynges therof were knowen in the townne, they were soo affrayed, that lytyH 28 deffence was made there. Who themne hadde seen Lauyne puHyng and rentyng her yelowe heeres,*hadde hadde of her grete pyte / And kynge Latyne, that more abashed was than Lauyne, rented his roobes / And 32 pulled of his heeres, And blamed hym selfe ryght sore that he hadde not gyuen his doughter to Eneas / Duryng this, Turnus vnderstode the grete

Amata hangs
herself.

[* sign. L iij
back]

Grief of Latinus
and Lavinia.

sorowe that was made wythin the cyte, by a knyghte
of his that was smyten wyth a glayue thorughe the
thybe, and came ayenste hym as faste as he myghte
4 spore and waloppe his horse / And sayd / "Turnus!
haue mercy on thy men / For in the is oure laste
hope / Eneas fyghteth hurde ayenste the cyte, And
threteneth aH the towres to be broughte down / And
8 wytte, that he dooth fyre to be caste in-to the towne /
And the kynge Latyne blameth hym selfe moche, and
knoweth not what he shaH do / But to tourne hym
selfe ayenste the wyth Eneas, and gyue hym bothe his
12 doughter and his royame. And that more is, Amathia
the queene, that lued the so moche, and that was to
the so good a frende, hathe kyHed her self, her owne
hande, wherof the towne is sore moened / And afore
16 the gates is noon of thin that defendeth ayenst the
troyens, Sauff Mesapus and AeyHas; they withstande
and kepe thentre ayenst the batayHes of the troyens /
And thou art here, gawrynge about nought." Whan
20 Turnus herde the same, he was ashamed, and ryght sore
wrothe, and on-angerd / And loked toward the cytee,
and sawe the flume of the fyre within the towne, whan
he saw that, he lyghted doune from his charyot, and
24 went toward the gate where were the grete batayHes.
Thenne beganne he to make a signe to hys men that
they sholde drawe backe, For he wolde fight for theym
with Eneas, hande to hande In a felde, as it was
28 deuysed afore /

A Knight tells
Turnus, who
returns to
Laurentum.

Latinus re-
proaches Turnus

who goes to the
city gate to fight
Aeneas singly.

¶ *How Eneas & Turnus faught, body to
body, In a felde, one geynst the other.

[* leaf L 5]

¶ Capitulum Lxij :

32 **A**Noone as Eneas herde turnus speke / he made
noo taryinge atte aHe, but went assoone
as he myght toward the felde / and lefte the
sawtyng of the waffes and of the toures that they

Aeneas and
Turnus fight.

CAP. LXIII.

All go to see the
fight between
Aeneas and
Turnus.

hadde enuayshed. Thenne departed from the assawte
the one partye & the other, for to see the batayHe
of the two barons. Eneas and Turnus were bothe
In the felde aH alone, weH appareylled, and ap- 4
roched eche other ryght harde, lyke two buHes / and
drew out theyre sharpe swerdes / Thenne was there
noo sparynge. But that euerych of them smote his
enmye, so that y^e sheldes wherwith-aH they couered 8
theymselfe, were aHe to-hewen and broken alle to peces /
the batayHe was fyerse and cruelle, for they hated eche
other ryght sore / But atte the laste, turnus was ouer-
comme / and he cryed mercy to eneas, that he sholde 12
not slee hym. And wytte, that Eneas sholde haue
pardoned hym that *that* he hadde mysdoon ayenst hym,
if it had not be the ryng & the gyrdeH of palas, that
turnus dyde were vpon hym ; for whan eneas dyd see 16
theym / the sorowe that he made for y^e dethe of Palas,
that turnus had slayne, was renewed in his herte /
whiche redoubled thenne hys grete wrathe / and sayde
to turnus, “ thou shalt abyenowe the gladnes that thou 20
had of the dethe of Palas / For thou shalt here deye
for his sake ” / And anoone he shoued his swerde
thrughe the body of hym, wherout hys sowle departed /
AH thus was conquered aHe Lombardy, and the puceHe 24
Lauyne, by the hande of eneas /

Turnus is over-
come and cries
for mercy.

Aeneas sees the
ring and girdle
of Pallas on
Turnus, and
slays him,

and conquers
Lombardy and
the damsel
Lavinia.

Supplement by
the writer.

¶ How eneas wedded Lauyne, and hadde
the Royalme of Ytalye.

¶ Capitulum / Lxiiij 28

[* leaf L 5, back]

Turnus's friendes
depart in sorrow.

* **A**Noone as Turnus was slayne / his frendes de-
parted ryght sory and wrothe / And many other
wyth theym / that loued hym for his proesse.
¶ The kyng Latyne, that was ryght sore of his grete 32
mysehaunce, Came to Eneas / his noble men wyth
hym, and gaff hym his doughter / and aH his royame /
And receyued hym wyth grete Ioye / and thenne was

Latinus gives
his daughter to
Aeneas.

the peas made towarde theym that hadde be agaynste hym / Anone the troians and the latynes togyder wente for to brenne and reduce to ashes, bodyes ded

CAP. LXIV.

The bodies are buried, and Aeneas,

4 that were yet in the feeldes / And whan that was doon / the quene Camula was sente in-to her londe, and the quene Amatha was ryehely broughte to her sepulture. Thenne was ceased aH the sorowe thoroughe

8 aH the royaume of ytalye. Eneas, that had hadde many a sore peyne by the space of seuen yeres syth that he came from Troye, toke to his wyff Laayne, the daughter of kynge Latyne, that heelde laurence, the
12 maystresse eyte of lombardye atte that tyme / And moche Ioye was there made atte theyr weddyng /

after seven years of trouble, marries Lavinia.

¶ How kyng Latyne deceassed / And Eneas soone after hym / And how Ascanyus was
16 called Iulyus. Capitulum lxiiiij

After this, abode not longe¹ but that the kynge Latynus deyed / and deceassed oute of this mortalle worlde / Thenne heelde Eneas aH the royaume;

Latinus dies, Aeneas succeeds and wars with Mezentius of Sicily.

20 But werres ynoughe he hadde there. For Merencyus, that heelde Cecylle, werred ayenste hym / But Eneas vaynquysshed hym not / By cause that dethe toke hym sooner than he wende. But after the deth of Eneas,

Aeneas's death.

24 his sone Ascanyus faughte wyth Merencyus, body *to body, & slewe hym / and thenne he was called ascanyus iulyus, by cause hys fyrste berde was but yonge whan he slewe Mezenyum / whan eneas had brought y^e

[leaf L 6]

His son Ascanius slays Mezentius.

28 londe in peas, & had delynered it from grete myserye / the dethe *that* noo body spareth, ranne hym vpon In suche a manere / that noo body conde neuere knowe how he loste his lyffe / Some sayen that he was slayne

Mode of Aeneas's death uncertan.

32 wyth the thonder bolte; the other sayen that the goddes hadde rauyshed hym / the other sayen hys body was founde wythin a ponde or a water that is nyghe the

¹ orig. louge

CAP. LXV.
Supplement.

tonyre, whiche is called Munycum of theym of the countreye / Eneas lyued but thre yere after that he hadde wedded Laayne, the doughter of kynge Latyne, thus as we haue saide. 4

¶ How Ascanyus helde the royalm of Ytalye after the dethe of Eneas hys fader. ¶ Capitulum. Lxv

Ascanyus
succeeds his
father.

After the dethe of Eneas, helde the royalm Ascanyus hys sone, that he hadde of the doughter of the kynge Pryamus of Troye / And Laayne abode grete wyth chylde of a sonne; Wherfore she doubted sore lest that Ascanyus sholde make hym deye, In treyson, for to holde aHe the Royalm / Therefore was she ryght sory / And for feere that she hadde of it / She fledde away In-to the forest, wythyn the lodges of Errorus, that was a pastour; And there she was, tyHe 16 that she was delyuered of her sone, that hadde to name Sylhyus postumus / Whan Ascanyus wiste where hys stepmoder was goon, and that she hadde a sone whiche was hys brother / he sent her worde that she sholde 20 comme to hym wythout eny feere / She retourned, & came ayen to her stepsone ascanyus, berynge her son siluyus betwene her armes : ascanyus gaffe, by ye counseill of hys * barons of his londe, to his brother 24 Sylunym, the cyte of Lawrence wyth the appartenaunces. Ascanyus buylded firste the towne or cyte of Albe in lombardy. And there was his resortynge / by the space of xxxviij. yeres that he heelde hys reygne, 28 after the dethe of hys fader Eneas. And of thys cyte ben many in doubte who buykle it vppe, Ascanyus, or elles Syluyus postunus his brother / By cause that aH the kynges of Lombardy that were syth Ascanyus, 32 vnto Romulus that founded Rome, hadde to name Syluyus, for the hyghnesse of hym that fyrste heelde and buylded Albe. This Syluyus was ryght valyaunte /

His brother, by
Lavinia, Sylvius
Postumus.

[* leaf L 6. back]

Doubtful
whether
Ascanyus or
Sylvius founded
Alba.

From Ascanyus
to Romulus all
the kings are
surnamed
Sylvius,

- and mayntened weH the royame / And therefore aH
 they that came after hym were called Syluyus / lyke
 as after Cesar Augustus / for his worthynesse, aH the
 4 emperours of rome that were after hym are named
 Augustus. Ascanyus hadde a sone that called was
 Iulyus / but whan Ascanyus deyed, Iulyus was to yong
 for to rewle the royame / And therefore he gaaff hit to
 8 Syluyus postunus, his brother, by Encas his fader,
 whiche he loued moche, and taughte hym weH and chas-
 tysed hym weH as longe as he was a lyue / ¶ And
 wytte, that after that he was ded / the quene Lauyne
 12 hadde a sone by Melompodes, that hadde to name
 Latynus siluyus. After Ascanyus, regned Syluyus
 postunus his brother ¶ Of Iulyus, the sone of Ascanyus,
 yssued Iulyen / of whom descended Iulyus Cesar /
 16 And knowe, that from the tyme that the children of
 ysrahel came oute of thraldome fro the kynge of
 Egypte, Pharao, whan they passed the red see / vnto
 Ascanyus tyme, that was¹ kyng of Lombarde, was
 20 CCCC.lxvij. yeres / After Syluyus postunus that was
 kyng xxix. yeres / helde the royame, latynus syluyus
 .l yeres. in the tyme that eneas & his sone *Ascanyus
 came in lombardye, regned in Iherusalem kynge Dauyd,
 24 the fader of Salamon, that the serypture prayseth soo
 moche. After Latynus Syluyus, regned in lombardye
 Arbasylyus xxix. yeres / After hym, regned Egystus
 siluyus xxvij. yeres. After, regned Capys siluyus xxij.
 28 yere / After, regned Eliberynus syluyus viij yeres.
 After, regned Capustus xiiij yere / After, regned Syluyus
 agryppa lx. yeres ¶ In this tyme was Omerus moche
 made of / and renommed of seyence in Greke / After
 32 Agryppa, regned Armelyus syluyus xix. yeres / This
 kynge was vnhappy, and was slayne wyth the thonder /
 After hym, dyde reyne Postyus siluyus / In this
 kynges dayes, bygaune the historyes of the romayns,

CAP. LXV.

as all the emperours after Augustus were called Augustus.

Ascanyus leaves a son Julius, but Syluyus succeeds him on account of Julius's extreme youth.

From Julius is descended Julius Cesar. From Pharaoh's time, and the deliverance of the Israelites, to Ascanyus, there were Kings of Lombardy for 467 years.

[* leaf L 7]

David reigned in Jerusalem when Aeneas and Ascanyus came to Italy.

Homer.

List of Alban Kings.

Foundation of Rome.

¹ orig. was was

CAP. LXV. and of theym that founded roome. But therof I shaH
 telle now nomore / but sliãH here make an ende of
 this lytyH boke / named Eneydos :

End.

This *Eneydos*
 was englisht
 from French by
 Wm. Caxton, on
 22 June, 1490.

HERE fynyssheth the boke yf Eneydos / compyled 4
 by Vyrgyle / whiche hathe be translated oute of latyne
 in to frenshe / And oute of frenshe reduced in to Eng-
 lysshe, by me wyHiam Caxton / the xxij. daye of Iuyn,
 the yere of our lorde .M. iiij C fxxxx. The fythe yere 8
 of the Regne of kynge Henry the seuenth.

[For the convenience of readers, modern stops have been put in this reprint, as well as Caxton's bars. His full stops for commas and semicolons have seldom been left. The article *a* has been separated from the substantives it was printed as part of. Separate portions of one word have been joined by hyphens. All contractions but *ye* have been expanded in italics.—F. J. F.]

INDEX.

By THOMAS AUSTIN.

[The following Dictionaries are referred to:—COTGRAVE, *French Dict.* (1611), C.; GODEFROY, *Dict. de l'Anc. Langue Franc.*, G.; *New Eng. Dict.* (1885, etc.), D.]

- ABACKE, abak, *adv.* putte abacke or abak, repulsed, 152/5, 9.
- Abandome, *vb. t.* forego (devoting her life to her men), 28/28.
- Abide, *vb. int.* remain fast, 20/31.
- Above; tyl he be come to his abone of hys entrepryse, *i. e.* succeed in it, 119/3.
- Abstractyue, *adj.* abstract, mental, 46/20; ideal, 104/6.
- Abysme, *sb.* abysm, abyss, 42/21. O. Fr. *Abysme*.
- Accensed, *pp.* inflamed, 87/12.
- Accorde, *vb. t.* arrange, bring to conclusion, 51/8.
- Accumyle, *vb. t.* accumulate, 17/9.
- Acerbas, or Acerbe, otherwise named Sychaus, a Tyrian of rank, husband to Dido, 25/6, is slain by order of Pygmalion, 25/32.
- Acesta, or New Troy, otherwise Segesta, is founded by Aeneas in Sicily, 115.
- Acestes, King of Sicily, 96, receives Aeneas gladly, 114; is bidden farewell, 116.
- Achieued, *pp.* completed, 1/2. Fr. *Achever*.
- Achievement, *sb.* completion, full ending, 1/15. Fr. *Achèvement*.
- Acren, a Trojan, slain by Mezentius, 142/29.
- Adeerteyned, *pp.* assured, 59/30. O. Fr. *Acertener*. Certifie, assure.—C.
- Adioust, *vb. t.* give, put, 24/5. O. Fr. *Adjouster*. To adde, adioyne, set, or put vnto.—C.
- Adlegacyon, *sb.* allegation, 112/1.
- Admonest, *vb. t.* admonish, warn, 41/8, 44/19, 67/17. O. Fr. *Admonester*.
- Admonestement, *sb.* admonishment, warning, 22/14, 26/13, 41/14. O. Fr. *Admonestement*.
- Adresse, *vb.* adressed hym, turned himself, 137/18.
- Adriane, or Ariadne, 118. See *Ariadne*.
- Aduenement, *sb.* O. Fr. *Advenement*. A chance, or hap.—C. 11/23.
- Aduysion, *sb.* vision, 82/10. O. Fr. *Advision, avision*. Vision, dream.
- Aegeus, King of Athens, his tribute to Minos, 117; drowns himself, 119.
- Aeneas escapes from Troy, carrying his father, Anchises, 14; sails for Thrace, 15; begins to build Aencia, 16; sacrifices on Polydore's grave, 17; sails from Thrace, 22; his fleet is overtaken by a tempest, 39; wrecked on the coast of Lybia, 40; Dido falls in love with him, 47; meets Dido in a cave, 56; reports spread abroad of them, 58; Mercury delivers him a message from Jupiter, commanding him to sail for Italy, 64; he orders his men to depart secretly, 65; Dido tries to persuade him to stay, 67; is bidden by her to go, with curses, 73; he will not delay his departure, 78; has a vision to hasten it, 93; sails from Carthage, 95; is driven to Sicily, 96; his arrival there, 114; celebrates games at his father's tomb, 115; founds New Troy, or Acesta, 115; sails for Italy, 116; lands at Cumæ, 116; goes down to Avernus, 120; arrives at the land of King Latinus, 120; begins to build a

- fortress on the Tomyre, or Tiber, 122; sends an embassy to King Latinus, 123; has presents sent back to him, 126; fray between his men and those of Turnus, 129; he goes to seek succour from Evander, 130; Turnus lays siege to his camp, burns his ships, 132; Aeneas arrives with a large force in aid, 139; a battle takes place, 140; wounds Mezentius, and slays Lausus, 143; kills Mezentius, 144; proposes single combat with Turnus, 146; comes before the city of Laurentum, 151; repulses the Latins, 151; agrees to fight a single combat with Turnus, 156; the battle is renewed, 157; Aeneas's prowess therein, 158; fights in single combat with Turnus, and slays him, winning Lavinia, 161, 162; marries Lavinia, 162; succeeds King Latinus, 163; dies, 163.
- Aencia, a town in Chalcidice, in Macedonia, founded by Aeneas, 16/10.
- Aeolus, God of the winds, with Neptune, raises a storm to hinder Aeneas, 39.
- Affectuously, *adv.* heartily, 36/13. O. Fr. *Affectueux*.
- Afflige, *vb. t.* afflict, 78/29. Fr. *Affliger*.
- Affryque, Africa, 30/12. Fr. *Afrique*.
- Agamemnon besieges Troy, 11.
- Agathyrus, a town in Crete, 54/20.
- Aget, *vb. t.* get hold of, 55/36.
- Agrippa, or Argyrippa, a city in Apulia, 146/35.
- Agrounde, on the ground, 144/26.
- Alighe, *adv.* on high, to the upper regions, 62/28; alyghe, with a loud voice, 147/7.
- Aienst, *prep.* against, 145/33.
- Alba, a city in Latium, founded, 164.
- Algement, *sb.* O. Fr. *Algement*. A lightning, disburdening, easing. —C. 14/30.
- Alle a longe, fully, at full length, 23/33.
- Alle to-broken, 40/6; alle to-cratched (or scratched), 107/13; alle to-cutte, 49/28; al to-renteth, 90/19; all to-shaketh, 86/3; alle to-tourne, 49/31; *i. e.* quite broken, quite scratched, beseratched, etc.
- Amaritude, *sb.* bitterness, sorrow, 77/23, 92/28. O. Fr. *Amaritude*.
- Amata, wife of Latinus, tries to dissuade Turnus from fighting Aeneas, 155; hangs herself, 160. She was related to Turnus.
- Aminicules, as *adj.* O. Fr. *Ad-minicule*. An aid, helpe, support, prop.—C. 47/1. See D., Adminicel.
- Amyte, *sb.* amity, friendship, 12/16, 19/17, 30/34. O. Fr. *Amitee*.
- An-angred, *pp.* enraged, 127/16, 140/21; an-angryd, 128/19.
- Anchandron, an island (Antander), 15/32; on the coast of Troas.
- Anchises, father of Aeneas, is carried from Troy by his son, 1, 14; dies on the passage from Troy to Libya, 40; is buried in Sicily, 96, 114.
- Ancus Martius, 121.
- Anemste, *prep.* anent, concerning, towards, 67/30.
- Anguysshou, *adj.* piercingly sorrowful. O. Fr. *Angoisseur*. Full of angui-h.—C. 25/15.
- Anna, or Anne, sister of Dido, is her confidant, 41; replies to Dido, 43; sent to induce Aeneas to stay, 77; is sent for by Dido, in her grief, 84; is desired to prepare a pyre, 86; laments her sister's death, 107. See *Dido*.
- Antheledo, a monster, the brother of Fame, 57/24.
- Anychil, *vb. t.* annihilate, 82/33. O. Fr. *Adnichiler*.
- Anyus, or Aruns, a Trojan, 152/32, slays Camilla.
- Aourned, *pp.* adorned, decked, 15/5. O. Fr. *Aörner*, *aourner*.
- Aperecyue, *vb. t.* perceive, 79/12; apperecyue, 79/16.
- Apollo is sacrificed to by Aeneas, 46/32; account of him, 54.
- Apparaylle, *vb. t.* prepare, 17/20; apparaylle, 102/6. Fr. *Appa-*

- reiller*. To prepare; to make readie.—C.
- Appareyl, appareylle, *sb.* preparation, 48/8, 53/9, 98/9; apparatus, requisites, 95/17. *Appareil*. Preparation, provision, readie-making; a decking, dressing.—C.
- Appayre, *vb. t.* impair, 110/3.
- Apposite, *adj.* opposite, opposed, 46/7. O. Fr. *Apposite*.
- Approped, *pp.* assigned, appropriated, 4/13.
- Aproned, *pp.* proved, 86/32.
- Apropre, *vb. t.* appropriate, accommodate, 74/25.
- Aquysycion, *sb.* acquisition, 112/9.
- Arache, *vb. t.* pluck up by the roots, 18/25, 18/34. Fr. *Arracher*. See D., Arace, Arache.
- Arbytre, *sb.* free arbytre. *Arbitre*, libertie of iudgement, freedome of thought.—C. 43/27, 44/21.
- Arcadia, 130/19.
- Ardea, 142/23.
- Arenouse, *adj.* Iupyer arenouse (or of the desert sands), 59/15.
- Argyrippa, or Arpi, an ancient city in Apulia, said to have been founded by Diomedes, 146/35.
- Ariadne, daughter of Minos, consults Dædalus about saving Theseus from the Minotaur, 118; flees with Theseus, 119.
- Armure, *sb.* armour, 86/21. Fr. *Armure*.
- Arnus, a Trojan, 152/32.
- Arouse, *vb. t.* bedew, besprinkle, wet, 19/34. O. Fr. *Arouser*. M. F. *Arrouser*. See D., Arrouse.
- Arrest, *vb. t.* Fr. *Arrester*. To determine, decree, resolve of.—C. 84/6.
- Arrettyd, *pp.* cruelte arrettyd, determined cruelty, 19/22; comp. preceding word, and M. Fr. *Arrêter*.
- Arteres, *sb.* windpipe, &c., 64/31.
- Aruspycious, *adj.* haruspicious, prognosticative, 80/30.
- Ascanius, son of Aeneas, called also Iulus, 14, 48/32; rescues the ships, 115; laughs at their trenchers being eaten, 122; has an unlucky hunt, 127; declines fighting, 132; slays Tolumnius, 159; succeeds his father, 163; his reign, 164.
- Ascrye, *vb. t.* call upon, 129/17; call forth, challenge, 132/21; *vb. int.* cry out, 105/15.
- Asperly, *adv.* roughly, 55/34.
- Asperse, *vb. t.* sprinkle, 88/24.
- Assemble, *sb.* conjunction, union, 40/24; joining of battle, 150/21.
- Assoylled, *pp.* absolved, 113/25.
- Assyduatly, *adv.* assiduously, assiduously, 26/1.
- Astate, *sb.* state, 49/12; position, rank, 124/5. O. Fr. *Estat*.
- Atheleto, or Alecto, one of the Furies, 81/31.
- Atlas bears up the heavens, 62/36, 84/31.
- Attyre, *vb. t.* attract, draw on, 28/35. Fr. *Attirer*.
- Atyse, *vb. t.* move, stir, 45/29; of a woman stirred with love, 47/16. Fr. *Attiser*. To kindle (a fire); to stirre the fire. *Attiser le feu avec l'espée*. To provoke an angry person.—C. O. Fr. *Atiser*.
- Augurement, *sb.* augury, 72/29. O. Fr. *Augurement*.
- Aulite, or Aulis, 76/24. The Greeks assembled their forces for the Trojan expedition here.
- Auncyen, *adj.* ancient, 29/29. Fr. *Ancien*.
- Aurora, goddess of the Dawn, 96/29.
- Autentyke, *adj.* self-made; of the walls of Troy, which rose to the sound of Apollo's lyre, 31/21. Fr. *Authentique*.
- Awat, *vb.* expect, 45/9.
- Awrye, *adv.* behold awry, *i. e.* with ill will, 109/24.
- Awter, *sb.* altar, 47/9; awtier, 88/3. O. Fr. *Auter*, *Autier*.
- Axtre, *sb.* axletree, axis, 84/31.
- Ayen, *adv.* again, 35/4, 42/33.
- Ayent, *prep.* against (to the winds), 75/34; ayenste, 18/30.
- Bacchus, 46/32.
- Barate, *sb.* O. Fr. *Barat*. Cheating, deceit, guile, in bargaining.—C. 27/10, 65/34. See D., Barrat.

- Barbaire, *adj.* barbarous, 33/23.
Fr. *Barbare*.
- Barbaryn, *adj.* barbarian, 36/33.
- Barce, Dido's old nurse, 102, 103.
- Barches, Barca, in Africa, 45/2.
- Barreys, *sb.* barrace, barriers, 123/10.
- Basse, *adj.* base, low, 41/26. Fr. *Bas*.
- Bastelle, *sb.* *Bastille*. A fortresse, or castle, furnished with towers. —C. 20/9. Apparently here used for any mansion. See D., Bastide.
- Bataylle, *sb.* battalion, division of an army, 153/18, 159/32.
- Beaulte, *sb.* beauty, 34/25, 37/1. O. Fr. *Beulte*. Mod. Fr. *Beauté*.
- Befalle, *sb.* accident, 108/13.
- Begraue, *vb. t.* bury, 96/23.
- Belus, father of Dido, 25/1.
- Bely, *sb.* belly, depths of the sea, 28 4.
- Bend, *sb.* band, fillet, 21/18.
- Better, *adv.* more, rather, 12/28, 21/34.
- Bieneurons, *adj.* happy, 25/17. O. Fr. *Beneureux*. Mod. Fr. *Bienheureux*.
- Boccaccio's *Fall of Nobles*, 22.
- Bolcus, slays Euryalus, and is slain by Nisus, 137.
- Botom, *sb.* bottom, ball of thread, 118/36.
- Brack, *sb.* brach, a hound that hunts by scent, 53/16.
- Brackener, *sb.* a servant that leads a brach, 53, 6.
- Brawdrye, *sb.* embroidery, 53/32. Fr. *Broderie*.
- Braye, *vb. int.* creak, groan, 78/10; roar (of waves), 96/2.
- Brokelynges, *sb.* brokelings, fragments, 122/6.
- Brule, *vb. t.* burn, 94/21. Fr. *Bruler*. See D., Broil.
- Brutus, the Consul, 121.
- Bruyt, *sb.* bruit, disturbance, 41/32.
- Bryef, *adj.* in bryef, in epitome, briefly, 22/20.
- Bussyne, *sb.* trumpet, 150/16. Lat. *Buccina*.
- Byfalle, *sb.* befall, case, 65/7.
- Byshop, *sb.* priest, 152/24.
- Byspoken, *ppl. adj.* well byspoken, of good speech, 40/17.
- Bysprange, *vb. t.* besprinkled, 16/31, 35/25. See D., Bespreng.
- Bystorye, *sb.* histoury, dagger, 63/28. O. Fr. *Bistorie*.
- Bywayllenges, *sb.* bewailings, lamentations, 35/36.
- Bywepte, *adj.* blubbered, disfigured with weeping, 15/17, 19/1.
- Cadinus, or Cadynus, *i. e.* Cadmus of Thebes, inventor of letters, 82/13.
- Calompniose, *adj.* calumnious, 97/1.
- Camilla, daughter of King Metabus, seeks a combat with Aeneas, 150, 151; is slain by Aruns, 153.
- Canulla. See *Camilla*.
- Capitalle, *adj.* capital, deadly, 106/31.
- Carfe, *vb. t.* carfe waie (of ships), carve their way, 96/5.
- Caroyne, *sb.* carrion, putrid flesh, 21/27.
- Cartagyens, Carthaginians, 32/12.
- Carthage, founded by Dido, 23/12, 31; Aeneas arrives there, 40.
- Carton, or Tarchon, 139/25.
- Castymonye, *sb.* chastity, 36/28. Lat. *Castimonia*, or *Castimonium*.
- Caucasus, mount, 71/10.
- Cause, *sb.* corse, 21/3.
- Caytyue, *adj.* caitiff, wretched, 91/5. O. Fr. *Caitif*.
- Ceasse, *sb.* cease, ceasing, 58/6; quiet, rest, 90/4.
- Celebreed, *pp.* celebrated, 36/22. Fr. *Celebrer*.
- Certayne, *sb.* in certayne, in certainty, 45/13. *Certain*. A certaintie, certaine truth, surenesse, assurednesse.—C.
- Cesseth, ceaseth, 58/7. Fr. *Cesser*.
- Chaffed, *pp.* heated, fired with love, 52/4. Fr. *Chauffer*.
- Chare, *sb.* car, 126/31. Fr. *Chaire*. Lat. *Carrum*.
- Charmouse, *adj.* enchanting, 88/6. O. Fr. *Charmoux*: comp. *Charmeusement*. Charmingly, inchauntingly.—C.
- Chasse, *vb. t.* chace, hunt, 51/36; drive, 96/36. Fr. *Chasser*.
- Chasshe, *sb.* chace, hunting, 52/14.

- Chicke, *sb.* check, 112/30; chykes, 104/9.
- Chircherde, *sb.* churchyard, 80/20.
- Chlorens, or Cleonis, a priest (bishop) at Troy, 152.
- Choruscayon, *sb.* coruscation, flashing, 52/9.
- Chyuaucche, *sb.* O. Fr. *Cherance*.
Chenaisance, wealth, substance, riches, goods.—C. 22/28.
- Cicyle, Sicily, 96/21. Fr. *Sicile*.
- Cirte rogyon, the Syrtes; gulfs on north coast of Africa, 44/34.
- Clemence, *sb.* Fr. *Clemence*. Clemencie, benignitie, pitie.—C. 22/10, 97/33.
- Cleonis, 152.
- Cloanthus, is bidden by Aeneas to help in preparing the fleet for leaving Carthage, 65/13.
- Clotho, one of the Fates, 81/35.
- Clymate, *sb.* climate, 24/34. Fr. *Climat*. A clyme, or Clymate; a Portion of the world.—C.
- Clytemnestra, wife of Agamemnon, 83/11. With the aid of Aegisthus she murdered him.
- Coagulate, *pp.* compounded, 103/32.
- Coagule, *vb. t.* bring together, 82/2.
- Compare post-classic *Coagulum*, bond, or tie.
- Cogytyue, *adj.* thinking, reasoning, 104/3.
- Coll, *vb. t.* embrace, 48/35. O. Fr. *Coler*. Comp. *Collée*, a neck-imbacement, an imbracing.—C. See also D, Accoll.
- Coloque, *vb. t.* speak with, address, 72/19. Lat. *Colloquor*.
- Communyque, *vb. iut.* communicate, have communications. Fr. *Communiquer*. To talke, or commune with.—C. 61/26.
- Commynycayon, *sb.* communication, 3/6.
- Commyse, *vb. t.* commit, 19/20, 26/7, 42/15.
- Compatyble, *adj.* congenial, sympathetic, 78/23.
- Complexion, *sb.* moral nature, 23/28; habit of body, 85/14; complexyon, 109/17.
- Conclude, *vb. t.* bring to a state of, 36/2; determine, settle, 131/10.
- Concupyssible, *adj.* desirable, to be coveted, 15/23. Fr. *Concupiscible*.
- Concussyon, *sb.* shaking, buffeting, 39/4. Fr. *Concussion*.
- Condicylle, *sb.* codicil, 100/37.
- Condolaunt, *adj.* condoling, 78/28.
- Conduytte, *sb.* conduct, management, 51/31. O. Fr. *Conduiete*. A managing, or handling.—C.
- Conduytte, *vb. t.* conduct, 54/8.
- Conduyttor, *sb.* conductor, 95/24.
- Confyte in teeres, foul with weeping, 78/18. *Confit*, souillé.—G.
- Comestable, *sb.* commander-in-chief, 160/1.
- Connexe, *sb.* tie, bond, 47/1. O. Fr. *Connere*: comp. *Connexer*, at-tacher, lier ensemble.—G.
- Consecracyon, *sb.* burial, apotheosis, 98/5.
- Conseille, *vb. t.* advise, 83/21.
- Consummacion, *sb.* consummation, completion, 22/1.
- Conspiracyon, *sb.* conspiracy, 76/26.
- Contrare, *adj.* contrary, 102/21. Fr. *Contraire*.
- Contrarye, *vb. t.* thwart, oppose, 42/26. Fr. *Contrarier*.
- Contreste, *vb. t.* withstand, struggle against, 96/17; contryste, 50/2. O. Fr. *Contrester*.
- Contryste, *pp.* sad, 105/24.
- Contryste, *vb. t.* make sad, 80/17, 34. Fr. *Contrister*. To grieve, sadden, afflict, make sorrowfull.—C.
- Conturbed, *pp.* perturbed, agitated, upset, 70/16. Fr. *Conturber*.
- Conuenable, *adj.* suitable, 56/30. Fr. *Conuenable*.
- Conuencyon, *sb.* meeting, 50/7. O. Fr. *Convention*, action de venir.—G.
- Cordage, *sb.* of wrinkles, &c., shewing as cords, 110/31.
- Corpus, *sb.* corpse, 143/31, 145/8.
- Corrige, *vb. t.* correct, 89/23. Fr. *Corriger*.
- Corroye, *vb. t.* O. Fr. *Conroyer*, *Corroyer*, *Courroyer*. To currie, tawe, or dresse, as leather.—C. 30/16.
- Costume, *sb.* custom, 86/17. O. Fr. *Costume*.

- Couenable, *adj.* suitable, 84/3. Fr. *Couenable*. O. Fr. *Couenable*.
 Conenance, *sb.* covenant, 156/24.
 Conenance, *vb. t.* give by agreement, affiance, 126/7.
 Couer, *vb. t.* covereth . . of = covereth . . with, 70/11.
 Conetyse, *sb.* covetousness, 25/29.
 Couplable, *adj.* culpable, guilty, 89/16. O. Fr. *Couplable*.
 Counterfette, *adj.* counterfeit, ill-made, 49/24.
 Couuerte, *adj.* covert, secret, sly, 41/27.
 Coward, *adj.* cowardly, 132/23. Fr. *Coward*.
 Cramoysin, *sb.* O. Fr. *Cramoisi*. Crimson colour.—C. 53/31.
 Cremoysin, 63/32.
 Crampon, *sb.* cramp. Fr. *Crampon*. A Cramp-yrone.—C. 39/14.
 Crayntyne, *adj.* Fr. *Craintif*. Timorous, bashfull.—C. 37/10.
 Cressettes, *sb.* cressets. O. Fr. *Craisset*. Torches covered with pitch, that the watch carried at night.—G. 94/21.
 Creusa, wife of Aeneas, escapes from Troy with him, 14, 15; is sister to Polydore, 20/3.
 Cronykes, *sb.* O. Fr. *Croniques*, *Chroniques*. Chronicles, Annales.—C. 24/8.
 Crosseles, *adj.* crossless, with straight handle, 63/29.
 Crusa, daughter of Priam. See *Creusa*.
 Cryspyne, a goddess, 120/15.
 Crystall, *sb.* crystal, 16/29.
 Cullynge, *sb.* colling, embracing, 67/25.
 Culpe, *sb.* fault. O. Fr. *Coulpe*. A fault, offence.—C. 28/23.
 Cuna, 116, 120. See *Endyola*.
 Cupid, 50/10.
 Courtoys, *adj.* Fr. *Courtois*: *isc*. Courtuous, gentle, debonaire.—C. 40/16.
 Cymphe, *sb.* sacrificial cup, 22/2.
 Cyprus is reached by Dido in her flight, 29.
 Cyreunte, *sb.* Fr. *circuit*. A circuit, compass, going about.—C. 31/23.
 Cyuyle, *adj.* civil, public, belonging to the state, 14/14.
 Daedalus flees to Italy, from Crete, 116/33; constructs the labyrinth for Minos, 117; gives advice how to kill the Minotaur, 118; is imprisoned by Minos, 119; makes wings for himself and his son, and thus escapes, 119.
 Damoiselle, *sb.* damsel, 128/4; damoyzell, 127/17: the word also was applied to the daughter of a king.
 Dampnable, *adj.* damnable, condemnable, blameworthy, 44/4. O. Fr. *dampnable*.
 Darda, or Ardea, 142/23.
 Dardanus, first king of Troy, 56/15, 124.
 Debonayr, *adj.* courteous, affable, gentle, 21/8; debonnayr, 22/10.
 Decease, *vb. int.* decease, die, 131/28.
 Deceyuable, *adj.* O. Fr. *Decevable*. Deceivable, deceitfull.—C. 19/22, 73/2.
 Decore, *vb. t.* decorate, adorn, 24/31. Fr. *Décorer*.
 Dedied, *pp.* celebrated, 47/6; dedyed, dedicated, 36/16. Fr. *Dedié*.
 Dedycte, *sb.* ? meaning, 24/13.
 Deed, *adj.* dead, 19/2.
 Defendyng: In my body defendyng, Fr. *A mon corps défendant*, against my will, 86/13.
 Deffaylle, *vb.* Fr. *Defaillir*. Wax feeble, faile.—C. 48/4.
 Deffyanee, *sb.* defiance, mistrust, 101/9. Fr. *Défiance*.
 Defoyle, defoyle, *vb. t.* defile, 20/1, 102/2.
 Degre, degree, *sb.* step, of ancestry, 11/3; stairs, 104/14. Fr. *Degré*.
 Delibere, *vb. t.* deliver, 99/9. Comp. O. Fr. *Deliberation*, deliverance.
 Delices, *sb.* Fr. *Delices*. Delights, pleasures, pastimes.—C. 59/2.
 Delon, or Delos, 54/18.
 Delybere, *vb.* Fr. *Deliberer*. To deliberate, advise, consult.—C. 1/27.
 Delybere, *vb. t.* deliver, 75/27; Comp. O. Fr. *Deliberation*, délivrance.—G.

- Demeane, *vb. t.* bring, 18/28; give forth, utter, 26/9. O. Fr. *Demeuer*.
- Depart, *vb. t.* distribute, 101/34; separate, 129/26, 144/31.
- Deploracyon, *sb.* bewailing, distress, 15/12.
- Deprecatyue, *adj.* prayerful, 37/10.
- Deprcatif*, *adj.* qui a l'habitude de prier.—G.
- Desered, *pp.* desired, 32/2.
- Desiderable, *adj.* desirable, 64/15. Fr. *Desiderable*.
- Despyte, *sb.* debasement, 23/35. O. Fr. *Despit*. Mépris, honte, humiliation.—G.
- Destourne, *vb. t.* unharbour game for hunting, turn aside, 55/4. O. Fr. *Destourner*. Turne, divert, distract, withdraw, remove.—C.
- Destourmynge, *sb.* unharbouring, 55/28. See preceding.
- Destylled, distilled, let drop, 37/3.
- Destynaeye, *sb.* destiny, fate, 45/14, 52/18, 70/20.
- Destynate, *pp.* destined, ordained, 20/35.
- Destye, *sb.* strong purpose, or will, as of fate, 31/19. O. Fr. *Destine*.
- Destyne, *vb. t.* To destyne his berthe, make decrees about his birth, predestinate, 41/19.
- Detractine, *adj.* slanderous, disparaging, 23/5. *Detractif*, *adj.* médisant.—G.
- Deturpacyon, *sb.* disfigurement, 109/33. O. Fr. *Deturpacion*, enlaidissement.—G.
- Denote, *adj.* devout, 59/18. Fr. *Dénot*.
- Denoyr, *sb.* duty, 15/1; endeavour, 38/17. Fr. *Devoir*.
- Deuyson, *sb.* division, ? quarreling, 51/24. O. Fr. *Division*.
- Deye, *vb.* die, 28/11.
- Deytyque, *adj.* deific, sent by the gods, 64/28. Fr. *Déijique*.
- Dido, daughter of Belus, is married to Sychæus, 25; her sorrow at his murder, 26; leaves Tyre on account of it, 27; sails to Cyprus, 29; settles in Africa, 30; builds Carthage, 31; is demanded in marriage, 34; consults her sister Anna on her love for Aeneas, 41; is encouraged by her, 43; falls madly in love, 47; neglects Carthage through her passion, 49; goes hunting, 53; seeks refuge from the storm in the same cave as Aeneas, 56; is desperate at his projected departure, 65; endeavours to persuade him to stay, 67; reproaches him, 71; bids him depart with curses, 73; in distress sends for her sister, 75; her sufferings compared to those of Orestes, 83; sends again for her sister, 84; desires her to make a fire to burn Aeneas's armour, 86; goes thither with garlands, 87; invokes a witch, 88; her grief and rage at Aeneas's departure, 97; prays for evil to him, 100; prepares for death, 102; slays herself, 35. 106; her death struggles, 109; her beauty, 111; dies, 114; eulogium on her, 36.
- Diffamye, *sb.* defame, infamy, 108/16. O. Fr. *Diffamie*, chose infame.—G.
- Dilectacion, *sb.* dilectation, delight, pleasures of love, 64/1.
- Diodorus Siculus, 4/6.
- Diomedes, 61/29; on his departure from Troy settles at Agrippa, or Argyrippa, 146.
- Dioneus, or Ilionens, a Trojan, is sent on an embassy by Aeneas, 124; addresses King Latinus, 125.
- Disaraye, *sb.* disorder, 107/4. Fr. *Désarroi*.
- Displeisir, *sb.* displeasure, 94/16. O. Fr. *Displeasure*.
- Dissonant, *adj.* dissonant, at discord, or enmity, 32/10.
- Do, *vb.* make, cause; do shewe, cause to shew, 2/13; do departe, make depart. 12/2; do slee, cause to slay, or be slain, 25/32; dyd it to be taken, made it to be taken, 27/19; doo alyauuce, make alliance, 50/20.
- Dolant, *adj.* O. Fr. *Dolent*. Sorrowfull, heauie, greening; wretched, miserable.—C. 78/24, 93/29. Dolauente, 66/22.

- Doled, *adj.* ? infatuated, 67/4, 93/15, 23. This word seems connected with O. Fr. *Doler*, souffrir, which is in G. Comp. *Endulled*.
- Domageous, *adj.* damaging, destructive, 13/23. O. Fr. *Damajos*, *Domageus*.
- Domage, *sb.* damage, 148/18. Fr. *Dommage*.
- Doubt, *vb. t.* fear, 133/24, 143/2, 153/10.
- Doubtous, *adj.* doubtful, uncertain, 11/24; doubtouse, 65/8, 98/22. O. Fr. *Doubteux*.
- Doumbe, *adj.* dumb, 100/15.
- Dowayr, *sb.* dowry, 51/1; dowayres, dowers, endowments, 11/21. O. Fr. *Doüaire*.
- Drances, or Drastes, 149.
- Draughte, *sb.* spell, stretch, in singing, 80/25.
- Dredfull, *adj.* full of fear, 18/12; dredfull, causing fear, 103/29.
- Dresse, *vb. int.* stand up, 64/30; dresse vp, set up, 138/18. Fr. *Dresser*.
- Dryopes, an aboriginal Greek tribe, 54/20.
- Duryng, during, 98/25.
- Dyane, or Diana, Fr. *Diane*, 88/22.
- Dycte, *sb.* saying, 24/6. O. Fr. *Dict*.
- Dyde were, did wear, 162/16.
- Dyffame, *sb.* defame, infamy, 110/18.
- Dyfferencyng, differing, 24/14.
- Dyfferre, *vb. t.* defer, 77/11. Fr. *Differer*.
- Dyffycyle, *adj.* difficult, 16/14. Fr. *Difficile*.
- Dygne, *adj.* worthy, 24/9, 44/27. Fr. *Digne*.
- Dylection, *sb.* dilection, love, 16/32, 44/22.
- Dyscomfyte, *pp.* discomfited, defeated, 154/9.
- Dyscoure, *vb. t.* discover, reveal. O. Fr. *Descourrir*. To discover, disclose.—C. 41/3.
- Dyscrease, *vb. int.* decrease, 2/23. O. Fr. *Descroistre*.
- Dyscunte, *vb. t.* discuss, 110/36.
- Dysmoeyed, *pp.* dismoyed, dissuaded, turned, 57/4.
- Dyspense, *sb.* dispensation, 46/20.
- Dysperacyon, *sb.* desperation, despair, 108/19, 111/16.
- Dysplaysaunte, *adj.* unhappy, or ? displeasing, 73/24.
- Dyspoye, *vb. t.* unfold, loose, 95/15.
- Dyssolucyon, *sb.* dissoluteness. O. Fr. *Dissolution*. Disorder, excess, looseness of conversation.—C. 23/29.
- Dyssymule, *vb. t.* dissemble, hide, 65/18, 71/35. Fr. *Dissimuler*.
- Dystempred, *adj.* stormy, 46/1.
- Dystourne, *vb. t.* turn away, turn aside, 53/6, 74/7. See *Destourne*.
- Edefye, *vb. t.* edify, build, 31/13. Fr. *Edifier*.
- Egal, *adj.* equal, 4/30; Egall, 112/19. Fr. *Egal*.
- Eggs: anecdote about Eggs and Eyren, 2.
- Elysse, or Dido, 23/36. See *Dido*.
- Embrase, *vb. t.* set on fire, 107/2; embrasid, *pp.* fired, 50/3. Fr. *Embraser*. To kindle, inflame.—C.
- Emendes, 83/15; Emmendes, 81/30. The Eumenides, or Furies: Alecto, Megæra, Tisiphone.
- Empesched, *pp.* hindered, 104/7.
- Empesche, *vb. t.* O. Fr. *Empescher*. To hinder, let, barre, stop.—C. 18/26, 38/13, 17.
- Embrace, *vb. t.* welcome, receive, 36/17, 40/24. Fr. *Embrasser*. Intreat kindly.—C.
- Enchaunte, *vb. t.* 141/13, apparently means "dare him to come on." Comp. "*Incantare*. Injungere; vehementer rogare," in DUCANGE.
- Enchauntemente, *sb.* from above verb, 141/14.
- Endementes, *sb.* ? ends, contrivances, 16/23.
- Endulled, *pp.* stupid, ? infatuated, 41/15, 94/28: this seems to be the O. Fr. *Endolé*, affligé, in G. Comp. *Doled*.
- Encade, 16/10. See *Aencia*.
- Enflammed, *pp.* inflamed, 54/25, 56/6. O. Fr. *Enflamber*, *enflammer*. To inflame, fire.—C.
- Enharnyshed, *pp.* harnessed, 126/

29. Comp. O. Fr. *Enharnacheus*.—G.
- Enhaunsynge, *sb.* enhancing, magnification, fame, 108/10. O. Fr. *Enhauncer, enhaunsier*.
- Enlumyne, *rb. t.* O. Fr. *Enluminer*, to illuminate, inlighten.—C. 13/21.
- Enlyola, or Tulyola, 120/11.
- Enuyouse, *adj.* tiresome, wearisome, 103/19. Fr. *Enuyeux*.
- Enoynt, *rb. t.* anoint, 60/33. O. Fr. *Enointer*.
- Enpryse, *rb. t.* undertake, 3/33. Comp. O. Fr. *Emprise* = entreprise.
- Ensiewe, *rb. t.* ensue, follow, 15/4; ensiwe, 15/18. O. Fr. *Ensievir*.
- Entame, *rb. t.* Fr. *Entamer*. To cut open, or breake up.—C. 18/8.
- Entende, *rb. int.* attend, 37/14, 39/10. Fr. *Entendre à*. To studie, mind, heed, care for, looke to.—C.
- Entendement, *sb.* wythoute entendement, deprived of sense, 20/28; debylyte of entendement, weakness of understanding, 24/22; fantasme of her entendement, 82/7. Fr. *Entendement*. Vnderstanding, apprehension, iudgement.—C.
- Entermete, *rb. int.* meddle oneself, busy oneself, 3/23; entermytted hymselfe, occupied himself, 135/1. O. Fr. *Entremetre*. *S'entremettre de*. To meddle, or deale with.—C.
- Entermyse, *sb.* undertaking, 55/26. Fr. *Entremise*. An intermedling.—C.
- Enterpryser, *sb.* undertaker, enterprising man, 40/18.
- Entromytret, *rb.* entromytreteth herself, busieth herself, 86/10. See *Enternete*.
- Enuahyshe, enuaysshe, *rb. t.* invade, 55/33, 104/13. Comp. Fr. *Encahir, Enrahissant*.
- Enwed, *rb. t.* marry, take as wife, 60/31.
- Equypared, *pp.* compared; equal, or like, 82/35, 83/7. O. Fr. *Equiper*.
- Eschape, *rb. int.* escape, 120/4. O. Fr. *Eschaper*.
- Eschewe, *rb. t.* eschew, avoid, 28/28, 29/21.
- Espace, *sb.* space of time, 31/28, 159/14. Fr. *Espace*.
- Espouse, *sb.* spouse, 68/19. O. Fr. *Espoux*.
- Espryse, *rb. t.* fire, 59/10; esprysed, *pp.* fired, smitten, 25/25, 32/27, 46/18, 65/3, 84/19; set on fire, 94/21. Comp. O. Fr. *Espris*. *S'esprendre*. To fire, to kindle.—C.
- Espyotte, *sb.* *Espion*. A Partisan, or Capitaines leading-staffe.—C. 143/4. Mod. Fr. *Épion*, boarspear. It seems to mean some kind of spear or javelin here.
- Estoure, *sb.* battle, mêlée, stir, tumult, 129/6. O. Fr. *Estor, Estour*.
- Ethyopes, or Ethiopians, 84/29.
- Evander, son of Hermes (according to some), is said to have led a colony from Pallantium, in Arcadia, to Italy, where he built the town of Pallantium, which afterwards formed part of Rome. Aeneas seeks aid of him, 130; he sends his son Pallas with Aeneas, 131.
- Exanco, a river, 54/13.
- Exceerable, *adj.* Fr. *Exceerable*. Exceerable, detestable.—C. 22/27.
- Excereyte, *sb.* host, 81/30; excersite, 11/13. O. Fr. *Exercite*. An hoast, or armie of men.—C.
- Excidyon, *sb.* destruction, 11/7.
- Excysion, *sb.* destruction. O. Fr. *Excision*. A wasting, destroying, razing.—C. 76/27.
- Exeytative, *adj.* incitatory, exhortative, 78/27.
- Exemplayre, *sb.* example. Fr. *Exemplaire*. A patterne, sample, or sampler; an example.—C. 41/25.
- Exequyes, *sb.* obsequies. O. Fr. *Exequies*.—G. *Exeques*, Funeralls, or funerall solemnities.—C. 36/4.
- Exploit, *rb. t.* hasten, 94/9. See G., *Exploitier*.
- Expowne, *rb. t.* expound, explain, 4/2. Comp. O. Fr. *Esponner*.

- Exstirpe, *vb. t.* extirpate, destroy, 71/15. O. Fr. *Estreper.* Fr. *Exstirper.* To extirpate; root out, or plucke vp by the root.—C.
- Extermynacion, *sb.* close, ending, 80/16.
- Extymacion, *sb.* wythout extymacion, or estimation; ? to an ineffable degree, 95/23.
- Extynet, *vb. t.* extinguish, 43/26, 68/12.
- Extyrp, *vb. t.* See *Exstirpe*, 35/26.
- Exyll, *sb.* emptiuness, loneliness, 81/13. Fr. *Exil.* Comp. Latin *Exilis.*
- Eyren, eggs, 2/36: anecdote about usage of the words.
- Facely, *adv.* facilely, with facility, 77/15.
- Facile, *adj.* easy, 75/19; facylle, 49/3. Fr. *Facile.*
- Faïcte, *sb.* deed, 107/36. O. Fr. *Faict.*
- Famyler, *adj.* familiar, 111/22. O. Fr. *Famlier.*
- Fanourisse, *vb. t.* fauourisse, fauour, 45/14. O. Fr. *Favorir.*—G. *Favoriser.* To fauour, grace, countenance.—C.
- Fantasma, *sb.* the fantasma of her entendement, vision of her mind, 82/6; fantasma, 48/26. O. Fr. *Fantasma, Fantosme.* Vision, apparition.—C. *Rêverie.*—G.
- Faylled, *pp.* failed, in a fainting state, gone, 19/2.
- Fayntasie, *sb.* fantasy, fancy, 25/14. O. Fr. *Fantasia.*
- Faytte, *sb.* fact, truth, 18/14; deed, act, 20/19, 24/19, 40/17, 41/11. O. Fr. *Faict.* A fact, act, action; a feat, atchieuement.—C.
- Fedder, *sb.* feather, 58/1. Germ. *Feder.*
- Felashyp, *sb.* fellowship, company, 55/2; felashyppe, companions, 21/16; felawshyppe, 30/21.
- Fenyce, or Dido, 23/36. See *Dido.*
- Fenyce, or Phœnicia, 24.
- Fenyces, or Phœnicians, invent letters, 24.
- Ferdeful, *adj.* fearful, timid, 41/26.
- Fere, *vb. t.* fear, frighten, 80/16, 138/11.
- Festyte, *vb. t.* greet, 63/15. Compare O. Fr. *Festier:* Faire bonne chère à quelqu'un.—G.
- Flagellacyon, *sb.* flagellation, scourging, 73/28.
- Flagitacyon, *sb.* ? flagellation, 96/2.
- Flain, *pp.* flayed, 101/22.
- Flamm, *sb.* on a flamm, in flames, 14/2. Fr. *Flamme.*
- Flote, *sb.* fleet, 27/6, 39/25. Fr. *Flotte.*
- Foison, *sb.* abundance, 87/24. Fr. *Foison.*
- Fonde, *vb. t.* found, invented, 24/25.
- Foole, *sb.* foal, 88/32.
- Force, *sb.* The hunters made no force for it. Comp.—“Ie ne fais point force de cela—I care not for, I force not of, I am not moued by, that thing.”—C. 55/25.
- Forcened, *adj.* mad, 67/3, 81/5; forsened, 93/15, 106/29. Fr. *Forcene.* Mad, wood, frantick.—C. *Forsené.*—G.
- Forfayte, *sb.* crime, 93/8. Fr. *Forfait.*
- Forfayte, *pp.* He hath forfayte nothyng, done no crime, 137/13.
- Forgetyng, *sb.* forgetting, forgetfulness, oblivion, 15/11.
- Forsenerie, *sb.* madness, 93/4; comp. *Forcened*, above. O. Fr. *Forsenerie.*
- Forthon, from thenne forthon, from thenceforth, 30/1.
- Fortuned, *pp.* welle fortunated, fortunate, 36/10.
- Foundemente, *sb.* foundation, 14/9, 19/31, 20/8; foundment, foundation, ground, 33/4. Fr. *Foulement.*
- Foundre, *vb. int.* melt, 75/22, 78/34; fowndre, 93/29; foundre (in the sea), *vb. t.* 97/24. Fr. *Fondre.* Comp. O. Fr. *Fondrer,* mettre au fond: s'effondrer.—G.
- Fowunded, *pp.* founded, 44/28.
- Francesy, *sb.* frensy, 81/26; fransic, 103/28. Fr. *Frénésie.*
- Franchise, *sb.* franchise, freedom, 92/33. Fr. *Franchise.*
- Frawdulouse, *adj.* fraudulent, Fr. *Frauduleux,* 105/13.

- From herselfe, out of her mind, 65/23.
- Front, *sb.* Fr. *Front*, forehead, 21/20.
- Frustratoire, *adj.* frustratory, vain, 78/2. Fr. *Frustratoire*.
- Frustre, *vb. t.* Fr. *Frustrer*. To disappoint, frustrate, defraud.—C. 45/8. Frustréd, ? frustrate, disappointing. hostile, 80/33.
- Fuldo, *vb. t.* complete, perform, 47/12; fuldoo, 88/8.
- Furiosite, *sb.* fury, rage, 83/12. O. Fr. *Furiosité*.
- Furour, *sb.* furor, fury, 28/28. Fr. *Fureur*.
- Furybounde, *adj.* furibond, furious, 71/1. Fr. *Furibond*.
- Furiosite, 81/27. See *Furiosite*.
- Fuste, *sb.* fist, 107/13.
- Fuyte, *sb.* Fr. *Fuite*, flight, 31/6.
- Fyers, *adj.* fierce, 54/31. Fr. *Fier*.
- Fynably, *adv.* in the end, at last, 78/2. Comp. Fr. *Finablement*.
- Fyne, *adj.* fine, perfect, pure, 25/14. Comp. *Fine gold*.
- Fyole, *sb.* Fr. *Fiole*, phial, 47/4
- Gawr, *vb.* stare about, 161/19.
- Gaynstonde, *vb. t.* gainstand, withstand, 27/11.
- Gectuses, or Gætulians, 68/26. A people in Northern Africa.
- Germain, *adj.* Fr. *Germain*; *ive*. Germaine, come of the same stock.—C. 45/8, 75/28.
- Getules, or Getulæ, in Northern Africa, 44/31. Iarbas, or Yarbas, was their king.
- Glayue, *sb.* Fr. *Glaive*. A gleane, or sword; also, a lance.—C. 18/5, 159/25. ? Axe, in both quotations, and much like *Gaisarme*.
- Gouvernesse, *sb.* she-ruler, 96/19. O. Fr. *Gouvernesse*.
- Grafed, *pp.*? stuck down. O. Fr. *Grafer*, clouer, attacher avec un crampon.—G. 47/24.
- Grannodre, *sb.* grandmother, 57/21.
- Grante, *adj.* grand, great, 10/12. Fr. *Grand*.
- Gre, *sb.* Fr. *Gre*. Will, willingness; allowance, liking, accord, consent; affection; wish; thanks.—C. 30/31. Gree, 28/22.
- Greable, *adj.* agreeable, 34/18. O. Fr. *Greable*.
- Gree, *vb.* agree, 29/6. Fr. *Greer*.
- Gresell, *vb. int.* Compare O. Fr. *Grezilla*. To wriggle, or stirre as a live fish on a hot gridiron; also, to curl, twirle, frizle haire, etc.—C. 64/30.
- Grenable, *adj.* grievable, disagreeable, difficult. Compare O. Fr. *Greable*, grievous, painefull.—C. 49/2.
- Gulle, *sb.* O. Fr. *Gule*. Fr. *Gueule*. The throat, gullet, 39/20.
- Guysarme, *sb.* bill, battle-axe. *Guisarme*. A kind of (offensive) long-handled and long-headed weapon.—C. 18/5.
- Guyse, *sb.* guise, manner, fashion, 32/11.
- Habandoned fro all comfort, abandoned, devoid of all comfort, 93/27.
- Habondaunte, *adj.* abundant, 18/9.
- Haboundaunce, *sb.* abundance, 19/28.
- Halowyng, *sb.* hallooing (from grief), 36/3.
- Hardynes, *sb.* boldness, 31/18, 134/31; hardynesse, boldness, in bad sense, 19/20. Comp. Fr. *Hardi*, *Hardiesse*.
- Harne, *sb.* arm, 63/31.
- Haultayn, *adj.* high-minded, 18/24. O. Fr. *Haultain*.
- Hanoyr, *sb.* O. Fr. *Havoir*, wealth, substance.—C. 14/13, 26/34, 27/13.
- Herberowe, *vb. t.* harbour, shelter, 130/22, 131/34; herberowe, 126/18.
- Heredytall, *adj.* hereditall, 64/21; heredytalle, 70/20. O. Fr. *Hereditall*. Hereditarie.—C.
- Hesperides, 85/3.
- Historyer, *sb.* historian, 24/7. O. Fr. *Historieur*.
- Homyside, *sb.* homicide. Fr. *Homicide*. Manslaughter, or murder.—C. 19/26.
- Honeste, *sb.* O. Fr. *Honesté* honesty, 37/21.

- Hosse, *sb.* hose, stocking, 89/12.
- Hostel, *sb.* ? temple. O. Fr. *Hostel*.
An hostell, house, lodging (this word is commonly a marke of greatnesse).—C. 16/33.
- Hydouse, *adj.* hideous, 104/11, 113/31. Fr. *Hideux*: from O. Fr. *Hide*, horreur, frayeur, effroi.—G.
- Hye see, high sea, open sea, 27/25.
- Hyrcania, 71/31. Hyrcania bordered on the Caspian.
- Hysse, *vb. t.* hoist, 116/19. Fr. *Hisser*.
- Iarbas. See *Yarbas*.
- Icarus, escapes by means of wings from prison, with his father, 119; falls into sea and is drowned, 120.
- Jeopard, *vb. t.* risk, venture, 33/28.
- Illumyne, *vb. t.* Fr. *Illuminer*. To illuminate, give light unto.—C. 96/33.
- Illustracyon, *sb.* illustration, lustre, light, 13/20. Fr. *Illustration*.
- Illustre, *vb. t.* illustrate, brighten, give light to, 52/3, 96/33. Fr. *Illustrer*.
- Immole, *vb. t.* immolate. Fr. *Immoler*. To offer, to sacrifice, to offer sacrifice.—C. 79/11, 89/15.
- Impraynted, *pp.* engraved, 48/26. O. Fr. *Empreinter*, graver.—G.
- Inceitatyf, *adj.* incitative, incitatory, hortative, 27/29. *Inceitatif*, *adj.* qui excite.—G.
- Incontynent, *adv.* Fr. *Incontinent*. At once. She dyde it incontynente to be sette in poynt—she at once caused it to be set in order, 34/24, 146/17.
- Inconyenient, *sb.* inconvenient, inconvenience, 76/5. *Inconyenient*, s.m. situation facheuse, malheur.—G.
- Indicatyf, *adj.* indicative, demonstrative, 33/4, 104/5.
- Induce, *sb.* truce, 34/18. Fr. *Induce*. Lat. *Inducie*.
- Induction, *sb.* inference, 44/23; inducing, allurements, 113/22. Fr. *Induction*.
- Indygne, *vb. t.* Fr. *Indigner*. To anger, chafe, drine into wrath.—C. 68/27. *Indygned*, *pp.* angered, 70/14, 96/11 (*indygned*).
- Inexplycable, *adv.* inexplicably, inextricably, 49/9. Comp. Fr. *Inexplicablement*.
- Inexpugnable, *adj.* not to be captured, impregnable, 10/12. F. *Inexpugnable*.
- Infecte, *adj.* F. *Infect*; etc. Infect, infected, infectious.—C. 21/26.
- Infestaunce, *sb.* hostility, enmity, 76/36. Comp. *Infestant*.—G.
- Inhibytore, *adj.* inhibitory, prohibitive, 77/35. Fr. *Inhibitoire*.
- Inhomynouse, *adj.* ignominious, disgraceful, shameful, 96/9. Fr. *Ignominieux*.
- Inhoryble, *adj.* horrible, 113/31.
- Iniure, *sb.* injury, wrong, outrage, 108/8. Fr. *Injure*.
- Iniuried, *pp.* insulted, outraged, 102/2. Fr. *Injurier*.
- Inpaciente, *adj.* impatient, 32/15.
- Impudike, *adj.* Fr. *Impudique*. Lascivious, wanton, vuchast.—C. 37/16.
- Inrenocable, *adj.* irrevocable, 42/29.
- Insolute, *adj.* unusual, 20/30. Fr. *Insolite*.
- Inspecyon, *sb.* ? inspection, 105/27.
- Interrupte, *pp.* interrupted, 49/22.
- Intrinsique, *adj.* intrinsic; within the walls, 91/17; in the land, 105/10; inner, 71/5, 78/30. Comp. *Intrinsequement*. On the inside.—C.
- In-tyl, *prep.* into, 136/2.
- Inuectyne, *adj.* invective, 65/1.
- Inueterate, *adj.* inueterate of euyl dayes, rooted in, accustomed to, 109/31.
- Inuetered *adj.* I. of many yeres, 78/4. Comp. *Inueterate*.
- Inutyle, *adj.* useless. Fr. *Inutile*. Vnprofitable, vngainfull, vnserniceable.—C. 19/6.
- Iouencellys, *sb.* young men, 124/2. O. Fr. *Jouuencel*.
- Iris, messenger of the gods, is sent by Juno to free Dido's spirit, 109; disputes with Proserpine for Dido's soul, 112; frees Dido, 114.

- Irryte, *vb. t.* irritate, 95/27. Fr. *Irriter*.
- Iulus. See *Ascanius*.
- Iuno raises a storm against Aeneas's fleet, 39; sends a tempest to disperse hunters. 52, 55; sends Iris to dying Dido, 109.
- Iupiter, Aeneas, 59/15; Iupiter sends Mercury to Aeneas, 61.
- Iuste, *vb. int.* joust, 132/23.
- Iusticier, *sb.* judge, 99/8. Fr. *Iusticier*. A Justice, or Justicer.—C. O. F. *Justiceor*.
- Keme, *vb. t.* comb, 60/33.
- Kynde, *sb.* kind, nature, 103/31.
- Kysshynges, kissings, 43/12.
- Lacrymable, *adj.* lacrimable, lamentable, 32/20. O. Fr. *Lacrimable*.
- Laeryme, *vb. int.* lacrimae, weep, 104/25. O. Fr. *Lagrimer*, *Lacrimier*.
- Laerymous, *adj.* tearful, 35/4, 36. O. Fr. *Lacrimous*.
- Lacyuyte, *sb.* lasciviousness, 37/17. O. Fr. *Lacivité*.
- Langorous, *adj.* languishing, 20/33. O. Fr. *Langoros*; Fr. *Langoureux*.
- Laomedon cheats the gods who helped to build Troy, 91.
- Late, *vb.* let, 24/17.
- Latheser, Lachesis, one of the Fates, 81/35.
- Latinus, King of Latium, 120; Aeneas sends an embassy to him, 123; he welcomes the Trojans, 126; tries to quiet Turnus, 129; Diomedé sends him a message, 147; wishes for peace with Aeneas, 148; tries to persuade Turnus not to fight Aeneas, 155; gives his daughter Lavinia to Aeneas, 162; his death, 163.
- Lauatorye, *sb.* lavatory, lavingment, 110/7. Fr. *Lavatoire*.—G.
- Laurens, or Laurentum, a city in Latium, the capital of King Latinus, 122, 135, 145, 160.
- Lausus, son of Mezentius, is slain by Aeneas, 143.
- Lavinia, or Lauyne, daughter of Latinus, 120; sought in marriage by Turnus, 145; her grief at Queen Amatha's death, 160; Aeneas wins her by combat with Turnus, 162; marries Aeneas, 163; marries again after the death of Aeneas, 165.
- Lavinium, or Lauyne, a town in Latium, said to have been founded by Aeneas, 62/16.
- Lawrence. See *Laurens*.
- Lecture, *sb.* Fr. *Lecture*. A reading, 24/21.
- Leefully, *adv.* lawfully, 14/35.
- Legacion, *sb.* message sent by an ambassador. F. *Legation*. An embassy.—C. 77/33.
- Lette, *vb. t.* let, hinder, 18/26, 38/13, 123, 22.
- Libya reached by Dido, 30; Aeneas's fleet wrecked on the coast, 40.
- Licyte, *adj.* licit. Fr. *Licite*. Lawfull, allowable.—C. 70/5, 97/15.
- Lieuer, *adv.* rather, 28/1, 36/23.
- Loange, *sb.* O. Fr. *Louge*; *Loüange*. Laud, praise, commendation; glorie, fame.—C. 36/22, 37/5; loenge, 82/32; loenyngé, 64/22.
- Lombardy, 162, 165.
- Loos, *sb.* honour, 36/20. *Los*, s. m. louange, honneur, reputation.—G.
- Lothlynes, *sb.* loathliness, ill will, estrangement, 30/32; lothliness, loathsomeness, 49/31.
- Lubrik, *adj.* Fr. *Lubrique*. Lubricke, slipperie; deceitfull, vncertaine; lecherous, lascivious.—C. 32/19. Lubryke, 36/29, 37/15.
- Lyberal, *adj.* L arbytre, free will, 44/20.
- Lybidynous, *adj.* lustful, 36/33.
- Lycia, 69/27.
- Lyght, of lyght, ? lightly, easily, 45/6.
- Lygnage, *sb.* lineage. O. Fr. *Lignage*. A linage, progenie, stocke.—C. 24/35.
- Lygnée, *sb.* lineage, 29/18; lynce, 58/33, 68/29, 127/11. Fr. *Lignée*.
- Lynered, *pp.* delivered, 72/22. Fr. *Lierer*.
- Maculate, *sb.* spot, stain, 102/9.
- Maculate, *vb. t.* stain, 35/25; *pp.* 20/

18. Lat. *Maculare*. Fr. *Maculer*. To spot, blot; blemish, beray.—C.
- Macule**, *sb.* spot, mark, blot (physically), 113/1. Fr. *Macule*.
- Magicienne**, *sb.* she-magician. Fr. 88/23.
- Magnifycatly**, *adv.* magnificently, 12/19.
- Magnifyque**, *adj.* magnific. Fr. *Magnifique*. Magnificent, haughtic, loftic.—C. 25/12, 60/4.
- Magre**, mangre, in spite of, against will of, 108/7. O. Fr. *Maugré*.
- Magystracyon**, *sb.* mastership, rule, command, 11/12.
- Malencolyouse**, *adj.* melancholy, 80/27. O. Fr. *Melancolieus*.
- Malenrouse**, *adj.* unhappy, unfortunate, 15/26. Fr. *Malheureux*. O. Fr. *Malceuros*, *Maleureus*.
- Marbryne**, *adj.* marble, of marble, 74/10. O. Fr. *Marbrin*.
- March**, *sb.* border, 84/26. Fr. *Marche*. A region, coast, or quarter; also, a march, frontire, or border of a country.—C.
- Maronner**, *sb.* mariner, 29/2. O. Fr. *Maronier*,—*onnier*.
- Mary**, *sb.* marrow, 47/17.
- Mason**, *vb. t.* lay masonry, build, 49/27. Fr. *Maçonner*.
- Mastresse**, *sb.* mistress, 46/33, 99/3. O. Fr. *Maistresse*.
- Mate**, *adj.* sad. Fr. *Mat*. Deaded, mated, amated, overcome.—C. 15/6.
- Maundemente**, *sb.* charge, order, 70/28. Fr. *Mandement*.
- Maynage**, *sb.* household, 29/22. O. Fr. *Mainage*.
- Mayntene**, *sb.* carriage, deportment, demeanour, 26/30. Fr. *Maintien*.
- Medle**, *vb. t.* meddle, mix, 55/24, 118/27. O. Fr. *Medler*.
- Medlee**, *sb.* medly, mêlée, fight, 41/34, 128/29. O. Fr. *Medlee*.
- Medlynge**, *sb.* meddling, interference, 41/32.
- Megere**, or Megera, one of the Furies, 81/31. Fr. *Mégère*.
- Memore**, *sb.* memory, 102/12. O. Fr. *Memore*. Mod. Fr. *Mémoire*.
- Menaige**, *sb.* household, vassals, 31/34; meynage, 29/14. O. Fr. *Menaige*.
- Mencustus and Segestus**, or Mnestheus and Sergestus, 133. They are called Nestor and Sergeste on page 65.
- Mercury sent by Jupiter to Aeneas**, 61; is described, 62; is nephew to Atlas, 63; appears in a dream to Aeneas, 93.
- Mernelogus**, *adj.* marvellous, 21/32.
- Mesapus**, King of Etruria, 133, 138, 151.
- Meschaunte**, *adj.* wretched, miserable, 15/35. O. Fr. *Meschant*.
- Meschyne**, *sb. f.* wretch, caitiff, 58/29. O. F. *Meschin*. Mod. Fr. *Mesquin*,—*ne*.
- Messenger**, *sb.* Fr. *Message*. A messenger, 27/22, 71/19.
- Mesure**, *sb.* measure, control, 44/34. Fr. *Mesure*.
- Meyne**, *sb.* attendants, 29/11. O. Fr. *Mesnié*, *Meyné*.
- Mezentius**, King of the Tyrrhenians, slays many Trojans, 142; is killed by Aeneas, 144.
- Mezentius of Sicily**, 163.
- Minerva**, 118.
- Minos**, King of Crete, 116; has tribute of youths and maidens from Aegæus, 117; imprisons Daedalus, 119.
- Minotaur**, story of Theseus and, 117.
- Mobyte**, *adj.* mobile, movable, unfixed, 71/3, 103/35. Fr. *Mobile*.
- Mobylite**, *sb.* mobility, power to stir, 57/12. Fr. *Mobilité*.
- Moche**, *adv.* much, very, 38/15, 40/19, 21.
- Mocke**, *sb.* mock, mockery, 57/29. O. Fr. *Moque*, *mocque*.
- Moenable**, *adj.* movable, 46/6. O. Fr. *Moevable*.
- Moene**, *vb. t.* move, 33/5, 44/15. O. Fr. *Moerre*.
- Moenyng**, moving, motion, 20/29.
- Moleste**, *sb.* molest, molestation, 50/24. O. Fr. *Moleste*.
- Molyfy** *vb. t.* Fr. *Mollifier*. To mollify, soften, supple; make gentle.—C. 42/17; make soft, or muddy, 59/24.
- Mondayn**, *adj.* mundane, worldly,

- 79/2 ; mondayne, 10/4. Fr. *Mondayn*.
- Montycle, *sb.* *Monticule*. A hillocke, a small hill.—C. 13/4, 21/23 ; mountycle, 17/10.
- Mortytied, *pp.* made dead or senseless, 106/18. O. F. *Mortefier*, *mortifier*.
- Mow, *vb. int.* be able, 98/2 ; mowe, 35/27, 45/6, 11.
- Moyen, *sb.* Fr. *Moyen*. A meane ; course, way ; a meane.—C. 19/33, 25/28 ; moyens, 40/9.
- Murtyllers cornyllers, 17/15. *Cornillier*. The long cherrie, wild cherrie, or Cornill tree.—C.
- Musitaynes, or Momydes (Nomades, Numidians), 32/25.
- Myrifyke, *adj.* mirific, wonderful, 37/7 ; myryfyke, 24/32. Fr. *Mirifique*. Strangely wrought.—C.
- Myrondes, 44/33, 68/6.
- Myseheffe, *sb.* mischief, mishap, 99/32. O. Fr. *Meschief*.
- Myscheue, *vb. t.* mischief, injure, 94/31.
- Mysell, rayne mysell, mizzling rain, 55/34.
- Myserycorde, *sb.* mercy, 97/32. Fr. *Misericorde*.
- Myssaye, *vb. t.* missay, slander, 23/2.
- Mystike, *adj.* mystic, holy, 37/17.
- Mystre, *vb. ?* matter, concern, 62/13.
- Naufraged, *pp.* shipwrecked, 66/34, 72/17. Fr. *Naufragé*.
- Nauye, *sb.* navy, fleet, 27/31, 39/12. O. Fr. *Navie*.
- Nauyre, *sb.* navire, fleet, 30/25. O. Fr. *Navire*.
- Nayssance, *sb.* Fr. *Naissance*. Birth, 27/1.
- Nedefull, *adj.* needful, necessitous, 100/11.
- Nephande, *adj.* infamous, accursed, 26/6, 32/4. O. Fr. *Nephande*.
- Neptune, 38 ; raises a storm against Aeneas's fleet, 39 ; helps to build Troy, 91.
- Nestor, or Mnestheus, 65/12. See Menestus.
- Neweli, *adv.* newly, lately, 41/13.
- Nisus and Euryalus, account of them, 133—138.
- Nocible, *adj.* hurtful, 49/7.
- Norryture, *sb.* Nurture, nourishment, 85/11. O. Fr. *Norriture*. Mod. Fr. *Nourriture*.
- Noryce, *sb.* O. Fr. *Norrice*, mod. Fr. *Nourrice*, nurse, 78/27.
- Nuysaunce, *sb.* Fr. *Nuisance*. Nuisance, hurt, offence, annoyance, harme, damage.—C. 23/1.
- Nuysible, *adj.* Fr. *Nuisible*, Hurtful, 76/33, 89/34.
- Nyuyse, goddess of fountains, 59/16.
- Obeysaunt, *adj.* obedient, 34/34. Fr. *Obeissant*.
- Obfusked, *pp.* offuscated, obscured, 41/15. O. Fr. *Obfusqué*. Mod. Fr. *Offusqué*.
- Obgectyf, *adj.* objective, 104/2. Fr. *Objectif*.
- Oblishe, *vb. ?* abolish, 86/30.
- Obmyse, *vb.* omit, 110/36.
- Obprobre, *sb.* *Opprobre*, a reproach.—C. 76/36. O. Fr. *Obprobre*.
- Obsiquyes, *sb.* obsequies, funeral rites, 21/12. O. Fr. *Obsequie*.
- Oecision, *sb.* Fr. *Oecision*. An oecision, killing, slaying ; also a murder, or slaughter.—C. 141/4.
- Oecysion, 13/12, 83/11 ; oecision, 105/32.
- Oore, *sb.* oar, 16/1 ; orys, oars, 95/34.
- Oost, *sb.* host, 91/3, 133/30 ; ooste, 132/28.
- Opeydes, or Hesperides, 85.
- Opprobre, *sb.* Fr. *Opprobre*. A reproach ; a defamatorie taunt ; vpbraiding.—C. 96/9.
- Orage, *sb.* Fr. *Orage*. A storme, tempest, orage.—C. 46/1, 52/8.
- Orestes, tortured by Proserpine for slaying his mother, 83.
- Orion, the constellation, 46/2.
- Ornate, *vb. t.* adorn, 79/33. Lat. *Ornare*, *ornatus*.
- Oroyzen, *sb.* orison, prayer, 153/3. O. Fr. *Oroison*.
- Oublyancc, *sb.* O. Fr. *Oubliance*. Oblivion, forgetfulness.—C. 24/24.
- Ouer-run, *vb. t.* outrun, 55/10.
- Ouersee, *vb. t.* look over 2/2.

- Ouertake, *pp.* overtaken, overcome, 48/6.
 Outrage, *sb.* outrage, 98/32. O. Fr. *Oultrage*.
 Ourerage, *sb.* work, 20/9; Ourage, 13/33, 24/33. Fr. *Ouvrage*.
 Ovid, 3, 25.
 Ozon, a Trojan, 158/25.
- Palantyne, King of Arcadia, 130/26.
 Palatine, Mount, 130/23.
 Palence, or Pallantium, a city founded by Evander on the site of Rome, 130/25, 131/1.
 Paleneya, daughter of Evander, 130/28.
 Palinurus, master of Aeneas's ship, 96/15; falls into sea and is drowned, 116.
 Pallas, son of Evander, 130/29; accompanies Aeneas, 131; slain by Turnus, 140; his body is sent home, 145.
 Palusshe, *sb.* marsh, 42/23.
 Paralesye, *sb.* paralysis, 110/2. Fr. *Paralytie*.
 Pardurable, *adj.* perdurable, continual, perpetual, 59/22, 100/29. Fr. *Perdurable*.
 Parellys, *sb.* perils, 38/20.
 Parent, *sb.* relation, 98/27, 100/23. Fr. *Parent*.
 Parent, *adj.* related by birth, 112/3.
 Pareyll, *sb.* peril, 148/24.
 Parforce, *vb. t.* perforce, compel, 75/26; parforce, 71/25. O. Fr. *Parforceier—ver*.
 Parfournyshe, *vb. t.* complete. Fr. *Parfournir*. To performe, consummate.—C. 62/17.
 Paris, son of Priam, 38/4.
 Parlyamente, *sb.* parley, conference, 30/33. O. Fr. *Parlement*.
 Pasiphæe, wife of Minos, 117.
 Passe, *vb. int.* pass, die, 108/25.
 Passynge, *sb.* a passynge, a dying, 159/3. Comp. *Passing bell*.
 Pastour, *sb.* pastor, shepherd, 108/23. O. Fr. *Pastore—toure*.
 Pathere, a city in Lycia, 54/14.
 Patron, *sb.* Fr. *Patron*. The master of a ship, 95/6.
 Patrone, *sb.* Fr. *Patron*. Pattern, example, 15/2.
- Pausse, *sb.* pavisse, or large shield covering the body, 138/20. O. Fr. *Parois*.
 Peas, *sb.* peace, 50/27; pease, 50/20. O. Fr. *Pais*. Mod. Fr. *Paix*.
 Pencyf, *adj.* pensive, thoughtful, Fr. *Pensif*, 15/30.
 Pencyfulle, *adj.* pensiful, pensive, 48/22.
 Pentheus, 81.
 Perdurable, *adj.* perpetual, 93/2. Fr. *Perdurable*.
 Perisshe, *vb. t.* perish, destroy, ruin, 86/26.
 Periuremente, *sb.* perjury, perjury, 90/17. O. Fr. *Perjurement*.
 Permanable, *adj.* Fr. *Permanable* Permanent, constant, durable, 32/34.
 Permmte, *vb. t.* change, 72/13. Fr. *Permuter*.
 Perpetred, *pp.* perpetrated, committed, 26/7, 37/26. Fr. *Perpétrer*.
 Perturbatyffe, *adj.* perturbative, disorderly, 46/7.
 Pestyferre, *adj.* Fr. *Pestifere*. Pestiferous, pestilent, deadlie.—C. 95/27.
 Phœbus helps to build the walls of Troy, 91/20.
 Piece, *sb.* armed at all pieces, fully armed, 14/15.
 Pietous, *adj.* sorrowful, 26/30. O. Fr. *Pitos*, compatissant.—G. See *Pyetous*.
 Pietously, *adv.* sorrowfully, 76/23. See *Pietous*.
 Pistelles, *sb.* epistles, 120/21.
 Placable, *adj.* ? appeasing, appeasable, 37/2.
 Plasmator, or Polymestor, King of Thrace, receives Polydorus, and afterwards murders him for his money, 12, 16, 17, 18.
 Playsaunce, *sb.* pleasure, enjoyment. Fr. *Plaisance*. Mirth, sport, pleasure, festiuitie.—C. 34/29.
 Playsannte, *adj.* pleasant, pleasing, 48/11. Fr. *Plaisant*.
 Playse, *vb. t.* please, 38/16.
 Plentyuous, *adj.* ? fertile, 31/29. O. Fr. *Plentuos*, *Plentuous*.—G.
 Polydorus, son of Priam, sent away during the siege of Troy, 12; is

- murdered by Plasmator, or Polymestor, 12; Aeneas sacrifices on his grave, 17; Polydorus addresses Aeneas from his grave, 19; his obsequies, 21.
- Pompeuse, *adj.* pompous. Fr. *Pompeux—euse*. Pompous, magnificent, stately, sumptuous.—C. 14/12.
- Poorre, *sb.* gate, 49/18. Fr. *Porte*.
- Poplesic, *sb.* apoplexy, 110/1.
- Porte, *sb.* port, 102/20. Fr. *Port*.
- Porneyd, *pp.* provided (of = with), 21/35; pourueyed, 22/31. O. Fr. *Pourveoir*.
- Possede, *vb. t.* possess, 26/35. Fr. *Posséder*.
- Poulder, *sb.* powder, dust, 44/11. O. Fr. *Pouldre*.
- Pounde, *sb.* pond, lake, 90/1, 103/15.
- Pourfyllid, *pp.* purfled. O. Fr. *Pourfiler d'or*. To purfle, tinsel, or encrease with gold thread, &c.—C. 53/31.
- Pourpre, *adj.* purple, 83/1; purple, 82/36. Fr. *Pourpre*.
- Poynt, Poynte, *sb.* in poynte, in order, 30/26, 34/24, 54/7; *En point*.—C. Poynte mortalle, point of death, 67/36.
- Prenostycature, *sb.* prognostic, 80/31.
- Presagious, *adj.* presaging, foretelling, 80/30. Fr. *Presageux*.
- Preste, *adj.* ready, 53/27. O. Fr. *Prest*.
- Prestresse, *sb.* priestess, 66/9, 85/2, 88/1. O. Fr. *Prestresse*.
- Preterit, *adj.* preterite, deceased, 34/14; preteryte, 26/31. O. Fr. *Preterit—ite*. Past, gone, departed.—C.
- Prou, *adj.* O. Fr. *Preux*. Hardie, doughtie, valiant, full of prowess.—C. 44/17, 118/6.
- Priam, 11.
- Proesse, *sb.* prowess, 143/30, 145/14.
- Proferre, *vb. t.* prefer, 134/19.
- Promytte, *vb.* promise, 61/25, 85/21.
- Propice, Propyce, *adj.* propitious, 21/8, 31/19, 33/12, 76/19, 94/8. Fr. *Propice*.
- Prore, *sb.* prow, 29/7.
- Prosapye, *sb.* stock, race, 24/36. Lat. *Prosapia*.
- Proserpine tortures Orestes, 83; her power over mortals, 109, 110; claims Dido's soul, 111.
- Proverne, or Privernum, a Volscian town, and capital of King Metapus, 129/34.
- Proye, *sb.* prey, booty, 145/12. Fr. *Proie*.
- Prune *vb. t.* pick feathers (of a bird), 63/22.
- Prymeface, of p. = Fr. *De prime-face*. At the first, at first sight.—C. 56/7.
- Pryuated, *pp.* deprived, 85/35, 99/28.
- Pryue, *adj.* privy, private, belonging to the family, 35/11, 73/31.
- Pryne, *vb. t.* prive, deprive, Fr. *Pricer*, 70/18; *pp.* 19/5.
- Pucelle, *sb.* maiden, Fr., 121/5, 146/5.
- Pudeyque, *adj.* Fr. *Pudique*. Chast, pure, modest.—C. 32/35; pudike, 37/17; pudyke, 36/25.
- Puylle, Apulia, 147/1.
- Puyssant, *adj.* puissant, powerful, 10/19.
- Puyssaunce, *sb.* power, might, 19/4.
- Pyetous, *adj.* wretched, pitcous, sorrowful, 13/25, 15/20, 29/1, 35/10, 36/11, 80/16; pyetouse, pitiful, merciful, 73/19. See *Pietous*.
- Pyetously, *adv.* lamentably, sorrowfully, 107/14.
- Pygmalion, King of Phœnicia, and Dido's brother, succeeds Belus, 25; murders Acerbas, or Sychæus, his brother-in-law, 25; 45/8, 81/20.
- Pylades, 83/22.
- Pynacle, *sb.* Fr. *Piacle*. Lat. *Piaculum*. Propitiatory sacrifice, 103/9; ?confusion with *paua*.
- Pysmer, *sb.* pismire, ant, 74/29.
- Quake, *vb. t.* shake, make fearful, 80/16.
- Quarellouse, *adj.* querulous, 80/9. Fr. *Querelleux*.
- Quareyll, *sb.* quarrel, bolt for crossbow, 158/10.
- Quarfour, *sb.* public place, 88/14.

- O. Fr. *Quarrefour*. The place in a towne wher-at four streets meet ahead. *Par tous les quarrefours de*. Throughout all the four Quarters, corners, or streets of.—C.
- Queyntli, *adr.* quaintly, elegantly, politely, 40/15.
- Rageouse, *adj.* raging, 81/26. Fr. *Rageux*.
- Rayson, *sb.* reason, cause, 33/4, 46/11. Fr. *Raison*.
- Reboute, *vb. t.* rebut. Fr. *Rebouter*. To repulse, driue backe, repell.—C. 40/32.
- Reclose, *vb. t.* shut up, confine, 92/27.
- Recomfort, *sb.* refreshment, cheer, 68/21, 84/16; recomforte, 79/3. Fr. *Reconfort*.
- Recordaunce, *sb.* care, heed, 61/22; mindfulness, 90/31.
- Recontre, *vb. t.* encounter, meet as an enemy, 39/7, 55/13, 99/21. Fr. *Renecontrer*.
- Recuel, *sb.* Fr. *Recueil*. A welcome, or intertainment.—C. 66/30.
- Recuyelle, *vb. t.* receive, 39/30; recule, entertain, 40/11. O. Fr. *Recueillir*.
- Reed, *adj.* red, 21/16.
- Reffuse, *sb.* refusal, 35/28. Fr. *Refus*.
- Reforced, *pp.* made stronger, 66/19.
- Refute, *sb.* respite, 81/24. Comp. *Refutare*. Rem dimittere.—DUCANGE.
- Related, *pp.* carried down, 78/14.
- Releuement, *sb.* relief. O. Fr. *Relevement*. A raising, lifting vp; releuing, reuining, restoring.—C. 113/26.
- Remyse, *vb. t.* set again, replace, 39/30, 92/30, 94/33.
- Rendre, *vb. t.* render, deliver, set free, 37/16. Fr. *Rendre*.
- Renomed, *adj.* renowned, 11/1; renommed, 4/31, 44/17. Fr. *Renommé*.
- Renomme, *sb.* renown, 50/1; renommee, 24/10, 37/6, 57/11. Fr. *Renommée*.
- Rent, *vb. t.* tear asunder, 76/33.
- Renues, *sb.* revenues, 77/28.
- Replenysshed, *adj.* full, 42/36, 81/5.
- Repreue, *vb. t.* reprove, 33/19.
- Repulse, *vb. t.* repulse ayenst, rebuff, repel, 44/21.
- Resolysitude, *sb.* fresh anxiety, 92/31.
- Resplendysshannt, *adj.* O. Fr. *Resplendissant*. Resplendent, shining, glistering, radiant.—C. 37/3.
- Resplendysse, *vb. int.* O. Fr. *Resplendir*. To shine, glitter, streame, blaze.—C. 32/7.
- Retch, *sb.* ratch, or running hound, 53/16.
- Retourne, *vb. t.* turn, change, 97/32. Fr. *Retourner*.
- Retrybue, *vb. t.* Fr. *Retribuer*. Requite, recompence, reward.—C. 89/25.
- Reuerte, *vb. t.* turn back, restore, 43/5.
- Renthe, *sb.* sorrow, 44/4; rewthes, 66/23.
- Reygne, *sb.* reign, kingdom. O. Fr. *Regne*. A realme.—C. 125/20.
- Reyny, *adj.* rainy, 56/30.
- Reyse, *vb. int.* raise, be enhanced, 32/25.
- Reysynge, *sb.* raising, starting from lair, 53/14.
- Rightwisnes, *sb.* righteousness, justice, 60/13.
- Roche, *sb.* rock, 63/20, 73/21. Fr. *Roche*.
- Roddy, *adj.* ruddy, 112/29.
- Romulus and his successors, 121.
- Roome, Rome, 82/27.
- Royalme, *sb.* realm, 16/2, 20/6; royame, 25/7. O. Fr. *Royaume*.
- Rudesse, *sb.* roughness, force, 139/1. Fr. *Rudesse*.
- Rychesses, *sb.* riches, 25/20. Fr. *Richesse*.
- Rynage, *sb.* shore, strand, 12/33, 29/26, 102/20. Fr. *Rivage*.
- Rynele, *sb.* wrinkle, 110/29.
- Sacraire, *sb.* O. Fr. *Sacraire*. A priuate chappell, or oratorie.—C. 79/29. Sacrayre, 80/2; sacraryes, 59/20.
- Sacryfye, *vb. t.* sacrifice, sacrifice, 87/11. Fr. *Sacrificer*.

- Sacyate, *pp.* satiate, satiated, 65/34.
 Saddle, *adj.* settled, sober, 113/13.
 Salute, *vb. t.* salute, 124/12. Fr. *Saluer*.
 Sangwynouse, *adj.* bloody, 103/36.
 Sapyntree, fir-tree, 63/7. Fr. *Sapin*.
 Sarestum. See *Sergestus*.
 Sawte, *sb.* assault, 138/17.
 Sawtyng, *sb.* assaulting, 161/35.
 Scume, *sb.* scum, foam, 53/29.
 Seassyng, *sb.* ceasing, cessation, 124/33.
 Seece, 57/24.
 Seche, *vb. t.* seek, 23/4.
 Secondyng, *sb.* secondine, or after-birth; the skin that envelops the foetus before birth, 89/5.
 Seduct, *vb. t.* seduce, 97/14.
 Seductor, *sb.* seducer, 60/30.
 Semblable, *adj.* semblably, in like manner, 54/18, 78/16. Fr. *Semblable*.
 Separe, *vb. t.* separate, 42/32, 44/9. Fr. *Séparer*.
 Sepulture, *sb.* burial-place, 114/29.
 Sequele, *sb.* O. Fr. *Sequle*. A great man's train or followers, 22/12, 39/11.
 Sergestus, a Trojan, 65/12, 160.
 Seruage, *sb.* Fr. *Servage*. Servitude, slavery, bondage, thralldome.—C. 102/1, 117/33.
 Seygnorie, *sb.* Fr. *Seigneurie*.
 Seignorie, lordship; Lordship, or Mannor.—C. 35/1.
 Shwed, sewed, 143/25.
 Siege, *sb.* seat, abode, 37/8. Fr. *Siège*.
 Simois, a port at the mouth of the Simois, near Troy, 15/30.
 Simulatyne, *adj.* simulative, simulated, feigned, 77/16.
 Skelton, John, Poet Laureate, 3/34.
 Slyped, *pp.* ? sharpened, 107/23.
 Slypper, *adj.* slipper, slippery, inconstant, 32/18, 36/29.
 Socourable, *adj.* Fr. *Secourable*.
 Succouring, helpfull; ready or willing to releue.—C. 12/11, 116/11.
 Solempnelle, *adj.* solemn, 60/5.
 Solitare, *adj.* lonely, 80/21. Fr. *Solitaire*.
 Somme, *sb.* in a somme, sum, or body, all at once, 97/25.
 Somtyne, *adj.* once, former, 27/14.
 Sonde, *sb.* sand, 18/29.
 Sorte, *sb.* Fr. *Sort*. Destiny, 72/29.
 Sombdaynely, *adv.* suddenly, 55/33. O. Fr. *Soubdain*.
 Sourge, *sb.* surge, 18/9, 26/2.
 Soumenaunce, *sb.* Fr. *Souvenance*. Memory, remembrance.—C. 24/20.
 Spece, *sb.* Fr. *Espèce*, kind, 79/18.
 Sperkell, *sb.* sparkle, spark, 43/20.
 Stellyferaunt, *adj.* stelliferous, 95/26.
 Styge, the Styx, river in hell, 103/14.
 Stygian Gate of Troy alone left, 13.
 Stypende, *vb. t.* pay, 38/26. Fr. *Stipendier*.
 Styches, *sb.* stitches, running pains, 110/2.
 Subeombe, *vb. int.* succumb, give way, yield, 81/7.
 Subeombed, *pp.* in whom they were subeombed, ? among whom they were in servitude, 35/34.
 Subgeit, *adj.* subject, 62/5; subget, *sb.* 4/28; subgette, *adj.* 11/27, 34/34. O. Fr. *Subject*.
 Submyse, *vb. int.* submit, 36/24. Comp. O. Fr. *Soubmis*.
 Subsidiuous, *adj.* aiding, helping, 71/29.
 Suffoke, *vb. t.* suffocate, drown, 77/23. Fr. *Suffoquer*.
 Suffoung, *vb. t.* suffumigate, 87/26. Comp. *Suffumigation*. A suffumigation.—C.
 Suffretous, *adj.* Fr. *Souffreteux*. Wretched, 13/27, 19/24.
 Suppost, *sb.* suppost indicatyf, ? the demonstrative subsidiary organs, opposed to the cogitative or reasoning ones, giving action to the latter, 104/5. O. Fr. *Suppost*, *Suppôt*.
 Suppryme, *vb. t.* suppress, 48/19. Fr. *Supprimer*.
 Sychens. See *Acerbas*.
 Sylvius Postumus, half-brother to Ascanius, 164, 165.
 Symulacre, *sb.* statue. O. Fr. *Simulacre*. Figure, semblance, resemblance.—C. 47/9.
 Syn, *adv.* afterwards, 63/20, 144/18.

- Synacle, *sb.* ? for *Pymacle* (see that word), 21/33.
 Synagoge, *sb.* place of worship, 46/28.
 Syncopysse, *vb. int.* faint, 25/35.
 Synystre, *adj.* sinister, unlucky, 33/22, 35/26. Fr. *Sinistre*.
 Sythera slain by Aeneas, 140/8.
- Takled, *pp.* rigged, 93/31.
 Talowed, *pp.* tallowed, 74/21 : to make the ships tight.
 Tamyse, river Thames, 2/27. Fr. *Tamise*.
 Tapysserye, *sb.* tapestry, 48/23, 60/3. Fr. *Tapissérie*.
 Tapyte, *sb.* carpet, 41/30.
 Tarcays, *sb.* Turquoise, 54/1.
 Tarquinius Priscus, 121.
 Tarye, *vb. t.* cause to tarry, stop, 49/11, 85/30.
 Taynture, *sb.* O. Fr. *Teinture*. A tincture, dying, staining, colouring.—C. 24/29.
 Teeth, *sb.* jags, or irregularities in stones for building, 49/26.
 Tenebres, *sb.* O. Fr. *Tenebres*. Darkness, obscurity.—C. 14/14, 97/1.
 Tenebrose, *adj.* dark, 53/6. Fr. *Ténébreux*.
 Tenebrosite, *sb.* darkness, 13/17.
 Termyne, *vb. t.* finish, 36/30. Fr. *Terminer*.
 Terys, *sb.* tears, 75/13.
 Testymonage, *sb.* testimony, evidence, witness, 53/2, 73/9.
 Thalamus, King of Arcadia, 130/18.
 Thebes, 82/9 ; meaning Thebes in Egypt, and the Greek Thebes.
 Theseus kills the Minotaur, 119.
 Thesypho, or Tisiphio, one of the Furies, 81/31.
 Thetys, nephew of Aeneas, 116/30.
 Tholomeus, or Tolumnius, 157.
 Thrace, 16. 22.
 Thyas, 66/9. Gr. *Thuias*, inspired or mad priestess.
 Thyrayn, *adj.* Tyrian, of Tyre, 33/7.
 Titan, the sun, 96/31.
 Tocomyng, *adj.* future, 4/21.
 Tofore, *prep.* before, 16/19 ; to-fore, *adv.* before, 24/1.
 To-gyder, together, 35/7.
 Tonyre, or Tiber, 120/26, 130/24.
- Torne, *vb. int.* turn, 35/27.
 Tourment, *sb.* torment, agitation, 96/2.
 Tourment, *vb. t.* torment, agitate, 75/17.
 Tourne, *sb.* tourney, 132/19. O. Fr. *Tournei*.
 Transmyse, *vb. t.* transmit, 52/2.
 Traueylled, *pp.* travelled, tired, 85/19.
 Traytice, *adj.* narrow, like a line, pencilled, 112/24 ; Traytysse, 112/36. O. Fr. *Traictis*. 'Her nose tretys.' CHAUCER, *Prolog. Cant. Tales*, 152.
 Tremoure, *sb.* tremor, quaking, 60/9.
 Triews, *sb.* truce, 100/2 ; tryewes, 145/20 ; tryews, truce, respite, 90/5. O. Fr. *Trues*.
 Trist, *adj.* sad, 103/24 ; tryst, 84/5, 92/6 ; tryste, 59/33. Fr. *Triste*.
 Troy, said to have been built by Priam, 11 ; destroyed by the Greeks, 13 ; New Troy, or Acesta, 115.
 Trystesse, *sb.* sadness, 80/28, 90/13. Fr. *Tristesse*.
 Tully, or Cicero : his Epistles translated by John Skelton, 4/6.
 Tulyola, an island (called also Enlyola), 116/29.
 Turbacion, *sb.* Fr. *Turbation*. A trouble, or troubling ; a disturbance, molestation, disquieting.—C. 92/32.
 Turnus, King of the Rutulians, courts Lavinia, 121 ; son of King Darynus, or Daunus, 126 ; wrath at Aeneas, 127 ; attacks Ascanius, and loses his son, 128 ; begins war against Aeneas, 129 ; lays siege to Aeneas's camp, 132 ; slays Pallas, 140 ; is deceived by an apparition, 141 ; has altercation with Drances, 149 ; aids in defence of Laurentum, 150 ; proposes single combat with Aeneas, 154 ; makes covenant about the duel, 156 ; makes havoc among the Trojans, 158 ; fights Aeneas, and is slain, 162.
 Tuscany, 129/33.
 Tutryce, *sb.* guardian. Fr. *Tutrice*.

- A tutrix, or tutesse; a gardianesse.—C. 85/5.
- Tymorysite, *sb.* timorosity, fear, 20/29.
- Tyre, 25/8, 92/15.
- Tyrrians, 33/7, 56/13, 81/18.
- Tytan, the sun, 96/31.
- Ualle, *sb.* valley, 129/33.
- Uery, *adj.* very, true, 37/18. Fr. *Vrai*.
- Vacabonde, *adj.* vagabond, wandering, 15/28. O. Fr. *Vacabon*.
- Vagaunt, *adj.* vagrant, wandering, with no settled habitation, 45/2, 81/10.
- Vaillyantyse, *sb.* valiance, bravery. O. Fr. *Vaillantise*. Valiantnesse.—C. 22/32.
- Valyde, *vb. t.* vouch for, corroborate, 65/6.
- Vassaylle, *sb.* vessel, 39/15.
- Vaticynaunte, *adj.* vaticinant, 29/11.
- Vegetalle, *adj.* vegetal. Fr. *Vegetal*. Vegetal, having or giuing a (plant-like) life.—C. 19/10.
- Vengable, *adj.* vengeful, 153/6.
- Vengeresse, *sb. f.* Fr. *Vengeresse*. Female avenger, 99/7.
- Venus and Juno debate about the marriage of Aeneas and Dido, 50.
- Vernylus, or Venulus, returns to King Latinus from an embassy, 146.
- Verytable, *adv.* veritably, 41/18.
- Vierge, *sb.* virgin, 88/22. Fr. *Vierge*.
- Vilete, *sb.* vility, abasement, disgrace, 108/11. Fr. *Vileté*.
- Virgil, 23/16.
- Viryle, *adj.* virile, manly, 36/20. Fr. *Viril*.
- Vitupere, *sb.* *Vitupere*. Dispraise, disparagement, reprehension, blame.—C. 100/5; vitupere, 77/1.
- Vitupere, *vb. t.* disparage, revile, 105/13. Fr. *Vitupérer*.
- Vltryce, *sb. f.* female avenger, 99/7.
- Vlulatiue, *adj.* howling, yelling, 99/4.
- Vncuryously, *adv.* carelessly, 15/4.
- Vndresette, *vb. t.* set under, put as prop, give as voucher, 44/20.
- Vnde, *sb.* wave, 15/31. Fr. *Onde*.
- Vuneth, *adv.* scarcely, 24/8.
- Voluntee, *sb.* will, 19/23. Fr. *Volonté*.
- Voluptee, *sb.* pleasure, 43/26. Fr. *Volupté*.
- Vorage, *sb.* *Vorage*. A gulfe, whirl-poole.—C. 39/18.
- Voraygeouse, *adj.* whirling, 67/6. Fr. *Vorageux*.
- Voyde, *vb. t.* voyde oute, send out, 102/27.
- Vplondyssh, *adj.* uplandish, outlandish, 3/15.
- Vyceta, mother of Evander, 130/20.
- Waraunt, *sb.* safety, 139/14.
- Wawe, *sb.* wave, 15/31, 16/1, 39/19.
- Weddre, *sb.* weather, strong weddre, stormy weather, 114/18; wedre, 56/30.
- Weddrynge, *sb.* storm, 60/9; wedrynge, 52/17, 55/32.
- Weder, *sb.* wether sheep, 46/30.
- Wele, *sb.* weal, welfare, 28/21; comyn wele, common weal, 33/27.
- What = why, 155/2.
- Wodnesse, *sb.* woodness, madness, 111/18; woodnes, 28/17.
- Woode, *adj.* mad, angry, 39/23.
- Wyage, *sb.* voyage, 70/8.
- Wydowhed, *sb.* widowhood, 32/36.
- Wyke, *sb.* week, 26/26.
- Wyllynge accomplysse, determining to bring about, 55/18.
- Wythout to, 70/32, 36.
- Yarbas, or Iarbas, King of the Gætulæ, is angry at the reports about Dido and Aeneas, 59; complains to Jupiter that Dido has rejected his love, 60.
- Yate, *sb.* gate, 13/28, 41/31.
- Yde, Ide, or Ida, a mountain and forest near Troy, 15/33.
- Yefte, *sb.* gift, 41/21, 112/17.
- Yeue, *vb. t.* give, 41/22.
- Yocked, *pp.* yoked, 89/36.
- Yolus, or Iulus, 1/11, 14/33. See *Iulus*.
- Yolus, or Aeolus, 38/14, 39/8. See *Acolus*.
- Yongthe, *sb.* youth, 29/16, 43/9.
- Yteratyne, *adj.* iterative, repeated, 35/13.

COLLATION WITH MR. ALFRED H. HUTH'S
COPY OF THE FRENCH ORIGINAL, 1483,

By F. J. FURNIVALL.

Page & line	Page & line
10/6 Eneydos] <i>esneydes</i>	12/11 right socourable] <i>ami tressecourable</i>
10/8 many] <i>moult de</i>	12/16 chaungyng] <i>mua</i>
10/22 opene] <i>et ouurir</i>	12/17 endured] <i>sommece</i>
10/23-4 It behoueth] <i>Fault</i>	12/27-8 and the sayd troians myserable semed better to lose] <i>Et sembloient mieulx lesdictz troians miserables</i>
10/25 the excellentest] <i>l'excellence</i>	12/31 mynde] <i>pence</i>
11/3 stocke of Dardanus] <i>souche de Dardanus</i>	12/35 in whiche] <i>auquel</i>
11/4 Electra] <i>Clectra</i>	12/36 whiche he bare] <i>quil auoit porte</i>
11/6-8 of kynges, And the sayd Troye, was enuyronned in fourme of siege / and of excidyon, by Agamenon, kyng in grece] <i>des roys fut enuironnee en forme de siege et de occidion par Agamenon gregois</i>	13/1 so traytoursly] <i>traicieusement</i>
11/11 princes & grekes] <i>princes gregois</i>	13/4 a lityl hille or montycle] <i>vng petit mont.</i>
11/13 the excersite and hoost] <i>l'excersite et ost</i>	13/9-10 the force and strengthe of the troyians] <i>la force troyanne</i>
11/16 renommed] <i>rommee</i>	13/12 lityl damage and hurte] <i>peu de dommaige</i>
11/20 god] <i>les dieux.</i> emprysed] <i>en- treprins</i>	13/15 broyld and brente] <i>arse et brulce</i>
11/25-6 To that one encreacyng] <i>aux vngz en leur accroissant</i>	13/18 the place hadde embraced and yssued oute] <i>du lieu embrase yssoit</i>
11/27 to that other] <i>aux aultres</i>	13/19 wythholden] <i>reselle</i>
11/32 Pryame thenne wyll teshewe & helpe for thynges] <i>Priame doncques voudant subuenir aux choses</i>	13/21 to enlumyne] <i>enluminerent</i>
12/1 were ouerthrowen fro his name] <i>precepitassent de son nom premier.</i> (In 12/2 Caxton makes <i>premier</i> an adverb to <i>separa</i> , he dyd do departe.)	13/24 deuouryng the pompe] <i>deuoratif de la pompe</i>
12/4 In hopyng] <i>Esperant</i>	13/25 pyetous] <i>pitoyable</i>
12/6 wyth a grete] <i>en grant</i>	13/27 brent] <i>arse</i>
12/7-8 stronge corage, wyth rychesse ynough] <i>force couraieuse. en richesse copieuse</i>	13/28 of the yates] <i>des parties</i>
12/9 tresour and Iewellis] <i>et mise en royauls</i>	13/29 the yate stex] <i>la porte stee</i> (& in p. 14, l. 5)
12/10 enduring] <i>pendant</i>	13/29 was made soe maysterly] <i>de diffice si magistrallment</i>
	13/31-3 carpentrye / that of all ye countreye of Asie it passed alle other in efforte and strengthe ¶ It was made of soo] <i>et charpenterie de tout le pais desic sestoit enuertuce et mise en effort de bastir ouuraige de si</i>

- 14/5-6 sette in fyre and flamme] *mise en flamme*
- 14/7 lyke as] *Comme se*
- 14/8 destroye] *gacripir*
- 14/11 throwe down] *demolir*
- 14/14-15 and other / And vnder the tenebres and derkenes] *et clandestinement. Et soubz ombre des tenebres*
- 14/15 elerly at] *au cler de*
- 14/16 vpon his harnoys] *auoit sur son harnoïs*
- 14/20-3 by olde age and lyuynge many yeres, his bloode was waxen eoble soo moche, that he myghte not walke ne helpe him selfe by moeuynge] *par riellese et coagulation de plusieurs ans auoyt enfroidy le sang tant que plus ne pouuoit cheminer ne soy aider de motif et local sensement*
- 14/24 helde] *Lequelle Anchises tenoyt*
- 14/25 precyous stones] *prosperites*
- 14/27 Troye, and grete and diuerce relykes] *[t]roye la grant, diuers & estranges reliquieres*
- 15/35 that it maye leefully be sayd] *que chose loysible scauroit dire*
- 15/1 hadde doon her deuoyr, and holpen to the procreacyon] *se fust essoignee a la procreation*
- 15/2 of mankynde] *des humains effaictz*
- 15/3-4 of Anchises and yolus, lyke as sayd is / ensiewed] *pour destremper ceste matiere en pitie. Ence acompaigne Danchises et Yolus, ainsi que dit est, suyuoit*
- 15/5 Nothyng appertenauat to] *et plus que naffiert*
- 15/8 dyligently] *diligamment et soignusement*
- 15/9-10 and alle rufflyd on alle partyes, wythout ouy hope of amendement] *de toutes pars sans aucun amendement extrinsèque*
- 15/11 to many one] *a maint couraige*
- 15/11-12 her swete firste lyf, and now her deploracyon] *sa douleur & deploration enrouceez*
- 15/18 soo berynge his fader] *ainsi attourne*
- 15/19-20 to beholde them wythoute pyte / but yet more pyctous to telle it] *de le veoir Mais qui plus est de louyr scullement le fait enarrer*
- 15/26 mal-nrouse and vnhappy] *malcurieuses*
- 15/28 vacabonde] *vague*
- 15/31 vnades or wawes] *vndes*
- 16/1-2 of the wawes of the see] *de vagues sur la mer*
- 16/2 in the Royalme] *es parties septentrionnelles au royaume*
- 16/10 to edyfyte] *a faire edifier*
- 16/10 takynge it] *prenant naissance*
- 16/12 come noi] *tendre*
- 16/19-20 to-fore the confusion and viter dystrectyon] *durant la confusion et l'extermine*
- 16/23 engynes] *engiens*
- 16/29 a white bulle as crystall] *eng grant torreau blanc comme cristal*
- 16/33 sette] *situé et assis*
- 17/7-8 By the inhumanyte and wyckednesse] *pour humanite et mauuaistic*
- 17/10 lytyl hylle or mounty-le] *petit mont*
- 17/12 smalle busshes] *ruisseaulx*
- 17/12-13 by humydyte and hete] *ia pour la chaleur humide*
- 17/15 named in frenshe murtyllers cornyllers] *nommes murtilliers cornilliers*
- 17/16 the hille . . . an hye] *ledict montignon . . . espaté*
- 17/17 shadowed by grete spaece the] *donnoit ombre spacieuse au*
- 17/19 enteneyon] *intention dicelluy*
- 17/20 of the bowes and braunches] *frondages dicelluz*
- 17/21-2 we englysshe men . . . halowe] *du pays francois . . . celebres*
- 17/23-5 somer / In strowynge wyth herbes, and settinge vp of grene trees and bowes, in the chirches and chappellis for to refresshe] *ceste enfroulissent les cyllises les curfours et lieux publics pour excoir & afrechir*
- 18/3-4 on bothe sides] *The French woodcut shows a double-bladed axe, one head or blade on each side of the helve*

- 18/5 glayue or guysarne] *besagne*
 18/5-6 hewe and smote douu] *frappa*
 18/7-8 soo cutte and entamed] *entames*
 18/9 a source of blaekke bloode drop-
 pyng] *une sourcyon de gro sang noir*
distillent
 18/11 droppes of bloode . . . shewyng] *goutes . . . monstre*
 18/12 abashed and dredefull] *espouu-*
ante
 18/15-16 bi grete humylyacyon of herte
 and deuoute affectyon] *no French*
for this
 18/18-19 goddys of the forestes] *decses*
des forestz
 18/20 gyue] *donner et bailler*
 18/23 adoured] *inuouques*
 18/25 to arache or plucke vp] *darachier*
 18/26 empesshed and letted] *empeschcoit*
 18/27 myghte] *sens*
 18/28 to demeane this to] *ce demener en*
 18/30 that other ayenste the branche]
lautre pie myst contre la terre noyel-
cuse dudict arbre
 18/31 oute of the lytyll hylle] *sur ledict*
monticule
 18/33 myghte] *vertu*
 19/1-2 sorowfulle and bywepete] *explauree*
 19/3-4 to the . . . thy] *de soy mesme*
. . . sa
 19/5 pryed frome his lyf / or] *pruue de*
vic : sur vng corps mort, vengeance
si est inutile
 19/7-8 goode frende, I, very sorowfull
 whiche so moche haue loued the] *bon*
amy lasse dolant que iay tant aime
 19/10-11 made theym vegytalle wyth
 sencyble moeuynge] *les vegetoit de*
motifz sensencens
 19/13-14 requyred . . . poursiwe] *re-*
clames . . . persecuter
 19/17 hidde & conerde vnder] *fardee de*
couuerte de
 19/18 worlde] *siecle*
 19/22 arrettyd] *buy a instigne*
 19/24 the ryche meu suffretous and
 poure] *les plus riches souffreteux*
 19/26 by] *de*
 19/27 shewe and manyfeste] *magnifeste*
 19/28 bloode] *sang gros et noir*
 19/29 woldeste haue cutte] *tu tes voulu*
efforcer de coupper
 19/30 of thyse] *venu dicculz*
 19/33-4 hath aroused the erthe] &
espandu sur la terre
 20/1 defoylle] *soilles*
 20/6 bylde] *extraire*
 20/7 of Trace] *tracois*
 20/8-9 made bastelles of werke &
 ouerage] *bastimens douuraige*
 20/14-16 is destenyed to the . . .
 fruytes / for there to be releued, And
 to comforte] *test . . . frugalite destine*
pour illec releuer et consoler
 20/18-19 full of fylthe and ordure, by
 the bloddy faytte] *enordie pur la san-*
guinolance
 20/29-30 tymorysite . . . Insolute] *tre-*
meur . . . insolite
 20/31-2 to the palate of his mouth] *a*
lencontre de son palais
 21/3 cause] *cause*
 21/10 Thobseques of Polidorus] *Com-*
ment en faisant ledict sacrifice les
dieux & ydoles furent ornes sus lauerel.
et comment les dames descheuuees
plaignoyent la mort des nobles
 21/13-14 so was the aulter . . . And
 therupon putte & sette] *si furent sur*
lautel . . . poses et mises
 21/16 reed] *coete rouge*
 21/18-19 wyth bendes of his whiche
 enuyronned] *de bandeaulx de lin qui*
les entournoit
 21/22 chapelettis] *chapeaulx*
 21/23-4 montycle or lityl hylle where
 as Polydorus was buried] *monticule*
de Polidorus
 21/26-7 maye surmounte the infecte
 odour] *la fade infecte odour . . . puisse*
estre surmonte
 21/30-31 retchyng ought by theym
 selfe] *tenir compte delles*
 21/32 dyssheuelled, or bare the heed]
descheuelles
 21/34-5 oute of theyr wyttes] *ebtecs de*
leur sens
 22/4 bokettis] *coquets*
 22/9 montycle or lityl hill] *monticule*
 22/16 long and many] *per plusieurs*

- 22/19 Iohn bochace] *ichan boccace*
(*ichan boccasse* below)
- 22/22-3 Here bigyneth . . . ca . . . vj^o] *no French for this*
- 22/24 That other daye . . . I redde] *l Antier . . . tisoie*
- 22/25-6 hath spoken, & in brief] *a bien parle & mis en brief*
- 22/28 chynaunches] *cheuances*
- 22/31 moche more] *grandement trop maucule*
- 23/5 wordes] *plusieurs parolles*
- 23/7 medeled] Caxton has not englisht the following: *Mais l'infortune destruction de plusieurs autres aduient souuent par uuln cas inopine. Dont la cause est la tente et auons incogneue tellement que le premier effect se demontre par experiance sans scauoir dont ce procede Qui souuent donne aux ignorans les causes de tresgrant admirations, et suspencionment la chose estre aduenue comme par destinee disant ces choses Et cas accident a eulx estre ennezcz a leur suppost par naturelle adhesion et ne sen pourroit separer sans corruption de luy qui nest pas chose veritable selon l'opinion des maistres.*
- 23/15-16 the falle and caas otherwyse than vrygyle hath] *le cas ainsi que metc Virgille*
- 23/19 the his] *le sien*
- 23/24-5 other grete falles] *et par autres grans cas*
- 23/33 to shewe alle a longe] *de meetre au long selon*
- 23/35-6 the recommee of dydo, otherwyse callyd or named Elysse] *la renomnee dydo aultrement clisse*
- 24/4 as here after shall ensiewe and folowe] *ainsi*
- 24/10-11 deuyne renomnee / as to the hye name] *diuincuse renomnee comme est le hault nom*
- 24/12 thauetor] *lacteur*
- 24/16 & redyng] *et rediger*
- 24/19 dedes / fayttes] *fais*
- 24/20 souuenance or remembraunce] *souuenance*
- 24/23-4 sholde be wythdrawen / Or otherwyse sholde haue be forgotten it, and put in oublyauce] *Ou aultrement il auroyent mys en oubliance et a ecste cause en memoire*
- 24/25 fonde to note wyth rede colour or ynke] *qui deuote rouge coulcur trouuerent*
- 24/27-8 firste capytall lettres] *premieres lectres*
- 24/34 dymldged & shewed] *diuulguee*
- 25/8 thyre] *chir* (so throughout)
- 25/16-20 the Iugement that to hym was fortunat / that he was so bienewrous that he was emonge all other estemed to be most in Ioye & gladnes, consideryng the beaute and bounte of dydo his wyf, And also of grete rychesses] *son iugement que luy estoit fortune qui suruint a sa femme Lors bieneurce yssit du lieu ou tous les mortelz hommes ont estime uaiстре toute liesse cest ascauoir des richesses*
- 25/23 of whiche goodes & rychesses] *desquelles*
- 25/32 and dyd do slee Acerbe or Sychee] *No French for this*
- 25/33 wyf] *amyce*
- 25/35-6 syncoypsed, & syghed] *sincoypsoit*
- 26/2 sourges wellynge vp] *sourions a quatiquelz de la*
- 26/3 down by] *contre val*
- 26/4-6 And thus the sayd dydo suffred grete payne for the grete and harde syghynges & heuynesses] *que caues dieulx pour les grans et durs souppirs tristesses amertume que ladiete dydo souffroit*
- 26/15 thenne] *lors*
- 26/17 she comened wyth the] *si quelle communica aux*
- 26/24 wythstande] *obuier a*
- 26/26 Elysse] *astuce*
- 26/28-9 moleste and greued] *molestee*
- 26/30 mayntene] *maintiens*
- 26/32 places] *lieux et places*
- 26/33 true frende and loue] *loyal amy*
- 27/1 nayssaunce and byrthe] *naissance*
- 27/9 Thir] *chir* (so always)

- 27/11 to eschewe and gaynstonde] *obvier a*
- 27/15-16 of brasse & coper . . . manyfestely or openly] *daraine . . . manifestement*
- 27/26 sackes of brasse and coper] *saches plains daraine*
- 27/31-2 nanye / I doubte nothyngel] *nauigaie ie ne reuoque point en double*
- 28/17 furyouse woodnes] *reueric*
- 28/18-19 that he shall moche sore tormente vs] *et croies quil nous fera mecre en grans tournens*
- 28/20-1 wythdrawen & taken awayel] *soustraict*
- 28/22 in grece & gladly] *voulientiers en gre*
- 28/23 no culpe ne blame] *nulle coulpe*
- 28/24 grienous paynes & myserable tormentes] *griefues paines miserables*
- 28/28-9 I shall abandoune my lyf wyth you] *ie pardonneray a ma vie et tous temps feray compaignie a vous*
- 28/33 dwellynge] *mencion*
- 29/1-2 pyetous prayers] *prieres piteuses*
- 29/4-5 to habandoune & leue the swete countrey] *dubandonner la douce terre mere (Yet Caxton left out the Mother country!)*
- 29/7-8 prores or forshipp whiche lay toward the countre of thir] *prores de leurs nauires qui cstoyent toutes contre chir*
- 29/11 vaticynaunte or propneeyeng] *vaticinant*
- 29/16-17 of surete for to abide] *seure demource*
- 29/19-20 were well pleased wyth] *rauis-sassent*
- 29/25-8 And in conclusion, they descended from their shippes to the lande, and at the ryuage of the same they toke indede lxx maydens, and anone putte theym in-to their shippes] *tant que a la fin du monde, consendirent sur le bort du riuaige dicelle terre, & la ravirent, Et defaict tantost mirent eule ou nauire soixante et dix pucelles ou ieunes filles*
- 29/30 wyne ye duete of] *gaignier le deu de leur*
- 30/3 arryued in] *en*
- 30/4-6 and boughte as moche londe or grounde / as she myghte conteyne wythin the space of the hide of an oxe. in whiche] *achatu terre du lurge dung euyr de beuf ont*
- 30/15 whiche] *quelle*
- 30/16-17 after dyd doo cutte hit soo in a thonge so smalle and longe] *tost reduira en vne quarte quelle coppa si tresmenument*
- 30/18 quantycee] *quantite*
- 30/19 Inhabytantes sellars] *vendeurs habitans*
- 30/22-3 greued theym, and throwen theym] *agites*
- 30/33 holde parlyamente] *parlementer*
- 31/5-7 oughte to make an ende of their fuyte or fleeynge / and anone elysse or dydo] *debuoyent imposer fin a leur fuite Et tantost elysse*
- 31/9 of brasse & coper] *darine*
- 31/12 gretly encouraged] *animés*
- 31/13-14 concluded anone to buylde & edefye a newe cyte there / And caste & toke] *commencrent pour gecter & a prender*
- 31/21 wyth wallis autentyke] *dautentique muraille*
- 31/23-5 eyreuyte of the place was enuyronned wyth the thonge of a skynne or hyde, as to-fore is sayd. And the castell of the toune was named biose] *la place ou circuit du lieu fut tout enuironnce dune quarte comme vne peau de parchemin, ainsi comme dessus est dicte et nommee lurer ou chastei de la rille biose*
- 31/26 they hof Tir] *les tirans*
- 32/2-3 vmesurable] *immense*
- 32/4 Thir] *chir (but tirans above)*
- 32/8 circumiacent & neyghbours] *circunuoisines*
- 32/11-12 the guyse / the facons . . . of the cartagyons] *les gestes et aussi les facons des cartaignois*
- 32/18-19 thyng slypper & lubrik] *chouse lubrique*

- 32/19-20 to brynge hir in-to exyle] *luy est sours tout exil*
- 32/23 prudence] *prudencz de dydo son royaulme*
- 33/5 dydo] *elisse*
- 33/7 of thyre or thyrayn] *tirain*
- 33/9 to lyue after the manere] *et maniere de viure*
- 33/11-12 whiche for to doo they knew no mau conuenient] *qui pour y enuoier y fust assez idoie*
- 33/13-14 his owne londe] *son pays ou terre*
- 33/15 so vyle / terryble & straunge lyf] *vie si terrible et estrange*
- 33/16-17 he menaced and thretenyd to make warre & fyght wyth theym] *il les menacoit de bataylles*
- 33/19 prynces] *princes dessusdit nommes*
- 33/19 shewyng] *remoustrant*
- 33/22 to vse suche as] *prendre celle des*
- 33/24-5 that one muste deye for the salute & wele of your conatrey] *mourir pour le salut du pais*
- 33/25 concluded so to doo] *deliberez a ce faire*
- 33/27, 29 y^e publike . conatrey] *le bien publique. (The 'contrary' &c. is Caxton's.)*
- 33 30-1 dyde demanade] *fit demander*
- 34/1 had liener] *ayma mieulx*
- 34/4 seeyng] *voiant lesditz princes que*
- 34/5 & to hir] *prenant en son*
- 34/8 that they] *quelle*
- 34/12 in flegyble] *en flebile*
- 34/14 pre-erit] *preterit*
- 34/16-17 but she muste promyse to make this maryage / the whiche she accorded to theym, and helde] *promis a leur faire ce mariage leur accordant lauoir*
- 34 18 Induces and space] *induces*
- 34/20-1 In this tyme duryng] *Et ce pendant*
- 34/22-3 sette and ordeyned] *emparee*
- 34/24-5 And after this, she blamed longe] *puis longuement detestoit*
- 34/28 in late tyme] *en peu de temps*
- 34/29 with the] *au*
- 34/31-2 well happy fleeyng] *fuite bienueure*
- 35/1 conuerted and chaunged] *conuertie et muce . . . fust*
- 35/7 busshes and woode] *bon boys*
- 35 9 place] *place au lieu*
- 35/10-11 pyetous . . . playsaunte to the] *pit-use . . . p'uaitiue des*
- 35/13 payenge the extreme tribute of remembraunce] *prient le tribu de extreme souuenance que iamaiz puis apres ne ne devoit estre remembree par recordance*
- 35/15 clouen and broken] *brisee*
- 35 16 woode] *buchier*
- 35/19 citezeyns] *citadins*
- 35, 25-6 innocente blood whiche maculate & bysprange all theym that stole hy] *saug innocens qui macula toutes les arcomstances*
- 35/31-2 for to kepe hir cyte & the eytezeyns vnhurt] *pour les garder immunes*
- 35/34 ony] *auleunement*
- 36/1 sorowfull] *plaiantureuses*
- 36/2 were concluded & brought to] *a cell amene*
- 36/6 callyd] *appellerent et nommerent*
- 36/12 And after] *Et firent apres*
- 36/16 delyed & halowed] *dediez*
- 36/17 embraced] *collee*
- 36/19 A comendacyon to dydo] *No French for this*
- 36/21 digne & worthi] *digne*
- 36/24 eruel] *eruelle ce petit nombre dans qui pouvoit remendre a la vie future*
- 36 25-6 thy pudyke chastyte vnhurte, wythoute ony spotte / than to rendre or yelde thy selfe] *to pulite illese sous auleunement maculer que toy rendre*
- 36/28-9 by thuatrue note of lubryke & slypper luxurye] *de lauoite indeleite de lubrique luxure*
- 36/31 thy] *toutes*
- 36/32 gotten faune & renomnee] *occupe renomnee*
- 36/33-4 by whom he is repressed fro his lybidynous desire] *de libidineus desir parquoy est reprecie*

- 37/4 breste] *noble poitrine*
 37/5 tittle] *titre*
 37/5 loange / preysynge] *louange*
 37/10 crayntyue, I adresse] *ineraintine*
sabree
 37/11 that haste strengthe] *as seur a*
ces force
 37/17 laeynyte] *laciuite*
 37/18 and in-to benygue] *et benigne en*
 37/19-20 name and fame] *nom*
 37/21 merytes] *douces merites*
 37/22 chaste clenness] *lonnestete de*
puour
 37/27-8 Thir . . . Elysse or dydo] *chir*
. . . clie
 37/34-5 that byfelle to her] *Et iusques*
a lors a clisse
 37/36, 38/1-2 of the deth of the sayd
 dydo / I shall reherce here after now
 in a nother maner, whiche is to be
 presupposed was moened of] *ce enou-*
ant est bien cy a presupposer
 38/4-5 by cause of] *puis pour le*
 38/6-7 the moste fayrest of theym all]
la plus belle
 38/9 troye / after the siege] *la grant*
troye apres lexition
 38/14 Neptunus] *neptimus*
 38/17-18 empeshe the goynge] *des-*
tourber ou empeschier lalce
 38/20 parellys] *perilz*
 38/23 desire] *duction*
 38/26-8 goddys to be stypended / and
 shall doo honoure to theyr frendes /
 and treatre theyr lyngnage and] *deccses*
stipendier ses amys, honneur feroit a
toute leur lignee, les
 38/29 the goddys] *les dieux dessus*
nommes
 39/13-15 Cordes and ropes broken, And
 crampons of yron wrythen a sondre
 and plucked oute. the shyppes &
 vassaylles] *rompre cordes et arachier*
crampons de fer et leur ataches vais-
sauue
 33/18-19 vorages, & wawes] *vorages*
vudces
 33/20-1 gulle or throte wyde opene]
goulle baice
 39/31 separed] *luny de lautre separe*
 40/5 fortunes] *diuerses fortunes*
 40/10-11 And in descendynge and com-
 ynge a lande in to that . . . dydo]
descendant en icelle terre et en la . . .
fenice
 40/16-17 fayr and well byspoken] *bien*
draisant & beau parleur
 40/18 loued of alle men, & preysed]
loue de tous et prise
 40/28 enprynted] *imprima tellement*
 40/32 rebouted & putte a backe] *re-*
boutant
 40/33 the lampe / and the] *la lampe du*
 41/1-2 How dydo counseyllid wyth hir
 suster anne] *No French for this*
 41/3 bythoughte herselfe, and purposed]
se pourpensa
 41/15 obfusked / endullyd] *obfusque*
 41/17 nyghe kynne and parent] *prou-*
chain parent
 41/18 vertytable] *veritablement*
 41/20 delyuerynge and gyuyng] *baillant*
 41/22-3 to yene to dynerse creatures /
 and maye be supposed] *faire aux*
suppos
 41/24 chief werke] *chief doeuure*
 41/27-8 and drede theym fleyng, and
 kepe theym] *crainte les fait et tient*
entre ses bras
 41/29 And yf it happen theym to entre]
quant ilz entrent qui en en [sic]
auoient bien a fait
 41/30 in corners] *es cantons*
 41/31 the grete fote] *les grans picz*
 41/36 god forbede] *ia nauienyne*
 42/2 comynge to the chief of] *venant a*
chief de (accomplishing)
 42/3-4 yf it that ne were] *se ne fust*
 42/5 to abyde and be] *destre*
 42/17 molyfyed] *flechi*
 42/20 not for that] *non pourtant*
 42/22-4 to plonge and submerge me
 vnder the botomes of the depe pa-
 husshe infernalle] *saudoieuz aux*
ymbres palantes ombre denfer et
parfonde
 42/31 graue vnder the colde marbyl
 stone] *serqueuz dessoubz la lame*
 43/1 Thansuer of Anne to hir suster
 dydo] *No French for this*

- 43/5 reuerte] *couertir*
 43/23 fyre, lyghte, nor flamme] *fiere
 flamboyant de lumiere parcellément*
 43/28 solyeytude of thy] *solitude de ses*
 43/31-2 maryage, alle is to hym as
 ryght noughte] *mesauage . . . Tout
 est veant*
 43/33 lette] *uytre*
 44/4-5 reuthes noyons, vpon a damp-
 nable mynde and folysshe remem-
 braunce] *regretz cautiens en souuenance
 demeneuse*
 44/6-7 of the infernalle mansions]
denier
 44/9 renyue] *remuer*
 44/13 thyre] *chir*
 44/16 byloued of the] *amez*
 44/20 vndresette] *submetre*
 44/33-4 myroades, that are folke with-
 out Rule] *myrades gens sans frain*
 44/36 folkes flodes or ryuers that shulde
 tempre] *fleues ou riuieres de lueur
 de*
 45/4 thire] *chir* (and so all through)
 45/6 of lyght] *de legier*
 45/10 somtyme] *fen*
 45/14-15 destynacyes haue fauourished
 the well] *destinees ont fauorise les
 biens*
 45/16 ryche nauye] *nauire*
 45/29 atyse & drawe] *atire*
 46/4 erased of the grete tornementes]
froissces des grans tourmens
 46/6 contradycion] *en contradiction*
 46/7 apposite] *oposite*
 46/12-13 aduysed and shewed] *aduises*
 46/18 esprysed] *embusce*
 46/28-9 where before the aulters] *par
 les autels*
 46/30-1 sheep weders for to doo sacre-
 fyces destynated] *brebis et moutons
 pour sacrifices destines*
 47/6 there dediel and doon] *dedie
 fait illec*
 47/7-8 custome that was vsed at that
 tyme] *custume*
 47/8-9 In to the temples and symula-
 cures, knelynge before the awters] *par
 les autels par les temples et simula-
 cres*
- 47/11 entraylles] *entrailles de es mem-
 bres*
 47/14 ouerserehe] *recherche*
 47/24-6 gralled and myserably sette
 wayynge and tournynge here and
 there wythin] *avec de ayses miser-
 ablement en tout quelle ruyne tour-
 noyant par*
 47/28-9 an hynde that is rought to the
 herte wyth an arowe] *la biche nauce
 dung dart par sang usques au cuer*
 47/36 Thyre] *chir de sudou*
 48/6 oure] *trap*
 48/7 Of it that other parte] *daultre
 part*
 48/8 appareylles] *comus*
 48/20-1 lamelynge theyr bryghte
 sparkeles] *estincant*
 48/23 her bedde reste] *les repos de son
 lit*
 48/32 emonge] *alucarsfois*
 49/9-10 Inexplyeable occupyed, as
 transported and rauyshed] *raue
 et transportee inexplicablement*
 49/11 the] *les aultres*
 49/12 of Inperfection] *dimperfection
 sans plus greuer ny auant y beson-
 guier*
 49/16 were robuste and rude] *se aru-
 dissent*
 49/22 The stones] *la petite*
 49/30-1 spredde wyth mosse all to-
 tourne / rusty] *mossues de brises
 toutes raoullés*
 50/2 contryste] *contester*
 50/4 goodely and grete chere] *grand
 recueil*
 50/21-3 enes, whiche thyng myght
 be broughte to effecte / so that ye
 wyll be] *ence atirer de ioindre auons
 a ce que soyés*
 50/26 noyes] *noise*
 50/27-8 for the constructyon and ma-
 kyng of] *en faisant*
 51/27 felawe] *compaignie*
 51/31 this werke] *la besoigne*
 51/34-5 shalle mowe be broughte aboute]
poura de legier parfaire
 51/36 chasse and hunte the wilde
 bestes] *chaer*

- 52/4-5 to the vttr-moost of the game, welle chaffed aftre the bestes] *our efforts bien eschauffes apres la beste sur la point des grans dilligences que lon fait en tel cas*
- 52/9 lyghtnynges choruscacyous] *eschistres corruscations*
- 52/12 fulle blak and obscure] *obscure*
- 52/17 the wedrynge] *lorage du temps*
- 52/20 forest] *forest susdies*
- 52/24 were not of accorde fo[r] the] *fusses daccord du*
- 52/27-8 Of the grete tempest and storme atte maryage of theym] *No French for this*
- 53/2 to couertely and close] *trop clandestinement et a maectes*
- 53/7 his trayne] *ses brisees*
- 53/12 one from the other] *lung lautre*
- 53/14 for to renue after] *& lesser courre a la leuee*
- 53/16-17 theyr brackes, reches, and bloode houndes] *des autres marches leurs reles aussi & leuriers*
- 53/25 her fayr palfrey] *la haquenoe*
- 53/27 appareylled and couered] *couuerte*
- 53/31-2 pourfyllled] *borde*
- 53/35 ryche gyrdell] *surcaincte suraurre*
- 54/1 wyth fyne cloth of damaske] *dune figure de satin*
- 54/4 Thus appoynted] *en ce point*
- 54/13 vpon the flode] *le fleur sur le fleur*
- 54/18 semblable] *semblablement*
- 54/20 doo ryse] *se teussent*
- 54/26-7 garlandes of leues grene] *chapeaux de verdure*
- 54/28 fyn gras] *haulte liee*
- 54/31 becomen fyers, and] *senfierissent*
- 55/1 the yonge yolus] *ence [orig. en ce]*
- 55/1 y^e ladies] *la dame*
- 55/3 dales and narowe wayes] *landes et destroiez*
- 55/8 Ascanius or Yolus] *ascanius*
- 55/9 corrageous] *ardant*
- 55/21 the blewe cote] *la coete perse*
- 55/23 of thondre] *de greste tonnoire*
- 55/25-6 nor made no force for it, withstandynge] *ne tenoyent conte non obstant*
- 55/29 atte astryffe] *a lestrif*
- 55/30 aequyred] *acquerir*
- 55/32 wedrynge] *temps*
- 55/34 mysell] *de bresil*
- 55/36 agetted] *agictoit*
- 56/2 backwarde / forewarde, and atte eyther side] *arriere ou a coste*
- 56/4 by] *daultre part*
- 56/6 enf[]ammed] *aflambe*
- 56/12 nyghte] *nuyt toute noire*
- 56/20 the fallyng] *ses agouz*
- 57/11-12 whiche is more lighte than ony other thyng] *qui est celle ainsi que lon dit fame est vne malle meschine dont il nest chose plus legiere*
- 57/29-30 facultee and power for to reherce and saye] *faculte de pouoir dire*
- 57/32-3 ladyes, gentyll wimen] *damoiselles]*
- 57/34-5 rewthe ne regarde to no manere of lesynge] *regret a mensonge*
- 57/36, 58/1 wynges alle of fedders] *routes de plumes empanees*
- 58/4 vpon her] *en son corps*
- 58/6 styll without ceasse] *tousions et sans cesse*
- 58/15 what rewle is kept in] *du gouvernement de*
- 58/20-1 pynacles and toures / and wyth theym that kepe the day watches] *pinacles et avec les eschanguetes*
- 59/3 lordshypes] *et seigneuries*
- 59/11 hadde esprysed her owne herte wyth the loue] *sestoyt enamource*
- 59/15 a-renouse] *arcueue*
- 59/17 Gzamas] *Glazamas*
- 59/19 construed, edyfyed, and made] *construit et ediffie*
- 59/20 othre sacraryes] *aultres*
- 59/22 the daye watehe] *eschanguere*
- 59/27 good odours & swete smellynge] *bonnes odeurs*
- 59/28-9 garlandes made of floures that he gadred] *chapeaux et floretes quil amassoit*
- 59/32 wrathe he begate wythin the roote of] *couroux en*
- 59/33 besyde hymself] *hors du sens*
- 60/4 pycure] *painture*

- 60/5 wynes] *vos vins*
 60/18 countrey of ytalye] *cite de troie*
 60/20 ryghtwysnesse] *iustice*
 60/29 to receyue] *et a recepit*
 60/34 yelow as golde] *jaunes et dores*
 61/18 wynges empared with fedders] *elles emplumees*
 61/23 by-fore] *per faierie*
 61/26 lyf determyned] *vie a*
 61/27-8 kept and saued hym two tymes] *regardannes deux fois en champ de bataille*
 62/2-3 hys grete worthynesse] *ses grans vaillances*
 62/13 What mystreth hym to edyfie] *quel besoing est il quil edifie*
 62/21-2 for to fullefyile his wylle] *pour ce faire*
 62/34 recountred] *encontroit*
 63/2 other] *autres de son temps*
 63/5 for to susteyne] *pour en apvier et soutenir*
 63/7 of sapyn trees and of hooly trees] *de sepuis & de houlz*
 63/8 beten & cast] *uyiez de vens plains et nues obscures*
 63/11-12 grete flodes, & fontaines rening doune without cesse alonge] *fleuves et fontaines decorans sans cesse descendants par*
 63/13 borders and shores] *ores*
 63/14 thyeke yse] *grans glisons*
 63/16-17 vneles brother, vnto his moder named laye] *oncle frere de sa mere nommee laya*
 63/19-20 lowe, & syn hie] *puis bas*
 63/20-21 roches alonge the shores] *rochiers et riuage*
 63/22 pruneth or pycketh her] *se sore*
 63/26 & other grete edyfyces] *ediffices et arceaulz*
 63/28 bystorye or wepen crysolite] *historie cusolite*
 63/32-3 cremoysin alle drawn ouer wyth golde wyer, right wauntanly women] *cramoisi de tire a bordeure dorce tresmignotement tissue et assise pardessus*
 64/10 What cometh to the byfore] *quelle te vient*
 64/11-12 abide ydle in this landes of Iyhye? wylt enhalyte thiselfe] *demourer oiseuses terres de libie? dont te vient celle grant laschete de couraige de vouloir habiter*
 64/15, 16 of this thyng / whiche vnto the oughte to be desiderable] *desirant chose*
 64/22 loenyng] *louenge (praise)*
 64/30 gresell] *hercier*
 65/1 wythstandyng] *actendu*
 65/7 byfalle] *eas*
 65/14 doo make redy his shyppes] *appareiller et mettre en point le nauire*
 65/17 couertly] *repostement*
 65/20 of a feynynge] *de fainte ce quilz firent*
 65/23 from herselfe] *hors du sens*
 65/27 habandoune & leue . . . stroof] *habandonner . . . debatoit*
 66/8 styre her selfe] *demener*
 66/9 as a mad woman, as thyas . . . passed] *comme au . . . temps passe faisoit thias*
 66/13 feest] *festonnans*
 66/18 thus rennyng aboute] *ce faisant*
 66/19 reforced] *renforce*
 66/23 rewthes and complayntes] *& complaines regretz*
 66/25 vntroe] *desloyal*
 66/26-7 to make me a-knowen therof] *le me dire*
 66/31 the worshyp] *lonneur*
 67/4 doled out of ye sure waye] *foruoie*
 67/11 tyme] *temps et facilement*
 67/14 oughtest] *debuerois*
 67/18 flusshyng down] *decouvrans*
 67/26 louely countenaunces] *entretemens*
 67/30 anemste] *enuers, (& for 'of,' l. 33)*
 67/34 that by me cam] *par moi*
 67/35-6 poure desolate frende] *pouure desolce*
 67/36, 68/1 broughte to the poynte mortalle] *assolce*
 68/3 courage] *ouraige (heart, mind, purpose)*
 68/4 ayenst] *enuers*
 68/7 hate and haue ennye atte me] *moy prins en grant hayne*

- 68/8 hee praysynge] *los dicelle*
 68/10 was electe & taken vp] *estoye sur toutes esleue*
 68/11 is now, by thy departynge, so dayuly] *et en ce soudain en est par loy*
 68/13 kynde loue] *donnee*
 68/15 that lightly forgeteth his lodgyng and the place] *dont nest record delostellee ne mais du lieu*
 68/19 no thing abyleth with me nowe] *ne me demeure de present*
 68/22 hope] *esperer*
 68/26 Yarbas] *carbas*
 68/28 yf afore] *sauant*
 68/30 in] *auant*
 68/34 whyche shulde asswage the] *et laquelle*
 68/36 I shulde thynke that I were not] *aduis me fust nestre pas*
 69/6-7 moenyng hym self in nowyse] *sement auleunement*
 69/8-9 sighynge sore] *souppirant*
 69/10 sayd in this manere] *va dire en ce langage*
 69/13-14 as longe as lyffe shall abyde wythin me] *tous les jours que ie ciuray et tant que lesperit de vie se pourra soutenir sur moy*
 69/16-17 vnknowen to the, but sholde haue sygnified it vnto the] *& sans le te signifier*
 69/21-2 to be at] *faire du tout*
 69/26-7 in short, preceptyue] *en sort preceptiues*
 69/32 a stronge lande] *pays estrange*
 69/33 meane] *moyennes*
 70/5 placee] *ramcaule*
 71/1-2 furybounde & furyous] *furieuse*
 71/4 one thyng of a long while] *auleun aquet*
 71/5-6 intrysiuque wythin her hert] *intrinsque*
 71/7-8 was neuer borne of no goddesse] *ne fut ne de dessee mere*
 71/11-12 harde stones] *grosses pierres dures*
 71/17 to denoure] *demourer*
 71/23 growyng oute of the grounde] *aschee*
 71/29 subsiduous] *subside*
 71/35 madnesse] *durie*
 72/10 I wote not] *No French for this*
 72/12 to me, thys vnhappy] *a ceste malheureuse*
 72/13 wul permute rigoure to equyte, in this bihalue] *et rucilles en ceste partie parmeestre equite a rigueur iamais ne fault auoir fiancee en quelque foy que lon promet*
 72/19 lyghtly & gretly] *hautement et magnifiquement*
 72/20-1 do make ayen, that was reduced all in peeces] *tout refaict qui estoit reduit en pieces et esclaz*
 72/29-30 augurements / the sortes preceptyue] *augurimens le sors pouures du pais*
 73/1 secret nor couertly kept] *reposte*
 73/4 othes] *pariuremens*
 73/5 about] *empeschés*
 73/8 ryght stedfast] *tresassuree*
 73/9 for to conferme] *pour*
 73/16 calle after] *sonne*
 73/19 suche] *auleune*
 73/26 and taken awaie] *ou ostee*
 74/1-2 made redy] *apreste et orne*
 74/8-9 in a swonne, as alle ded to the grounde] *toute pasmee et atachee comme toute morte sans remuer auleunement*
 74/11 lityl bedde] *coucheete*
 74/17-18 & went his wayes for to see his shippes] *faisant a la visiter son nauire*
 74/22-3 hauen in-to the rode; made oores] *port dambas tout en la haulte mer faisoient rains et aultres auyrons*
 74/23 comynge new] *yssant*
 74/24-5 toke . . . and foyson of other tymbre, for to apropre to] *sans aultres chappusages prenoyent aforce et a foison pour*
 74/28 of one wyll to haue furnysshed] *ententis de quipper*
 74/29 euyn soo as] *tout ainsi et en la maniere comme*
 74/30-1 a shokke of whete or] *my gerbier fait de froment et*
 75/1 to swepe] *nettoyer*

- 75/2 bystoweth it] *le met en sauf*
 75/4 cometh agayn] *a tourner arriere*
 75/13 terys] *pleurs*
 75/14 complayntes, callynges and lamentacyons] *durs soupirs quelz clamours plaintes et sanglours*
 75/15-16 in the highe loft of thy grete towres] *sur les haultes terraces en esparsus de plus grans debtes tours*
 75/22 fonn dreth] *font*
 76/3-4 Ioye & gladnes, that maketh my sorowe and heuynes to be moche the greter] *liesse qui ne rengrege de trop plus ma destresse*
 76/11 soecours] *secours*
 76/15 euy] *corag] mal affaire*
 76/33 rentel, vyolated ne broken] *rompu viole ne brise*
 76/36 to leue me aside] *bouter arriere*
 77/9 so daungerouse] *tout dangereux et foruoie*
 77/11 loue] *amour de grant dueil adolce*
 77/15 facely & lightly] *facilement faire*
 77/23-4 suffoke . . . of amaritude . . . reysing] *suffoquer . . . amertume . . . resouee*
 77/27-8 I shalle make thee myn heyre, to enioye & receyue, after my deth, y^e renues of all my lond] *apres ma mort ie te laisseray pour heritiere de quoy este toute ma succession*
 77/33 feble] *stabile*
 78/5 caste] *agite*
 78/9 shake & bowe] *demaine*
 78/12 auncient . . . olde] *et lancienne souche . . . fort en vielly*
 78/15-16 styl ferme, & moeueþ by no wyse] *sans mouuoir nullement*
 78/28-9 ouer them that ben affliged] *aux affliges*
 78/34-5 foundrynge in teeres] *esplore*
 79/1 to wyshe deth] *a son haider la mort*
 79/4 y^e lyghte of] *la lumiere & la clarte*
 79/7 sorowe] *pleur et grant tourment*
 79/12 sawe & aperceyued] *apperceut*
 79/26 suster anne] *seur*
 79/35, 80/1 curiously & proprely kerued] *moult mignotement entaillees*
 80/10-11 gooyng vnder of y^e some] *couchant*
 80/14 the owle] *la roie de la frezayr autrement dit cheueche*
 80/16 dooth quake & fereth] *faict fremir*
 81/4 her hert semeth] *luy ressembl*
 81/15 the marche of thyr] *lumenche de chier*
 81/26 a rageouse franesye] *franesie*
 81/34 breken and marren] *residuit et retailant*
 82/2 natives] *natures*
 82/8 dysplaysures] *plaisances*
 82/13 cadinus] *cadmus*
 82/15-16 & pryncipally in . . . wherre he made] *et empeupla . . . jist*
 82/24 whiche haply] *Lequel espoir*
 82/25-7 & alle be he dombe or specheles, yf he take the lettre vnto hym whome it is is dyrected vnto] *ou soit muet sans parler nullement tout aultretant mais quil baille la lectre on peut scauoir celui a qui sudresse*
 82/28-30 he shall therby vnderstande the desyre of hym that hath sente suche a messenger vnto him] *comme sil fust aupres descriuant*
 82/36 to purple] & apourpre
 83/1 the pourpre clothes] *les pourpres*
 83/3-4 grete capitalle lettres] *grans lectres*
 83/4 princypal] *principes*
 83/6 mayde fayre] *parces*
 83/9 senoysses] *senoises*
 83/15 emendes] *enmendes*
 83/20-1 distourne & haue himse] *soy cuyder destourner et metre*
 83/30-1 the hope of his entent] *lespoir ou esperance de son entente a cause dequelles dictes turbacions et mesme ment dicelle vision des troys deesses furies infernalles*
 83/32 anguysshes, sorowes & heuynesses] *angoisses douloureuses et tristes*
 84/7 suster] *seur germaine*
 84/13-14 Of the wordes of dydo to hir suster anne] For this, the French has the heading, ¶ *Comment et en quelle maniere le roy Cadmus trouua premier*

- lettres et art descripture et la istoire de horrestres filz agamenon. Et comment les troys deesses infernales saparurent a leurree du temple apolin.*
 (A cut follows, of a King on his throne giving or taking a crown with his right hand to or from a person on his right, while others kneel before him with offerings in their hands.)
- 84/26-7 or the soume goynge-vnder] *de soleil couchant*
 84/31-2 thaxtre . . . of theuen] *le zil . . . du ciel*
 85/3 Operydcs] *esperides*
 85/5 and techer] *leur enseigneresse et doctrisse*
 85/7 goddesse] *deesses*
 85/10 of that tendynge] *du pensement*
 85/12 of the holy braunches] *de sauis rameaulx*
 85/13 of golde] *dor emereus au iour duy dieclhuy esperides*
 85/15 wete] *doules*
 85/27-8 and to the contrarye, putteth lone sodaynly in-to theym that hapely thinketh not vpon] *euers ceulx qui paraduventure en sont gueres entalentez*
 85/30-1 werkes . . . to tarye & areste sodaynli the flodes & grete ryuers] *besongues . . . darester tout a coup les fleuuez*
 85/36 constrayneth theym often by nyghte tyme] *par myet souuertesfois iuno qui et les contrainct*
 86/14 that I haue enterprised fermly my wyttes therunto] *que si auant iay entreprius de moy embatre*
 86/20 secret] *secret que tu porras*
 86/22-3 for whome I calle 'alas that euer he was borne' | whiche he] *que onques ne fust il ne quil*
 86/25-6 in my priue closet . . . many a night, he & I togider] *en nostre seur . . . maintes nuytees*
 87/6 body] *personne traussie*
 87/22 with a grete] *dassez grant*
 87/26 suffonng] *suffonger*
 87/28 costume] *constume*
 87/29-32 ouer the ymage and fygure of
- eneus, that she had doo make after the semblance of hym, for to be brente ther with her] & aussi mis par sur leur sepulture qui estoit illee pour bruler l'ymage & figure d'ence quelle auoit fait a sa semblance
 88/6 charmouse] *chermeuse*
 88/12 moder] *mere etachee*
 88/20-1 So that men myght saye that it encloseth] *et pourroit enclore obscurete diuiser triplicite et dire*
 88/23 this lady] *celle diane*
 88/25 venemouse] *venimeuse*
 88/27-8 freshe and newe mowen & taken] *nouvelles soyes*
 88/29 sereles] *faucilles*
 88/30 and of] *tendant a*
 88/32 foole] *poulain*
 88/36, 89/1, to gyue hym souke] *de le nourrir et alcter*
 89/2 the skynne 'mortalle lone'] *la peau de lamour maternelle*
 89/3 after the saide prestresse] *selon la pretresse iuiter*
 89/4-6 luste to souke hys moder, but yf she liketh or eteth the secondyng, or atte leste that same skinne that he hathe in his forhede] *sens a lechre ne a la mengie. la seconde ou autmoins leschie celle peau quil a au fronc sur son museau*
 89/9 ageynst the same] *chose contre elle*
 89/11 that] *par son commandement*
 89/11 rounde] *ronde aupres des autiers*
 89/15 in syght of alle the] *Et est aux*
 89/18 denounee] *denotent*
 89/19-20 mercyfull god and pyteous . . . to recyue] *dicu pitieux . . . de reuuoir*
 89/29 is paste and goon] *faillly*
 89/34 mysyble] *inuisibles (for nuisibles)*
 89/36 yoked] *atelles*
 89/36 silenec] *licence*
 90/1-2 poundes and ryuers] *las & timercs*
 90/8 fenyce, clysshe, or dydo] *la fenice*
 90/11 lityll] *pouure petit*
 90/12 atte her herte] *sur le stomac par la merite de dormir*

- 90/16-17 reprenyng the periuremente of Laomedon] *a laomedes*. In the French cut, Dido is sitting on a broad canopied throne, with 5 listeners round her, 4 on stools.
- 90/22 shalt thou mowe become / must I] *pourras tu deuenir me fault il*
- 90/32 me] *moy qui sont encoires tous desrois*
- 91/22 conuenanted] *commenca*
- 91/23 a tonne] *vuy muy ou caque*
- 91/24 the walles rounde aboute the eyte] *la clousture et muraille tout autour de ladite rille et cite*
- 91/29-30 doo ne paye ony thyng] *riens faire*
- 92/1-2 Of the vysion that Eneas hadde for to departe towarde ytalie] *No French for this*
- 92/10 or] *Ou sil vould mieux*
- 92/18 namly] *mesmemment*
- 92/30-1 solysitude . . . resolysitude] *solitude . . . resolutude*
- 93/4 madnesse & forsenerie] *forcenerie*
- 93/6 what eyleth me] *Hclas et que me failloyt il*
- 93/7 why haste thou not] *que mas tu*
- 93/10 alone] *en vie solitaire toute seuleté*
- 93/12 alone by theym selfe] *aparelle*
- 93/21-2 langour mortall] *mort eslongource*
- 93/23 so ferre doled from my wytte] *tant foruoye tant hors du sens*
- 93/31 takled] *equipee*
- 94/11 thynkyng] *pensant ou cogitant*
- 94/13-14 doo ye to destruction] *te crauante*
- 94/20-1 commyng . . . with torches lyght, And cressettes esprysed of fyre brenny[n]g] *guerroyer . . . faillos torches et brandons emprins et alumes de feu ardent*
- 94/23-4 yf thou be founde whan the [s]prynge of the day shalbe comen] *se au point du iour len te treuve a la riuo*
- 94/28 endulled] *adolee*
- 94/34 a derke cloude, & varysshed awaye sodaynly] *la nuict obscure hors les metes de lumiere veue.*
- 95/1-2 How Eneas eneyted the patrons & maysters of his shippes for to depart] *Comment et par quelle rayson jist tramys a Euec eny messai-gier scemblable a mercure pour le faire legierement et hastiement nauier en la mer pour fouir fortunes calamites perilz dangiers et amertumes de la belle dydo*
- 95/9-10 & made theym to take their oores in hande] *scoir les compaignons es bancs prendre les rains et aduyrons*
- 95/13 ryght soone] *tantost et hastiement*
- 95/15-16 sayles & cordes that were wythin the shippes] *cordes qui esto-yent au nauire*
- 95/18-19 hymselfe & all his] *en soy . . se*
- 95/27-9 yf her moeuyng were irryted ayenste vs by pestifere influences, & bryng vs sauffe & peassyble to the portes of ytalie] *Si aulcunement estuyt yritee encontre nous la transu-mant de pestiferes influences et nuissibles en fortunes salutaires et paisibles*
- 96/5 thei carfe waie in the water] *de fendre la faisoyt*
- 96/7 wawes] *repostailles*
- 96/15-17 palmyrus . . . of eneas shippe, ben declared, whan he myght not withstande ne contreste] *palmyrus . . . du nauire quent il ne pouuoit et ne scauoit contrester*
- 96/19 maister] *maistresse*
- 96/21 east hem in to the ysle] *les agita au royaume*
- 96/23 be-grauen] *sepulture*
- 96/33 illustre & illumyne] *illustrer*
- 97/1 calompniouse] *calmieuses*
- 97/3 sinothe] *esgal*
- 97/5-6 sawe the saylles . . . made good waye] *rit et appercent les voiles tendues . . . sen alloyent*
- 97/9-10 mad & beside herself] *forcenee*
- 97/12-13 saully the false & euyl man eneas] *faulcunement ce maluais homme enec et desloyal*
- 97/15 send after hym, & by] *lenuoyer a*
- 97/16 bryng alle to deth] *tout a mort*

- 97/20-1 kyll & slee, and brynge theym alle to] *a sang et a*
- 97/24-5 foundre & droune altogider into the botome of] *Effondres tout dedans*
- 97/29 doo . . . ferre out] *que veule tu faire . . . foruoyce*
- 97/35 this thou sholdest haue doon that tyme] *alors*
- 98/1-2 by the, made wyth theym] *leurs eussent faictes ne promises*
- 98/5 the . . . &] *ses . . . et a la*
- 98/6-7 wyth thyne] *a tout*
- 98/8 gaynsayd his goyng openly] *mis contredict*
- 98/10-11 whiche thyng thou knew, and was doon in thy presence] *a ton secul et a ta presence*
- 98/15 Ascanyus] *astameus*
- 98/18-19 to haue sette hym in stede of other sernyse atte] *len seruir dessus*
- 98/21-2 the fortune of ha[ta]ylle is doubtouse] *cest chose doubleuse des aduenens de bataille*
- 98/23 haue doo brenned] *faire bruler & ardoir*
- 98/25 purchase] *prouchasser ne aller querir*
- 98/28-9 and myghte haue slayne, brent hem . . . haue doon wyth theym after] *ou les faire bruler et ardoir en leur nefz . . . a*
- 98/32 O fayre sonne, that shyneste full bright] *soueil cler bel reluyant*
- 98/35 with] *ensemble*
- 99/2 highe] *de chate*
- 99/9-11 concluded & delibered . . . I goo delyuere me vnto . . . punyshe] *deliberce . . . ie me vois liurer . . . prouuer*
- 99/13 receyue] *ouir*
- 99/14 be so] *ainsi que autrement ne peut estre*
- 99/15-16 ordeyned that . . . vntrewe man] *voulu et ordonne . . . desloyal*
- 99/17 alonde hole & sounde] *en terre certaine*
- 99/21 cruell / strong] *et fort cruel*
- 99/24 putte ther-from] *dehors*
- 99/27-8 namely of Ascanyus his sone, and pryuated] *de son filz ascanyus prust il estre tous temps priue*
- 99/29 to hym also be gyuen by] *luy soyt aussi*
- 99/33-4 be he] *soyent* (applying to 'his folke')
- 99/36, 100/1 present, be put to anguysshe . . . tormente] *luy present . . . tourment iusques a langoisse de mourir*
- 100/1 shall] *vouldra*
- 100/4-5 folysse enterprise . . . hurt & charge] *folle . . . charge*
- 100/6 in a rage & grete sorowe] *la rage en douleur de ficure affunrece*
- 100/11-13 nedefull . . . goode] *souffre-tese . . . seure*
- 100/15-17 dounbe beste, be he caste in-to the depe shadowes of hel, ther to suffre tormentes right horrible & cruel] *beste nue de mort tresorrible et cruelle*
- 100/23-4 & frendes alyed / & alle they of your afflynte] *aliez et affins*
- 100/32 enmyte & mortall hate] *haine mortelle et inmutie*
- 101/3 dethe] *vies*
- 101/7 visayge] *viare*
- 101/8-10 that god forbede it shulde so come to . . . without to haue peas] *ce que ia ne puisse aduenir . . . sans auoir sans paine*
- 101/17-18 shall slee & distroie] *occira*
- 101/19-21 he shall make to be byhedde, & their membres to be broken & all to-hewen] *les testes et membres tran-chier*
- 101/22-5 within his prisons shalbe flain from bed to fote; ye other he shal doo cast out of ye windowes doua to ye pauement; & to other he shal make their eien to be pulled out] *escorchier en ses prisons aultres fera greter mourir de pain et les yeux arachier*
- 101/29-31 shall tourne them in to grete mendycyte. Theyre wyues, that thenne shall be come to the astate of

- wydowhed] *pouuede meete leurs femmes refus*
- 101/36 and putte oute of] *et de*
- 102/2 defoyled] *ledenges*
- 102/3 vyrgynes] *viergers pucelles*
- 102/9 Hanyball] *hambal*
- 102/19 traytours troians] *traîtres*
- 102/21-2 to them . . . euer more] *avec ytalien, et a leur mer parfonde noyse contient debat et discordance soyent entre eulx tousiours sans defuillance*
- 102/22 enraged] *fortoyue*
- 102/24-5 fro all partes . . . to theade] *& agieue de grant forenerie . . . de purgier*
- 102/25-6 whiche she can support no lenger, soo weri she was of it] *que tant luy auyst de plus la supporter*
- 103/4 for to be rydded of her] *pour soy delle micale despechier quelle allust hacher sa seur anne et la faire veür a elle disant*
- 103/9 pynacles] *pinacles*
- 103/14-16 of the styge . . . grete pouade . . . brymston] *ou fleuve du styge . . . lac . . . souffre*
- 103/21-2 that . . . flood] *ses choses qui . . . fleuve [Styx]*
- 103/24-6 after thise thynges." this said . . . suffre it] *Après ces choses dictes . . . supporter*
- 103/27-8 that quyuered & shoke of grete rage, & entred into a grete fransie] *qui se print a trembler de grant forenerie entri en frenuise*
- 103/31 to torne in to a wyked kynde, and in a mynde] *muer paruerse nature*
- 103/34, 36 grene . . . balle] *vers . . . prauille*
- 104/8 lugyng] *indicative*
- 104/14 betaken & east, went & mounted] *agieue se print monter*
- 104/19-20 the whiche dydo, alle thus vexed & troubled in her wittes] *laquelle ainsi forence*
- 104/23 rememaunt] *demourans*
- 104/29 wolde] *tout voulu et permis*
- 105/8-9 wythin my stremes of the see] *en mer terre*
- 105/10 intrynseque] *tresinique*
- 105/18-19 vitupered so sore and defyled] *tant laidenge*
- 105/28 kendled in this place] *alour*
- 106/7-9 so that the swerde entred within her brest, vnto the bake of her] *tout au trauers persee*
- 106/12-13 atte the poynt of deth] *en l'article*
- 106/18 attones] *a coup sans interval tout le suppost dicelle*
- 106/20-1 alle conered & defyled] *foulee*
- 107/2-3 wyth fire alle kyndled in a flamme] *en flambe de feu*
- 107/6-7 sorow and grete moone] *duel*
- 107/10 madde & out of her mynde] *desuce & hors de son sens fortoyue*
- 107/13 and alle to-cratched] *deschirout*
- 107/23 slyped] *esmouue*
- 107/24-5 to haue be departed one from the othre] *departir ne separer deussemble*
- 107/32-3 thou wolde neuer hide from me] *mas voulu deceler sans riens nuere ne plus que de roy mesmes*
- 107/35 caste me thus abacke from] *meslonger tout hors de*
- 108/11-13 vilete & slame . . . fowlle befall] *villeté . . . lait cas*
- 108/21-2 hath extyneted oure goode renomme, & brought vs in a grete blame] *nous a estaint et a coupee tout nostre alaite*
- 108/25 and] *& conyoissons*
- 108/27-8 sorowe and henynesse . . . made it clene] *douleur . . . lessuyi*
- 108/33 elbowe] *coude sans nullement y pouoir parler*
- 108/33-4 sore faylled, of the dethe] *aprouchans de la mort*
- 109/1 wasted alle awaye] *deffailloyt*
- 109/9 Elysse or dydo] *elisse*
- 109/12 the rayen bowe] *lart du ciel*
- 109/18 coencluyed] *condunes*
- 109/31 that be Inueterate] *inueteres*
- 109/35-6 she maketh scabbed and full of ytche] *la rouge et grattelle*
- 110/3 appayreth] *rabesse*
- 110/5 wyth fylthe] *dechaissie*
- 110/10-11 hath awaye fro theym

- . . . all theyr strengthes] *leur emble*
- 110/13-14 And after, she maketh . . . boweth theyr bodyes] *puis . . . forfaitz*
- 110/15 hangynge theyr hedes to the grounde-warde, alle full of care] *tous chagrigneur*
- 110/18-20 taketh theyr fayr colour away, and maketh theym as pale as ashes . . . wyth a highe colour ouer] *appullist toute leur couleur . . . & trop*
- 110/21-2 yelowe . . . lyke rousset] *blans . . . gris*
- 110/22-3 of an olde bere / She after shorteth theyr retentyue brethe] *excine puis leur alonge latentive*
- 110/24-6 And noon otherwyse it ys to be supposed, but that she doeth in lyke wyse of alle the remenaunte] & *ne peut pas demorer sans panser trestout la rementer*
- 110/29 ryncles and fromples] *ridures*
- 111/6 Of the beaulte of dydo] *No French for this*
- 111/8 proserpyne] *meschine*
- 111/18 wodnesses of helle] *dernieres infernales*
- 111/20 subdued and submytted herself] *voulu subiuguer a servir et soubz-mectre*
- 111/29 she that had submytted her self] *submisse*
- 112/2-4 persone . . . parent heyre] *possession . . . prochain*
- 112/7 the fyrste yssue] *lamsuc*
- 112/9 and reparacyons] *reparacions et soutenemens*
- 112/12 in her, beyng in this possession / that is to wyte] *en estre Ceste possession cest*
- 112/15 and hathe alymented and nor-yshed her] *alimentee*
- 112/19-20 qualyte, and ryght egall in proporeyon] *equalite et droicte disposition*
- 112/21-3 fayre heerys and long yelowe tresses, hangyng betwene two sholders to the heles of her] *Car deux espaulles longues traissent iusques aux talons dors & blans contre vng bascin*
- 112/23 brod and highe ynoughe] *asses haulc calcue*
- 112/24-5 traytice and broun . . . accordyng to the same] *votiz et traitiz . . . bises brunes*
- 112/26-7 a fayre & well compassed visage ouer] *beau tour de visage a merucilles sur*
- 112/28 A meane noose, not to grete nor to lytell] *le nes moyen*
- 112/33-4 with a bryght hew therewith-alle, some what tendynge to the rede] *bise suruermeillecte*
- 112/36 traytise on the backe syde] *votiz en arriere*
- 113/1 spotte or macule] *macule*
- 113/2 smalle, the sholders and the backe flat] *gresles les espaulles arriere le dos batz*
- 113/6 withoute eny blemysynghe] *avec lentredeux sus esleue sans aucune laidure*
- 113/8-9 and somewhat small on the neder parte / lytelle feet and smalle, with the toes well eynyn sette togyder] *greslete par le bas. les pies pectis. et les dois bien serres*
- 113/10-11 fulle swete and smothe of skynne] *soufue charneure*
- 113/12 eynyn] *eniz*
- 113/13-15 sadde of behanoure . . . contenance . . . replenyshed of all good condicyons] *maintien rasis . . . maniere . . . et de tous bien avecques*
- 113/24-6 the falle well vnderstande, well assoylled well & deffended, may welle haue releuement] *du cas bien entendu bien assailli bien deffendu pour bien auoir releuement*
- 113/33 tygres] *auc tiges*
- 113/36 of dydo] *delisse*
- 114/2 from] *avecques*
- 114/4 a grete pas] *a grant erre*
- 114/6 folke is propoyce] *gens*
- 114/9-10 how Eneas sailled, & how by tempest he arryued in cecylle] *No French for this, but (as in other cases) a woodcut*

- 114/12-13 of the grete moone that . . .
after] *que . . . en sa contrée*
- 114/18 stronge weddre arose, that
brought to them] *fort temps les leua
en*
- 114/20 habaundoned theyr . . . bere]
commanderent les . . . aller
- 114/24 kynge] *roy et sire*
- 114/27 the goddesse wolde] *les dieux
le vouloient*
- 114/30 Soone after ceased the tem-
peste] *Après les paroles cessa la
tempête et tourment*
- 115/3 he wolde make] *estoit*
- 115/8-10 Wherfore . . . shewed there
theyr prowesse, Tourned theyr horses,
and ranne and lepte] *a ses ieux se
pouuoient Adonques . . . de leur
prouesse faisoient tours des cheuaulx
et sailloient*
- 115/14 in peyne for to doo well] *en
paine*
- 115/22-3 that were within the shippes
. . . In a fyre] *des nefz . . . esprises*
- 115/26 broken of theyre longe vyage]
debrisee
- 115/28-9 went with other in hys com-
panye, and] *& eint premier a euec
après les aultres que*
- 115/34, 116/1 were not able to bere
armes, nor for to goo to bataylle] *en
bataille maistre pouuoient*
- 116/3 newe] *retoric*
- 116/5 Aceestre] *astroin*
- 116/6 governed] *fondee*
- 116/8-9 thoos that were stronge, and
that myghte welle endure the tra-
ueylles of bataylle] *tous les aytables
& les fors*
- 116/11 gode and socourable] *secourables*
- 116/14-15 he lefte behynde for to en-
habyte] *estoit logez et laisses*
- 116/19 to be hyssed vppe, toke vp theyre
ancre] *tendre*
- 116/20 rode] *riuage*
- 116/20-2 Thenne myghte ye haue seen
the ladyes and other wepe full sore /
makynge grete moone for] *et y eust
grand douleur daucuns gens que
euec laissoit. car les dames plouroient*
- 116/26 vpon the forecastell] *vers le bout
de la nef*
- 116/28 lauded in] *prinrent port a*
- 116/29 Tulyola] *culiolia*
- 116/31 gatte hit] *la tit*
- 116/35 cause why] *cheoison*
- 116/36 shalle leue awhyle to speke]
vous deliray
- 117/1 Pasyfa] *palifa*
- 117/5 wyth chyld] *ensainte*
- 117/6 her tyme was comen, she was
delynered of] *elle fut deliuree de sa
portecure si eust*
- 117/11-12 slytte hym vp som where in
a stronge holde] *enfirmer*
- 117/12-19 And for this cause, was
dedalus sente for to the kyng Mynos /
by whos requeste & commaunde-
mente, this dedalus deuysed & made
a house of merueyllouse composi-
yon, where were asmany walles as were
there chambres, that were in grete
nombre; and euery chambre was
walled and closed rounde aboute, and
yet myghte one goo from one to a
nother. And yf some body] *fut
mande delatus & si luy fist faire
une maison merueilleuse autant daultre
cloisure & at chambres que au
monde nauoit creature si*
- 117/20-1 the firste entree therof, for to
come oute ayen] *entree*
- 117/21-2 and whosomener went in, after
he was ones paste] *puis que en passoit*
- 117/23-5 he myghte neuer come oute
ayen / and wyst not where he was.
Wythin this place was Mynotaurus
broughte] *que deuenoient ceulx qui
dedens estoient*
- 117/28 this foureten] *ceulx*
- 117/34 he wente and songhte after] *si
quist*
- 118/4 Theseus] *thesenon*
- 118/6 valyaunt / and hardy] *& hardi*
- 118/8 made hym redy] *appareilla son
erro*
- 118/14 wolde bynge hym ayenne alyue]
le vouloient. Quant il fut venu entour
- 118/16-20 amyable, and that was come
for to be in thraldome vnder her

- fader / she hadde pyte of hym / and
for hys homeste behanoure / Began
to be taken with his loue / And vnto
hym vpon a daye she sayde] *amenable
elle lauma moult & luy dist*
- 118/25-6 requyred and asked hym] *renquist*
- 118/27 pyche and towe bothe] *pois en
poil*
- 118/31 comme chewe it so moeche] *tant
mascher*
- 118/32-3 sholde not swalowe hit, nor
hane it out of hys mouth] *le peust
aualler ne endurer*
- 118/33-4 thus besy and sore occupye] *a ce entendroit*
- 118/36 botom of threde] *linecul de fil*
- 119/2-3 goo forthe, wyndyng of this
botom of threde tyl he be come to
his aboue of hys entrepryse] *lyra
desuclopet tant quil auri fait su
besoigne*
- 119/4 shalle wynde vp to-gyder] *suyura*
- 119/5-6 lyghtly to the fyrst dore where
he went ynye] *arriere*
- 119/6 by the comseylle of] *pour*
- 119/7-10 and came ayen oute of the
place full soone / And anone after, he
toke Adryane wyth hym, and secretelly
entred in-to his shypp / and made
as goode waye as the wyndes wolde] *si se mist
pays en sa nef & se mist en
sa roye*
- 119/11 Mynos] *mynos qui moult fut
doulent quant il le secust*
- 119/12 this goodle] *ceste*
- 119/13-14 commaunded hym atte his
departyng from Athenes] *dit*
- 119/30-1 wynges, and fastened theym
to his arnes] *alles en ses bratz*
- 119/32-3 connyngly made] *par grand
maistrise*
- 119/32-3 and floughe oute at the wyn-
dowes fro the prison where they
were. But] *si monterent sur les fen-
estres & vollarent tant que*
- 119/35 wax wexed hoote, & beganne to
melte] *eschauffa la cire*
- 120/4 Thebes] *tunes*
- 120/10-11 arryued in the saide yle of
Enlyola] *arriuez (Cax. Tulyola,
116/29, Fr. culiolia)*
- 120/14 went Eneas / and there he wolde
reste hym self awhile] *print repos
eneas deuant quil allast en celle ville
qui est en celle forest*
- 120/15 Cryspsyne] *erespic*
- 120/18-19 this mater I leue, for it is
fayned, and not to be byleuyd] *ce fut
mensonge*
- 120/19-23 will knowe how eneas wente
to helle, late hym rede virgyle, clau-
dyan, or the pistelles of Ouyde, &
there he shall fynde more than
trouth. For whiche cause I leue it,
and wryte not of it] *& qui leouldra
trouuer si la quiere on [en] roment
de eneas ou en virgille*
- 120/23-4 had taken his reste there
awhile / he and his folke departed
from theus] *se partit de lu*
- 120/25 ytalye, in a] *ytalica vne*
- 120/26 tonyre] *toine*
- 120/28 maryners] *maistres mariniers*
- 120/30 entred within the hauene] *prin-
rent port (Cax. has 'wthin')*
- 120/34 lauyne] *laume (always)*
- 121/1 many one] *bien sachez que maintz*
- 121/1-2 to be theire spouse] *en mariage*
- 121/4 preu and hardy] *preue*
- 121/7-8 Here It is shewed how many
kynges had ben In ytalie afore that]
Quantz roys auoit en ytalie quant
- 121/11 that successyuelly] *qui*
- 121/12-13 Lanus, whiche dyde enhabyte
there firste, & peopled the contree]
lanus
- 121/15 auctours] *acteurs*
- 121/17 was a lyue] *estoit*
- 121/24 Iulyus] *iulien*
- 121/25 Suluyus] *simius*
- 121/27-8 consulle of the londe] *con-
siller*
- 121/31 eneas & of his folke] *eneas*
- 121/33 trenchers] *tailleurs (50 years
earlier in England the trenchers
were always of bread: see my Babees
Book)*
- 122/1 all that was lefte] *tous leurs
aultres reliex*

- 122/5 a vysion] *division*
 122/6-7 releef or brokelynges of his
 borde] *relief*
 122/7 his] *leur*
 122/13 fynysshed] *assigne*
 122/20 tolde hym] *rendirent que*
 122/25 Tonyre] *tonire*
 122/28 Lanynus] *lanimus*
 123/10 barreys] *liez*
 123/19-20 of peas & of alyauunce] *paix*
 123/20-24 and that he was not arruyed
 in his londe for to doo to hym, nor
 to the contrey, ony dompage / but
 besoughte hym that he wolde not
 lette hym of that he had enterprysed
 to make a castell vpon his grounde
 that was begonne] & *que en sa terre*
auoient prins port & quil ne le greuaist
pas en son chastel fermer
 123/28 wente] *vindrent & errerent*
 123/35 wyses] *facons & manieres*
 124/3 wente a pase afore theym, and
 cam & shewed] *sen alla en la cite*
parler
 124/7 riche & pesable] *richez*
 124/30 and also ryght and rayson re-
 quyreth that ye doo soo] & *si y aurez*
droiture
 124/33 dyoneus] *elioneus*
 125/3 comme In-to thys londe] *prandre*
cesta part
 125/9 hadde] *heu*
 125/10-11 hadde lefte and habandouned
 our owne contree] *en partismes*
 125/15-16 hurte, domage, ne greuauunce]
greuance
 125/21 our permanente residence] *ar-*
restance
 125/23 Dyoneus] *Fionrus*
 125/26 7 was . . . priuce of grete lorde-
 shyppes] *cut . . . grand seigneurie*
 125/31-2 ioye & good chere to ye mes-
 sengers of eneus] *ioye avec messa-*
giers
 125/35 dyoneus] *elioneus*
 126/1 praysed moche the troians] *prisa*
 126/6 Darynus] *Annius*
 126/11-12 mused a lytyll in hym selfe]
pense
 126/31 chare] *char*
 127/1-2 altogyder as it was sayde and
 doon] *tout luffaire*
 127/6 aryued in that londe] *armez*
 127/12-13 buylde and sette] *fermer*
 127/21 frendes and kynnesmen] *amys*
 127/26-7 gyue theyr doughter to a no-
 ther, contrary to their promyse that
 they hadde made to hym] *ce faire*
 127/29 to make vp theyr] *en sa*
 127/31 Lawrence] *laurence ou les nour-*
retons du roy estoient
 127/32-3 to hunte the wylde bestes]
chasser
 127/34 Syluya] *salma*
 128/4-5 layed her hande ouer him, for
 to make hym fayr and euny] *le*
plumist
 128/6 fed] *affere*
 128/11 espyed] *ehcoisit*
 128/12 rough] *persa*
 128/15-16 cryed and made mone after
 hys manere] *brayt*
 128/16 Syluya] *salma*
 128/19 an-angryd and wroth therfore]
courrouce
 128/27-8 the most strengthe was styll
 with the men of the countree] *la*
force si en estoit avec paisans
 129/2 chasse & dryue] *chasser*
 129/6 effort made, & bigge estoure]
estour
 129/28 lawrence . . . aseanyus] *lautre*
 . . . *astamus*
 129/30 made] *furent moult*
 129/31 mescayus . . . causus] *mesancius*
 . . . *lunsus*
 129/33 of ytalie] *dypolite*
 129/34 canulla] *dreanula*
 130/2 of medens] *de chirs & de pucelles*
 130/23 palatyne] *palatin darcada*
 130/28 Palencya] *pabancia*
 131/3 and sayd to hym] *pour ce quil*
le chascoit de son royaulme, moult
sentrecommencereent bien en parlant
euander dist
 131/12 that were strong] *plus fort*
 131/15 palence] *plaisance*
 131/32 euander, & walked] & *a la*
departie se pasma le roy, atant sen
allrent palus & eneus & errerent

- 132/9 and made hem redy vpon the] *et se appareillerent & ordonnerent aux*
 132/11 visus] *visus*
 132/12-13 & eight felawes with him] *esperonnant luy huytiesme*
 132/15 out] *hors seurement*
 132/18 dart] *espiot*
 132/19 tourne of] *tour par*
 132/20 he, & the other eyght] *luy huytiesme*
 132/25 wente] *commenea a aller*
 132/26 see and knowe] *scauoir*
 132/27 sonest] *myeule & plus legiere-ment*
 132/30-1 that were nyghe the shore, for the men to come a lande] *au riuage*
 133/1-3 sholde not flee thyderwarde for to saue theym selfe. They dyde thenne as turnus hadde commaunded / and brenned alle the shyppes] *ne sen fouissent. lors mirent le feu es nefz*
 133/12 made goode chere] *entendirent de faire feste*
 133/17 fortresse] *forteresse. car il estoit a grand plante pour estre entour la motc*
 133/17-18 But noo body durst not aenture for to goo to hym] *mes nul ny ala*
 133/21 for to entre vpon] *dauoir*
 133/24 assured were, not doubted] *asseuez estoient ne ne se doubtoient*
 133/33 waye thyder] *contree beau compains*
 133/34 shal be rewarded ryght welle therfore] *en away grant merite*
 133/35 vnderstode hys felawe that spaeke soo] *se trouua bien moque*
 134/2-3 be so famylier, and haue hadde so goode felyship] *heu tant de priuete & compaignie*
 134/9 for to goo to enes] *a faire*
 134/15 & also my self] *& roy (?) aussi*
 135/1-2 to telle that that was to come] *de deuiner*
 135/26 they hadde on theyre hedes] *erialus auoit en sa teste*
 135/30 forest] *forest en signe*
 136/1 forest] *forest a sonne*
 136/2 path] *sentier pretez*
 136/9 swete] *beau doulx*
 136/13 noyse of the horses] *bruyt des cheuaulx et la noyse*
 136/17 his enmyes about his felawes] *entour son compaignon*
 136/25 horse] *cheual sans moult dire*
 136/31 donn ded] *tout estandu*
 136/33 The French chapter-heading is. 'Comment le conestable fit coupper les testes a deux compaignons, & turnus les fict metre sur deus lances, & porter deuant le chastel.'
 137/4-5 bolcus, the conestable, to be alle forenced wyth grete rage] *a froncer robren de mal talent & de grand ire a alumer*
 137/6 cam] *venoient a dire ne qui ce leur faisoit*
 137/14-15 bolcus smote eryalus] *voulent ferir erraclanum*
 137/18 bolcus] *volenus*
 137/27-8 as longe that he myghte stande] *pour garentir sa vie*
 137/29-30 wel sharpe cuttynge] *tranchous & esmoulus*
 137/33 Bolcus] *volenus*
 137/34 Turnus] *est*
 138/1-2 sawe there theym that made] *trouuerent*
 138/3 tentes] *tentes & mesmement mumontor y estoit grand douleur demener*
 138/4-5 sholde be] *fust generallement*
 138/7-8 made . . . to be smytten of from theyr bodyes] *fit prandre*
 138/9 and] *il les fit*
 138/11 fere and abasshe] *esbahir*
 138/15 the place] *aux murs*
 138/16 17 trompettes for to gyue a sharpe sawte] *trompetes & bussines en lost pour assallir moult oigrement*
 138/20 theyr panesses] *terges*
 138/22-3 logges, wyth sharpe yron atte the ende] *espieux aguz*
 138/25-6 walles of theyr fortresse] *mur*
 138/27 all-to burst theyre bodyes] *tout leurs corps*
 139/4 the toure on a fire] *le feu en celle tour qui tantost fut par tout espandu*

- 139/5 alle in a flame] *embrasee*
 139/10, 13 Elecor] *licors*
 139/18 of the other] *daultre auoir grans assaule & pesans*
 139/31 tidynges] *nobles nouvelles*
 139/33 was to grete] *moult fut loidaige au port*
 140/1-2 his knyghtes also, for to lette them of theyr landyng] *sa cheualerie*
 140/2-4 Eneas, that wyth his barons that were in his ship wyth hym, was landed first of alle / And defended the porte ayenst] *pays que enas fut sur terre et quil fut arrive et monte sur son cheual il fit tirer arriere*
 140/7 of the one parte / And of the other] *dune part et daultre*
 140/8 atte his comyng vpon, he oterthrewe & slewe Sythera] *de prime face quil arriva il occist chytere*
 140/12 there] *qui adonc veist palas comme il faisoit merucilleux faiz dormes et tous les autres aussi. La*
 140/14 happed] *aduint dont il fut moult doulent triste et courrouce*
 140/21 wrothe and sore an-angred vpon] *courrouce & bien le compararent*
 140/26 afore] *deuant. & sachez que moult voluntiers souffrirent contre leurs ennemis pour eulx venger aux espiotz tranchans et asserez & aux especes*
 140/28-9 the dethe] *lamour*
 140/31 valyaunt / pren] *preux*
 140/32 fende] *dyable*
 141/1 harme, and euylls] *de maux*
 141/2 dyde transforme hym self] *se mist*
 141/14 sette nought by hys enchauntementes] *nen chaillloit gueres*
 141/16-17 of Eneas that was nyghe by the shores] *du riuage*
 141/31 that heelde hit] *de quoy elle estoit atachee au port*
 142/1-2 Eneas smote Merencyus wyth his spere in his thye a grete stroke] *merencius ferit enas dune espec en la teste [enisse in the after text]*
 142/4-5 DVryng this while that Turnus wende to haue chased Eneas] *Entretant*
 142/5-6 thyckest presse of the bataylle] *bataille*
 142/7-8 to their deth wyth his swerde] *a martire*
 142/11 soo sore an-angred he was] *tant estoit courrouce te (et) forceune*
 142/14-5 hadde broughte hym to this grete sorowe] *auoit embate en ce point*
 142/16 slayne afore his eyen] *destranchier*
 142/21-23 of tonyre, wyth the streme that was so bigge, tyll that it cam in-to the hauen of the cyte of darda, where as kyng daryus] *dantoirs nurresta oneques deuant au port de la cite le roy darinus*
 142/26 Lansus] *lazus*
 142/30 troians] *gens enas*
 142/33-4 afore hym] *deuant luy a dextre et a senestre*
 142/34 sawe hym] *le vit et laprecut*
 143/4 espyotte or spere] *espiot*
 143/6 sore an-angred . . . ranne vpon Eneas] *moult ire & courrouce . . . luy courut sus a toute lespee nue*
 143/9-11 his wounde bled alle to the spere / and yet was a parte of the spere wythin / that greued hym ryght sore] *encores estoit la cuisse cachantee de la lance*
 143/15-16 Lansus sawe his fader merencyus thus sore hurte] *lenfent fut ainsi veu nature son pere*
 143/21 teeth] *piez*
 143/24-5 made his wounde to be shwed vppe] *fasoit couldre sa playe*
 143/31-2 wyth the corpus / making gret mone, & cryeng full heuely] *a tout le corps a grand cry*
 143/34, 144/1-2, siche, wolde hane hadde grete merucylle / He rented his clothes, and tare hys herys from his owne hede, and] *doloser & ses cheueux detyrer*
 144/4-5 to be dressed and bounden vpon] *estandre et bander*
 144/7 y^e dethe of his sone vpon] *son filz de*
 144/9 launche or cast] *lancer*

- 144/14 sone, I am] *filz . . . que tant
amoie veex moy*
- 144/21 went vpon hym with a spere] *luy lancee vne lancee*
- 144/23-4 Thenne rose there a grete
noyse and a grete crye] *si y eust
grand cry.*
- 144/27 coude he vpon hys fete] *se secrust
releuer*
- 145/2 shyppe, & sente It to his fader] *nef*
- 145/8 corpus] *corps*
- 145/10-11 of a kyngge apparteyneth, &
putte it in to a shippe] *de roy*
- 145/12 goten] *conquestec*
- 145/17-18 moder in lykewyse, for hys
dethe] *mere*
- 145/19 with] *qui apporterent*
- 145/23 ha, a] *hec*
- 145/32-4, 146/1 I make were aienst
turnus, that wold haue lauyne, the
doughter of kyngge Latynus, ayenst
the wille of the goddes] *a turnus que
le roy latin a sa fille fiancee.*
- 146/4-7 & that he that sholde haue the
victorye ouer the other / he sholde
haue the pucelle lawyne, & her faders
good wyll with-alle / and the other
that were ouercome] *sil nen ruenit
lonneur tous les dieux le donroient et
lautre*
- 146/7 his lyffe] *la terre et la vie*
- 146/9-11 & reporte to the kyngge that
that I haue saide, & that I wyll
abyde by. And that he doo me to
knowe] *si le dictes au roy et luy faictes
entendre ce que turnus dit ie vous en
diz*
- 146/13 fydelyte] *loyaulte*
- 146/25 dyde ceasse] *finerent & turnus
fut reueuu de sa cite si comme vous
auez ouy et vint a laurence*
- 146/34 ayenste Eneas / and that bare]
il enuoya
- 147/4-5 After that he came agayue
from puylle] & de la venoient les
messages
- 147/9-10 afore Troye / we made to hym
due reuerence] *a troye destruire nous
le saluasmes*
- 147/19 Gatte nor wane] *gaignasmes*
- 147/21 knyghtes destroyed] *noble cheual-
lerie*
- 147/26 other grekes] *ayault des autres*
- 147/34 strengthe and proesse] *rudeesse*
- 147/35-6 two hounderd knyghtes suche
as he is, & in theyre companye] *c. c.
& auce*
- 148/1 troylus] *troilus comme ilz estoient*
- 148/2 wasted & distroied] *destruicte*
- 148/3-4 And Also ye muste vnderstande
for veraye certeyne] *Car sachez*
- 148/4-5 reeystence that was made ayenst
vs grekes afore Troye] *demourance
qui fut faicte*
- 148/19-20 as longe as that the goddes
wyll be on his side] *quant est en la
garde des dieux*
- 148/27 marcheth towarde ceeylle . .
grounde] *sestant iusques en ocaille
celle terre tienent . . montaigne*
- 148/30 townes, eytees] *villes*
- 149/1 for to knowe his wyll in this
lyhalue] *sil le fera & sil vouldra ce
prendre.*
- 149/4 goode kyngge] *roy chose est venue*
- 149/5 knowe well] *ne scauent mye*
- 149/8-9 wherby Eneas is vexed more
stronge] & bien sachez que enecas nous
usserra tant dedans.
- 149/15 fyghte hym selfe alone] *combatre*
- 149/23-4 wyth hym, hande for hande]
qui le huche et demande. Then a
fresh chapter ¶ *Comment il fut diuise
deuant le roy latin de combatre corps
a corps*
- 149/24-5 turnus, that was come ayen
to Lawrence . . Drastes] *turnus . .
adrasan*
- 149/29-30 wylte not come nyghe yf
ihou mayste kepe the a side] *nen as
que faire premiers*
- 149/31 firste that shall speke] *eneas et
turnus.*
- 149/33 Drastes] *drasan*
- 149/33-4 that he neuer sawe dyomedes
fyghte wyth eneas] & a dire que
*encores auoient ilz gens assez ianuis
y ne vist diomedes pour chaser enecas
dehors la terre*

- 150/2 though he were as stronge as
the deuyll] *se il n'avoit plus grand
force que il ne.*
- 150/5 the sayd Eneas] *dictes d'eneas*
- 150/9-10 for to comne and take the
cyte by force] *pour la cite prandre
& venoient pour l'assallir*
- 150/14-15 that they sholde be redy
right soone for to yssue out with
hym] *quil sen yssissent a ses murs.*
- 150/16-17 bussynes and trompettes]
lucines
- 150/18 lauyne] *l'umme*
- 150/21 flee, & who sholde abyde] *fuir-
oyent*
- 150/25 Canulla] *Canune*
- 150/27 lys knytes] *sa compaignie et
contre sa cheualerie*
- 150/28-9 that Turnus sholde abyde
wythin for to kepe the walles of the
cyte / And she sayde, syre, lete me
doo with] *vous demeurez aux murs
de la cite et vous ne lairez contenir de
maintenir*
- 151/6-7 crosbowes and my knyghtes]
cheualiers
- 151/7-8 whan our ennyes shall be
come in to / the narrow waye] *et sil
sembat sur nous aincois quil soit hors
du destroit*
- 151/10-18 ye shall abyde atte this side,
for to goo vpon the troians whan they
shall come / And thenne came there
Mesapus wyth a goode bande of
folke, whiche Turnus exhorted for to
doo well / and that he sholde fyghte
that daye vnder the banner of the
noble & preu lady Canulla / And
after that he hadde sette all his
knyghtes in goode arraye] This trans-
poses & alters the French: *et les
tristramiens comuz et laurier et mesapuz
et turnus en orta moult bien faire*
[repeated below.] *Lors sen departit
turnus luy et sa cheualerie et vous
qui demeurez commeneeres le tournay
et vous et vostre compaignie en ayez
la cure ces paroles vint mesapus que
turnus enorta moult de bien faire.
Lors sen*
- 151/19 conroe] *couroe*
- 151/20 caules] *et caules*
- 151/23 fyght togyder] *batailler que
oneques ny eut treus demandes ne
d'une part ne daultre*
- 151/26 atte their comynge hande to
hande togyder] *quant ilz assemblent*
- 151/27 And they] *tant sentremelloyent
et*
- 151/28 thycke and soo faste] *durement*
- 151/31 rebuked them] *les misrent a la
roye*
- 151/33-4 the chyeff capytaynes of the
Latynes, wyth theyr companye well
horsed] *les latins les chiefz des cheu-
aliers*
- 151/35-6, 152/1-5 And the Latynes bare
theym selfe full well a while, that by
force of armes they made the troyens
to retourne bak / But atte the last,
the troyens that were neuer wery of
bataylles / made there merueyilles of
armes, so that the latynes myght
susteyne noo lenger the weyght of
theyre swerdes / but were ageyne
putte abak] *que force leur fut de
retourner arriere*
- 152/9-10 by force of grete fayttes of
armes] *a force*
- 152/12 destruction and grete slawghter
made, bothe] *destruction*
- 152/13 barres] *lices*
- 152/15-17 other that were ther, the
queene Canulle dyde best In armes,
and kyled and slewe the troyens on
eyther syde of her] *les conrois y estoit
la royne canulle.* (Caxton's *Canulle*
is for *Canule*.)
- 152/18-22 a bowe, and a sheeffe of
arowes hangynge by her syde / One
tyme she shotte / Another tyme she
smotte grete strokes with her swerde,
and hewe, cleued, and cutted of hedes
and armes clene from the bodyes]
*lort et couroye plaine de sujetes dont
assez aucuns transchoient mains bras
& piez et corps sans attendance*
- 152/26 his offyce] *celle*
- 152/27 fayttes of knyghted] *cheualerie*

- 152/30 sore moche] *moult*
 152/32 Anyus] *amus*
 152/34 of the noble troians] *leur*
 153 1 wrathe] *lucil*
 153/2 slayne] *tue & occis pour sa grand forenerie.*
 153/3 his oroyssen] *sa raison*
 153/6 swerde a vengable stroke] *espee*
 153/6-7 soo that he dyde cutte the harnays / and made his swerde to entre in to] *et luy faulsa lermoure & luy entana*
 153/8-9 ferre wythin the body of her / soo that anone after, she felle ded to the grounde: And after] *& il luy mist ou corps & fer & fuist ensemble*
 153/14 feelde] *estour*
 153/16 fallen down from her horse] *cheue*
 153/18-19 began all for to tremble and shake] *fremirent toutes*
 153/19 reconeraunce] *retournance*
 153/20 wythin the barreers] *vers les desirois des lices*
 153/21 ouer throwen and cast down] *dubatus*
 153/24 of Canulla, the worthy quene] *la royne*
 153/28-9 chynalre vpon the mountayne, as it is said afore] *cheuallerie*
 154/4-5 the Turnyens . . . wythdrew theym selfe in-to the eyte] *se yssirent ly rutier*
 154/6-7 of the towne / where] *en leurs lices &*
 154/8-9 was full sory and wrothe for] *eust grand ire de*
 154/14 eonenaunte] *conuenance*
 154/15-16 pucelle laayne to his wyff] *femme*
 154/19 bacheler] *iouuenceau*
 154/21-2 well thyselfe, how grete a londe thou shalt haue in thy holde after thy fader is decessed] *a tenir si grand terre du roy dans ton pere*
 154/24-6 maydens ben in ytalie, of noble blode / and of highe estate, of whiche thou myghtest chose one to be thy wyff] *femmes en ytalie*
 154/29 haue] *auoye*
 154/29-30 graunted her to the for to be thy wyf] *donnee et octroyee*
 154/35-6 nomore / and no longer we may not well abyde wythin] *plus estre en*
 155 5 hole & sonnde] *sain*
 155/6 Loke & beholde] *regarde*
 155 13 linysshel] *esteeue*
 155/16 that my honour and praysinge be encreassed] *croistre mon pris*
 155/18 fyghte wyth Eneas] *combatre*
 155/19-20 of my body more nyghe goon] *nisse de ma chair*
 155/22 goddesse] *diuerse* (for *deesse*)
 155/23 yf I] *si ie ne me*
 155 24 Amatha] *chamata*
 155/29 seeste falle fro myn eyen] *me roys plourer*
 155/31 wyth Eneas] *aux troyens*
 155/34 Whan Laayne] *quant lolante & moult en eust couleur laume*
 156/13 announce] *munecr*
 156/15 ryght glad] *lyez et ioyeux*
 156/17 playne afore the eyte] *plaine*
 156/22 of bothe sydes] *sachez que du part*
 156 28-9 conneauntes were deuysed and made] *parolle fut affairment*
 156/34-5 harde among a grete many] *par grand redour et si ferit en vray trouppau*
 156/35 water] *torpeau*
 157/2 hepe of theym] *flote des autres*
 157/5 conered wyth theym] *tout especes. & si demenoient moult grand noyse apres laigle*
 157/12 Turnyens] *rutiliens*
 157/15 bytokenynge] *signifiance*
 157/16-17 houered in theym selfe soo sore] *fremissoient*
 157/20 Lordes turnyens] *Seigneur rutilien*
 157/22 lighted amonge the hepe of] *se ferit dedans les*
 157 23-4 wasteth and dystroyeth] *de-guste*
 157/24-6 that we emyrronne hym rounde aboute wyth goode men of armes, as the swannes dyde] *le signe firent*

- 157 27 well I wote that] *sciele: q' se il
tendret sa coupe*
- 158 3-4 of the one parte / And of the
other] *deux part et d'autre*
- 158 6-7 deuyssed and made. That Turnus
and I shall fyghte for you alle] *d'au-
s' coupe pour deuz auts de breus con-
batre*
- 158 10 querey]]] *se'este*
- 158 13 smote hym selfe in to] *se' fier
... de' bras*
- 158 19-20 laun he and caste] *lancer*
- 158 25 of Oson of troye] *de qua de troye
Esa. les a'ouuer*
- 158 38, 159 1-3, ayenst me / wherefore I
shall gyne to the thy fylle therof /
and with the same, he toke hys hand
fulle of erthe fro the grounde, and
fylled hys throte therwithalle, while
that he was a passyng] *achains pour-
quoy est un souer' l'orgueil de peulle*
- 159 3 5 wite for veray trouthe, sayde
Turnus to hym, that alle thus I
shall rewards theym of thy naeyon]
*sciele: bien que tel' bon se'rait de
c'ou'is*
- 159 15-16 and spored hys horse atte]
... cast le nuit' en g'ra de' cepie et point
- 159 17-19 And he had hys knyghtes
mide roome afore theym, and slewe
doune many of the Latynes and
turnyens att every hande of hem] *et
de' et la cheu de' de' l'at' grant est'*
- 159 20 Ytalyens, so that they trembled
for feere] *ens des' gal'ens et fr' me-
rent*
- 159 21 Afran] *afra'*
- 159 22 Atherantum] *Atherant'um*
- 159 31-2 went euer here and there
alonge the wynges of the bataylle-]
cachant les bras des' bat'ens
- 159 34 dyle Eneas] *jurat*
- 159 34 And] *Eneas*
- 160 6-7 they dyle soone as Eneas hadde
commanded theym] *de' a' peut estre
ch'issa' tout'ot' am'... l' se' dit*
- 160 10 a-for] *... la' p'ced'ere' as'emble*
- 160 13 dyscorde and varyunce] *d'ours*
- 160 14 Eneas] *... cas' et le' p'ced'ere' a
s'g'ou'at*
- 160 20-1 that the troyans dyde atte
yppre to the walles] *de' de' r'*
- 160 28 knowen in the towne] *... en*
- 160 30 Launye] *l'auine*
- 160 32 3 And pulled of his heeres] *...
... es*
- 161 1 that was made wythin the eye]
d'... et l'...'
- 161 3 thye] *...'*
- 161 4 wloppel] *...'*
- 161 10 art hen, g'aryng' about nought]
... et l'...'
- 161 20-1 he was ashamed, and ryght
sore wrathe, and onsegerd] *en' est
d'ou'at' a' he' de'*
- 161 23 charyot] *ch'ant*
- 161 30 In a feble, one geynst the other]
en' champ
- 162 9 toshewen and broken alle to
pewes] *de' r'at' p'...*
- 162 15 the ryngel] *d'...'*
- 162 17-18 the sorowe that he made for
ye' dethe of Padas, that turnus had
slyne] *elle' d'ou'at' de' p'bas*
- 162 24-5 the pucelle Launye] *l'auine*
- 162 26 welded Launye, and hadde] *est
l'auine et*
- 162 34 royame] *royaume sans ce' quel
en' est la' se'g'ou'at' tous les' jours de
sa' vie*
- 163 3-4 ded that were yet in the feeldes]
qu'... est' est'...
- 163 7 8 thoroughe all the royame of
yaly] *de' qu'ou' elle' est'at' en' p'le'*
- 163 10 Launye] *l'auine*
- 163 18 d'yed / and decessed] *tr' pas' est'*
- 163 20 wyres] *g'ou'ens et' nulles*
- 163 20 Merenys] *Mercat'um*
- 163 22-3 By cause that dethe toke hym
sooner than he woude] *pour' la' mort
qui' la' l'et' l'ou'at' a' l'ou'at'*
- 163 26 was lutt yongel] *l'at' l'at'*
- 163 32 wyth the thomber holte] *de
faulle*
- 164 22-3 her son silyus betwene her
armes] *son' ill'*
- 164 24 lond] *l'ere' et de' ses' hommes*
- 164 25 Silyum] *silyum*
- 164 25 spertenunces] *aiousta'ies en
app'ad'ness*

164/26 Aseanyus buylded] <i>Il cstora</i>	165/20 CCCC] <i>troys cens</i>
164/26 of Albe] <i>dirques</i>	165/21 the royame] <i>le regne son frere</i>
164/32 Lombardye that were syth Aseanyus] <i>asceniūm qui fuerent en lombardie</i>	165/27 Capys siluyus] <i>capis</i>
164/33 Romulus that founded Rome] <i>romulin</i>	165/28 Ehiberynus] <i>chiberinus</i>
164/34-5 heelde and buylded Albe] <i>tint albe et iusques au temps que romulus fonda romme il fut chief du royaume. uscanus mit nul hoir a qui il laissast apres luy sa terre fors que silinus son frere. A celluy laissa il apres luy tout son royaume.</i>	165/29 Capetus] <i>capetus</i>
164/35 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i>	165/29 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i>
165/2 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i>	165/32 syluyus] <i>filius</i>
165/13 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i> (always)	165/34 After] <i>Après armelius quentius. xxx viii. ans. Après</i>
165/14 Iulyus] <i>iulum</i>	165/34-5 In this kynges dayes] <i>A cestuy</i>
165/18-19 vnto Aseanyus tyme, that] <i>cut iusques a la mort ascanus Silinus son frere</i>	166/2-3 shall here make an ende of this lytyll boke / named Eneydos] <i>diray qui fuerent les commencemens deule et des autres royaumes. Et soubz quelz roys les royaumes furent iusques au temps potius qui tint lombardie Car de ceule entre lenseigne pour listoire de thebs et de troyes Mais ainsi le demandoit oir le conte pour venir aux histoires de troyes.</i>

166/4-9 ¶ *Cy finit le liure des eneydes compile par Virgille le quel a este translate de latin en francois Imprime a lyon par maistre Guillaume le roy le dernier iour de septembre Lan mil quatre cens. lxxiii.*

The collation is 'a-e in eights, the first leaf blank ; d-g in sixes ; h-l in eights ; m, six leaves, the last blank. A most beautiful copy, full of rough leaves.'—*Huth Catalogue*, v. 1539. It has 61 quaint outline woodcuts the full width of the folio page, and about half its height. The chapter-initials are in red, done by hand. The full page has 32 lines. The Prologue, on a 2, is

A Lonneur de dieu tout puissant de la glorieuse vierge marie mere de toute grace. & a la vtilite & prouffit de toute la police mondaine ce present liure compile par virgille tressubtil & ingenieux orateur & poete intitule esneydes a este translate de latin en commun langage auquel pourront tous valereux princes & aultres nobles veoir moult de valereux faictz darmes. Et aussi est le present liure necessaire a tous citoyens & habitans en villes & chateaulx car ilz verront comme iadis trove la grant & plusieurs aultres places fortes & inexpugnables ont este assegies aprement & assaliez & aussi corageusement & vaillamment deffendues. Et est ledit liure au temps present fort necessaire pour instruire petis & grans pour chascun en son droit garder & deffendre. car chose plus noble est de mourir que de villainement estre subiugue.

This, with the first chapter-heading and its woodcut, fills the page. The contractions of the original are expanded as usual by me.



PR
1119
E5
no.3.
etc.

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series. no.3,54,57

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

